CONTENTS
OF THE
TWELFTH VOLUME.

CHAP. LXV.

Elevation of Timour or Tamerlane to the throne of Samarcand. — His conquests in Persia, Georgia, Tartary, Russia, India, Syria, and Anatolia. — His Turkish war. — Defeat and captivity of Bajazet. — Death of Timour. — Civil wars of the sons of Bajazet. — Restoration of the Turkish monarchy by Mahomet the first. — Siege of Constantinople by Amurath the second.

A. D. | Histories of Timour, or Tamerlane, | Page
--- | --- | ---
1361-1370. His first adventures. | 1
1370 He ascends the throne of Zagatai. | 4
1370-1400. His conquests. | 7
1380-1397. I. Of Persia. | 10
1370-1383. II. Of Turkestan. | 10
1397-1399. III. Of Hindostan. | 10
1400 His war against Sultan Bajazet. | 16
Timour invades Syria. | 20
Sacks Aleppo. | 20
1401 Damascus. | 23
And Bagdad. | 24
1402 invades Anatolia. | 25
Battle of Angora. | 26
Defeat and captivity of Bajazet. | 28
The story of his iron cage disproved by the Persian historian of Timour. | 30
CONTENTS.

A.D.
Attested, 1. by the French, 32
2. by the Italians, 33
3. by the Arabs, 34
4. by the Greeks, 35
5. by the Turks, ib.
Probable conclusion, ib.
1403 Death of Bajazet, 36
Term of the conquests of Timour, ib.
1404, 1405. His triumph at Samarcand, 40
1405 His death on the road to China, 42
Character and merits of Timour, ib.
1403-1421. Civil wars of the sons of Bajazet, 47
1. Mustapha, ib.
2. Isa, 48
1403-1410. 3. Solomon, 49
1415-1421. 5. Mahomet I, 50
1421-1423. Reign of Amurath II, 51
1421 Re-union of the Ottoman empire, ib.
1423-1425. State of the Greek empire, 53
1422 Siege of Constantinople by Amurath II, 55
1425-1448. The emperor John Palæologus II, 57
Hereditary succession and merit of the Ottomans, ib.
Education and discipline of the Turks, 58
Invention and use of gunpowder, 62

CHAP. LXVI.

Application of the Eastern emperors to the popes.—Visits to the West, of John the first, Manuel, and John the second, Palæologus.—Union of the Greek and Latin churches, promoted by the council of Basil, and concluded at Ferrara and Florence.—State of literature at Constantinople.—Its revival in Italy by the Greek fugitives—Curiosity and emulation of the Latins.

A.D.
1339 Embassy of the younger Andronicus to pope Benedict XII, 63
The arguments for a crusade and union, 66
1348 Negotiation of Cantacuzene with Clement VI, 69
1355 Treaty of John Paleologus I, with Innocent VI, 72
1369 Visit of John Paleologus to Urban V, at Rome, 74
1370 His return to Constantinople, 77
Visit of the emperor Manuel; ib.
1400 To the court of France, 78
Of England, 80
1402 His return to Greece, 81
Greek knowledge and descriptions; ib.
Of Germany, 82
Of France, 83
Of England, 84
1402–1417 Indifference of Manuel towards the Latins, 86
1417–1423 His negotiations, 87
His private motives, 88
His death, 89
1425–1437 Zeal of John Paleologus II, 90
Corruption of the Latin church, 91
1377–1429 Schism, 92
1409 Council of Pisa, ib.
1414–1418 Of Constance, ib.
1431–1443 Of Basil, 93
Their opposition to Eugenius IV, ib.
1434–1437 Negotiations with the Greeks, 94
1437 John Paleologus embarks in the pope’s galleys, 95
1438 His triumphal entry at Venice, 100
into Ferrara, 101
1438–1440 Council of the Greeks and Latins at Ferrara and Florence, 103
Negotiations with the Greeks, 108
1438 Eugenius deposed at Basil, 111
Re-union of the Greeks at Florence, ib.
1440 Their return to Constantinople, 113
1449 Final peace of the church, 114
1300–1433 State of the Greek language at Constantinople, ib.
Comparison of the Greeks and Latins, 116
Revival of the Greek learning in Italy, 119
1330 Lessons of Burkam, 120
CONTENTS

A.D.

1339-1374. Studies of Petrarch, — 121
1350. Of Boccace, — 122
1390-1403. Leo Pilatus, first Greek professor at Florence, and in the West, — 124
1390-1413. Foundation of the Greek language in Italy by Manuel Chrysalioras, — 126
1400-1500. The Greeks in Italy, — 128
Cardinal Bessarion, &c., — 129
Their faults and merits, — 130
The Platonie philosophy, — 132
Emulation and progress of the Latins, — 134
1447-1453. Nicholas V, — ib.
1428-1492. Cosmo and Lorenzo of Medicis, — 135
Use and abuse of ancient learning, — 138

CHAP. LXVII.

Schism of the Greeks and Latins.—Reign and character of Amurath the second.—Crusade of Ladislaus, king of Hungary.—His defeat and death.—John Hunyadi.—Scanderbeg.—Constantine Paleologus, last emperor of the East.

A.D.

Comparison of Rome and Constantinople, — 141
1440-1448. The Greek schism after the council of Florence, — 145
Zeal of the Orientals and Russians, — 148
1421-1431. Reign and character of Amurath II, — 150
1442-1444. His double abdication, — 152
1443. Eugenius forms a league against the Turks, — 154
Ladislaus, king of Poland and Hungary, marches against them, — 157
The Turkish peace, — 158
1444. Violation of the peace, — ib.
Battle of Warna, — 161
Death of Ladislaus, — 163
The cardinal Julian, — 164
John Corvinius Hunyadi, — 165
1456. His defence of Belgrade, and death, — 167
CONTENTS.

1404-1413. Birth and education of Scanderbeg, prince of Albania, 168
1443. His revolt from the Turks; 171
His valour; 172
1467. His death; 174
1448-1453. Constantine, the last of the Roman or Greek emperors; 175
1450-1452. Embassies of Phanarz; 177
State of the Byzantine court; 180

CHAP. LXXVIII.

Reign and character of Mahomet the Second.—Siege, assault, and final conquest of Constantinople by the Turks.—Death of Constantine Palæologus.—Serfdom of the Greeks.—Extinction of the Roman empire in the East.—Consternation of Europe.—Conquests and death of Mahomet the Second.

A.D. Character of Mahomet II, 182
1451-1481. His reign; 184
1451. Hostile intentions of Mahomet; 187
1452. He builds a fortress on the Bosphorus; 191
The Turkish war; 193
1452, 1453. Preparations for the siege of Constantinople; 194
The great cannon of Mahomet; 197
1453. Mahomet II forms the siege of Constantinople; 200
(Forces of the Turks; 203
Greeks; 203
1452. False union of the two churches; 205
Obstinate and fanatical of the Greeks; 206
1453. Siege of Constantinople by Mahomet II; 209
Attack and defence; 212
Succour and victory of four ships; 214
Mahomet transports his navy over land; 219
Destruction of the city; 221
Preparations of the Turks for the general assault; 222
Last farewell of the emperor and the Greeks; 224
The general assault; 226
CONTENTS.

A. D.

Death of the emperor Constantine Palaeologus.
Loss of the city and empire.
The Turks enter and pillage Constantinople.
Captivity of the Greeks.
Amount of the spoil.
Mahomet II visits the city, St. Sophia, the palace, &c.
His behaviour to the Greeks.
He repopulates and adorns Constantinople.
Extinction of the imperial families of Comnenus and Palaeologus.

1400 Loss of the Morea.
1461 — of Trebizond.
1453 Grief and terror of Europe.
1481 Death of Mahomet II.

Page

231
ib.
232
233
236
239
241
243
246
248
249
251
234

CHAP. LXIX.

State of Rome from the twelfth century.—Temporal dominion of the papes.—Seditions of the city.—Political secrecy of Arnold of Brescia.—Restoration of the republic.—The schism.—Pride of the Romans.—Their wars.—They are deprived of the election and presence of the pope, who retire to Avignon.—The jubilee.—Noble families of Rome.—Foes of the Colonna and Grains.

A. D.

1100-1300. State and revolutions of Rome.
800-1100. The French and German emperors of Rome.

Authority of the pope in Rome.
From affection.
right.
virtue.
benefits.
Inconstancy of superstition.
Seditions of Rome against the pope.

Page

250
228
200
ib.
261
ib.
262
203
264
238
266
267
ib.
269
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTENTS</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1181-1185. Lucius III,</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1180-1184. Calixtus II,</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1180-1183. Innocent III,</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character of the Romans by St. Bernard,</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1140. Political heresy of Arnold of Brescia,</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1144-1154. He exhorts the Romans to restore the republic,</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1153. His execution,</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1141. Restoration of the senate,</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The capitol,</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The exile,</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The prefect of the city,</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number and choice of the senate,</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The office of senator,</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1222-1238. Beneventano,</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1265-1278. Charles of Anjou,</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1281. Pope Martin IV,</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1328. The emperor Lewis of Bavaria, Addresses of Rome to the emperors,</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1144. Conrad III,</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1155. Frederic I,</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wars of the Romans against the neighbouring cities,</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1167. Battle of Tusculum,</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1234. — of Viterbo,</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The election of the pope,</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1179. Right of the cardinals established by Alexander III,</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1274. Institution of the conclave by Gregory X,</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absence of the popes from Rome,</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1294-1303. Boniface VIII,</td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1309. Translation of the holy see to Avignon,</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1300. Institution of the jubilee, or holy year,</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1350. The second jubilee,</td>
<td>310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The nobles or barons of Rome,</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family of Leo the Jew,</td>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Colonna,</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>And Ursini,</td>
<td>316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Their hereditary feuds,</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## CONTENTS.

**CHAP. LXX.**

Character and coronation of Petrarch.—Restoration of the freedom and government of Rome by the tribune Rienzi.—His virtues and vices, his expulsion and death.—Return of the popes from Avignon.—Great change of the West.—Re-union of the Latin church.—Last struggles of Roman liberty.—Statutes of Rome.—Final settlement of the ecclesiastical state.

### A.D.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1304-1374.</td>
<td>Petrarch,</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1341</td>
<td>His poetic coronation at Rome</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Birth, character, and patriotic design of Rienzi</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1347</td>
<td>He assumes the government of Rome</td>
<td>334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>With the title and office of tribune,</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Laws of the good estate</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Freedom and prosperity of the Roman republic</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The tribune is respected in Italy, &amp;c.</td>
<td>343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>And celebrated by Petrarch</td>
<td>345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>His vices and follies</td>
<td>344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The pomp of his knighthood</td>
<td>340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>And coronation</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fear and hatred of the nobles of Rome</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They oppose Rienzi in arms</td>
<td>351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Defeat and death of the Colonna</td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fall and flight of the tribune Rienzi</td>
<td>354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1347-1354.</td>
<td>Revolutions of Rome</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Adventures of Rienzi</td>
<td>357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1351</td>
<td>A prisoner at Avignon</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1354</td>
<td>Rienzi, senator of Rome</td>
<td>359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>His death</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1355</td>
<td>Petrarch invites and upbraids the emperor Charles IV, ib.</td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He solicits the popes of Avignon to fix their residence at Rome</td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1367-1370.</td>
<td>Return of Urban V,</td>
<td>365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1377</td>
<td>Final return of Gregory XI,</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1378</td>
<td>His death</td>
<td>367</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Election of Urban VI,</td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTENTS</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.D.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Election of Clement VII,</td>
<td>305</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1378-1418. Great schism of the West,</td>
<td>371</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calamities of Rome,</td>
<td>ib.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1307-1307. Negotiations for peace and union,</td>
<td>372</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1409. Council of Pisa,</td>
<td>373</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1414-1418. Council of Constance,</td>
<td>ib.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Election of Martin V,</td>
<td>377</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1417. Martin V,</td>
<td>378</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1431. Eugenius IV,</td>
<td>ib.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1447. Nicholas V,</td>
<td>ib.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1434. Last revolt of Rome,</td>
<td>ib.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1452. Last coronation of a German emperor, Frederic III,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The statutes and government of Rome,</td>
<td>379</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1452. Conspiracy of Peracaro,</td>
<td>380</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last disorders of the nobles of Rome,</td>
<td>383</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1500. The popes acquire the absolute dominion of Rome,</td>
<td>386</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The ecclesiastical government,</td>
<td>391</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1575-1590. Sixtus V,</td>
<td>392</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CHAP. LXXI.**

Prospect of the ruins of Rome in the fifteenth century.—Four causes of decay and destruction.—Example of the Colosseum.—Renovation of the city.—Conclusion of the whole work.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1410. View and discourse of Poggio from the Capitoline hill,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His description of the ruins,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gradual decay of Rome,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four causes of destruction,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I. The injuries of nature,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hurricanes and earthquakes,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fires,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inundations,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. The hostile attacks of the Barbarians and Christians,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.D.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>419</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chap. LXV.

Elevation of Timour, or Tamerlane, to the throne of Samarcand.—His conquests in Persia, Georgia, Tartary, Russia, India, Syria, and Anatolia.—His Turkish war.—Defeat and captivity of Bajazet.—Death of Timour.—Civil war of the sons of Bajazet.—Restoration of the Turkish monarchy by Mahomet the first.—Siege of Constantinople by Amurath the second.

The conquest and monarchy of the world was the first object of the ambition of Timour. To live in the memory and esteem of future ages was the second wish of his magnificent spirit. All the civil and military transactions of his reign were diligently recorded in the jour-
nals of his secretaries; the authentic narrative was revised by the persons best informed of each particular transaction; and it is believed in the empire and family of Timour, that the monarch himself composed the commentaries of his life, and the institutions of his government. But these cares were ineffectual for the preservation of his fame, and these precious memorials in the Mogul or Persian language were concealed from the world, or at least from the knowledge of Eu-

"These journals were communicated to Sherjeddin, or Chevronauli, a native of Afgan, who composed in the Persian language a history of Timour Beg, which has been translated into French by M. Petis de la Croix (Paris, 1777, in 4 vols. 12mo), and has always been my faithful guide. His geography and chronology are wonderfully accurate; and he may be trusted for public facts, though necessarily careless of the virtues and faults of the hero. Timur's attention to preserve intelligences from his own and foreign countries may be seen in the Institutions, p. 415, 417, 349, 351.

"These commentaries are yet unknown to Europe; but Mr. White press'd me hope that they may be important and translated by his friend Major Derry, who had read in the East this "imminent and faithfull" (it narrative of an interesting and useful period."

"I am ignorant whether the original institution, in the Turkish or Mogul language, is still extant. The Persian version, with an English translation and a most valuable index, was published (Oxford, 1783, in 4to by the joint labours of Major Derry, and Mr. White, the Arabic proponent. This work has been since translated from the Persian into French (Paris, 1787) by M. Langlais, a learned Orientalist, who has added the life of Timur, and many curious notes.

"Shaw Anxiety, the present Mogul, reads, writes, but cannot illustrate the institutions of his great ancestor. The English translator relies on their internal evidence; but if any suspicion should arise of fraud and fiction, they will not be disputed by Major Derry's letter. The Orientalists have never cultivated the art of criticism; the patronage of a prince is less hazardous perhaps, is not less lucrative than that of a book-seller; nor can it be deemed incredible, that a Persian, the real author, should camouflage the erudition of some the value and price of the works."
rope: The nations which he vanquished exercised a base and impotent revenge; and ignorance has long repeated the tale of columny, which had disfigured the birth and character, the person, and even the name, of Tamerlane. Yet his real merit would be enhanced, rather than debased, by the elevation of a peasant to the throne of Asia; nor can his lameness be a theme of reproach, unless he had the weakness to blush at a natural, or perhaps an honourable, infirmity.

In the eyes of the Moguls, who held the indefeasible succession of the house of Zingis, he was doubtless a rebel subject; yet he sprang from the noble tribe of Beross: his fifth ancestor, Garashar Nezian, had been the vizir of Zagatai, in his new realm of Transoxiana; and in the ascent of some generations, the branch of Timour is confounded, at least by the females, with the

---

*The original of the tale is found in the following works, which are much esteemed for their moral elegance of style: Ahmed ibn al-Azhari's Fath al-Rasul (Baghdad 1831); Abouelezâh, Fath al-Rasul (Venice 1544); and in various parts. The Persian author is ever a malicious, and often an ignorant, story-teller: the very titles of his chapters are impious; as how the snakes, as how the insects, as how the vipers. The genuine articles of Timour, in Biblia Persica Orientalis, is of a meaner nature, as different in importunity, as even his materials (pp. 677-698) from Rhododendron, Rame, Schleicher, and the Lipsius.

"Désine de Timour signifié, in the Turkish language, even and En
gne; the appellation of a hard or precise. By the change of a letter or accen
t, it is changed into Lame, or Lame, and a Kamaian, supposition
which the true want in the name of Tamerlane.

*After relating some false and foolish tales of Timour Len, Ab
drach is compelled to speak truth, and to own him for a kinsman of
Zingis, seeணணணண (on his probably state) [Imperial Statesman (parts 6-7), p. 238]. The testimony of Abulqasir Khan (pp. vi, v. 6, 5) is clear, unquestionable, and decisive.
imperial stem. He was born forty miles to the south of Samarcand, in the village of Sebzar, in the fruitful territory of Cash, of which his fathers were the hereditary chiefs, as well as of a tuman of ten thousand horse. His birth was cast on one of those periods of anarchy which announce the fall of the Asiatic dynasties, and open a new field to adventurous ambition. The khans of Zogatu were extinct; the emirs aspired to independence; and their domestic feuds could only be suspended by the conquest and tyranny of the khans of Kashgar, who, with an army of Getes or Caltmucka, invaded the Transoxian kingdom. From the twelfth year of his age, Timour had entered the field of action; in the twenty-fifth, he stood forth as the deliverer of his country; and the eyes and

---

* According to one of the pedigrees, the fourth successor of Zingt, and the ninth of Timour, were brothers; and they agreed, that the posterity of the elder should succeed to the dignity of khan, and that the descendants of the younger should fill the offices of their minister and general. This tradition was at least convenient to justify the first steps of Timour's ambition (Institutions, p. 24, 25, from the notes of Timour's History).

* See the preface of Shirafedin, and Asulfed's Geography (Chorassan, &c. Description, p. 60, 61), in the third volume of Hudson's Minor Greek Geographers.

* See his nativity in Dr. Hyde (Syntagma Dissertat, tom. ii. p. 168), as it was cast by the astrologers of his grandfather Ulingh Beg. He was born, A. M. 1335, April 21, 11° 57' E. a. lat. 36. I know not whether they can prove the great conjunction of the planets, from whence, like other RECEIVERS AND PROPHETS, Timour derived the surname of SHAH KERMAN, or master of the conjunctions (Institutions, Orient, p. 576).

* In the Institutions of Timour, these subjects of the khan of Kashgar are most improperly styled Ouzbeks, or Turkish, a name which belongs to another branch and country, or Tartars (Abolghas, p. 3, p. 49, p. 5). Could I be sure that this word is in the Turkish original, I would boldly pronounce that the Institutions were composed a century after the death of Timour, since the establishment of the Ouzbeks in Transoxiana.
wishes of the people were turned towards an hero who suffered in their cause. The chiefs of the law and of the army had pledged their salvation to support him with their lives and fortunes; but in the hour of danger they were silent and afraid; and, after waiting seven days on the hills of Samarcand, he retreated to the desert with only sixty horsemen. The fugitives were overtaken by a thousand Getes, whom he repulsed with incredible slaughter, and his enemies were forced to exclaim, "Timour is a wonderful man: fortune and the divine favour are with him." But in this bloody action his own followers were reduced to ten, a number which was soon diminished by the desertion of three Carizamians. He wandered in the desert with his wife, seven companions, and four horses; and sixty-two days was he plunged in a loathsome dungeon, from whence he escaped by his own courage, and the remorse of the oppressor. After swimming the broad and rapid stream of the Jihoom, or Oxus, he led, during some months, the life of a vagrant and outlaw on the borders of the adjacent states. But his fame shone brighter in adversity; he learned to distinguish the friends of his person, the associates of his fortune, and to apply the various characters of men for their advantage, and, above all, for his own. On his return to his native country, Timour was successively joined by the parties of his confederates, who anxiously sought him in the desert; nor can I refuse to describe, in his pathetic simplicity, one of their fortunate encounters. He presented himself as a guide to three chiefs, who were at the head of seventy horse. "When their eyes fell
"upon me," says Timour, "they were over-
whelmed with joy; and they alighted from
their horses; and they came and kneeled; and
they kissed my stirrup. I also came down from
my horse, and took each of them in my arms.
"And I put my turban on the head of the first
chief; and my girdle, rich in jewels and
wrought with gold, I bound on the loins of
the second; and the third I clothed in my
own coat. And they wept; and I wept also; and
the hour of prayer was arrived, and we prayed.
"And we mounted our horses, and came to my
dwelling; and I collected my people, and made
a feast." His treaty hands were soon increased
by the bravest of the tribes; he led them against
a superior foe; and after some vicissitudes of war,
the Getes were finally driven from the kingdom
of Transoxiana. He had done much for his own
glory; but much remained to be done, much art
to be exerted, and some blood to be spilt, before
he could teach his equals to obey him as their
master. The birth and power of emir Houssein
compelled him to accept a vicious and unworthy
colleague, whose sister was the best beloved of his
wives. Their union was short and jealous: but
the policy of Timour, in their frequent quarrels,
exposed his rival to the reproach of injustice and
perfidy; and, after a small defeat, Houssein was
slain by some sagacious friends, who presumed,
for the last time, to disobey the commands of
their lord. At the age of thirty-four, and in a

*The first book of Shireefdad is employed on the private life of
the hero; and he himself, or his secretary (Institutions, p. 357),

enlarges
general diet or coronation, he was invested with imperial command; but he affected to revere the house of Zingis; and while the emir Timour reigned over Zagatai and the East, a nominal khan served as a private officer in the armies of his servant. A fertile kingdom, five hundred miles in length and in breadth, might have satisfied the ambition of a subject; but Timour aspired to the dominion of the world; and before his death, the crown of Zagatai was one of the twenty-seven crowns which he had placed on his head. Without expatiating on the victories of thirty-five campaigns; without describing the lines of march which he repeatedly traced over the continent of Asia; I shall briefly represent his conquests in, 
1. Persia; 2. Tartary; and, 3. India;* and from thence proceed to the more interesting narrative of his Ottoman war.

1. For every war, a motive of safety or revenge, of honour or zeal, of right or convenience, may be readily found in the jurisprudence of conquerors. No sooner had Timour re-united to the patrimony of Zagatai the dependent countries of Carizime and Candahar, than he turned his eyes towards the kingdoms of Iran or Persia. From the Oxus to the Tigris, that extensive country was left without a lawful sovereign since the death of Ahousaid, the last of the descendants of the great enlarges, with pleasure, on the thirteen designs and enterprises which must truly constitute his personal merit. It even shines through the dark coloring of Arabshah, p. 102, &c.

* The conquests of Persia, Tartary, and India, are represented in the second and third books of Shereefoddin, and by Arabshah, c. 18.

55. Consult the excellent indexes to the Institutions.
Houlacou. Peace and justice had been banished from the land above forty years; and the Mogul invader might seem to listen to the cries of an oppressed people. Their petty tyrants might have opposed him with confederate arms; they separately stood, and successively fell; and the difference of their fate was only marked by the promptitude of submission, or the obstinacy of resistance. Ibrahim, prince of Shirwan or Albania, kissed the footstool of the imperial throne. His peace-offerings of silks, horses, and jewels, were composed, according to the Tartar fashion, each article of nine pieces; but a critical spectator observed, that there were only eight slaves. "I am the ninth," replied Ibrahim, who was prepared for the remark; and his flattery was rewarded by the smile of Timour. Shah Mansour, prince of Fars, or the proper Persia, was one of the least powerful, but most dangerous, of his enemies. In a battle under the walls of Shiraz, he broke, with three or four thousand soldiers, the cojd, or main body, of thirty thousand horse, where the emperor fought in person. No more than fourteen or fifteen guards remained near the standard of Timour: he stood firm as a rock, and received on his helmet two weighty strokes of a scymetar; the Moguls rallied; the head of Mansour was thrown

* The reverence of the Tartars for the mysterious number of nine is declared by Abulghasir Khan, who, for that reason, divides his Genealogical History into nine parts.

† According to Amidiab (p. 1, c. 26, p. 183), the coward Timour ran away to his tent, and hid himself from the pursuit of Shah Mansour under the women's garments. Perhaps Shaarefollah (c. 31, c. 24) has magnified his courage.
at his feet, and he declared his esteem of the valour of a foe, by extirpating all the males of so intrepid a race. From Shiraz, his troops advanced to the Persian gulf: and the richness and weakness of Ormuz were displayed in an annual tribute of six hundred thousand dinars of gold. Bagdad was no longer the city of peace, the seat of the caliphs; but the noblest conquest of Hulacou could not be overlooked by his ambitious successor. The whole course of the Tigris and Euphrates, from the mouth to the sources of those rivers, was reduced to his obedience: he entered Edessa; and the Turkmans of the black sheep were chastised for the sacrilegious pillage of a caravan of Mecca. In the mountains of Georgia, the native christians still braved the law and the sword of Mahomet; by three expeditions, he obtained the merit of the gazi, or holy war; and the prince of Tellis became his proselyte and friend.

11. A just retaliation might be urged for the invasion of Turkestan, or the eastern Tariy. The dignity of Timour could not endure the

The history of Ormuz is not unlike that of Tyre. The old city, on the continent, was destroyed by the Tartars, and replaced on a neighbouring island, without fresh water or vegetation. The kings of Ormuz, rich in the Indian trade and the pearl fishery, possessed large territories both in Persia and Arabia; but they were at first the tributaries of the incans of Kerman, and at last were delivered (4. x. 1273) by the Portuguese tyrants from the tyranny of their own slave (Marcus Polo, i. 1. s. 13, 19; B. Alhazene, Geographia Islamica, p. 301, 302; an original chronicle of Ormuz, in Texas, or Bladen's History of Persia, p. 316-318, and the amination, inserted in the first volume of Cambulo, or Ludovico Barbaro (1523), fol. 187, of Andrea Canali (1611), fol. 207, 208, and of Odoredo Barbaro (1516), fol. 311-312).
impunity of the Gutes; he passed the Sihoon, subdued the kingdom of Cashgar, and marched seven times into the heart of their country. His most distant camp was two months' journey, or four hundred and eighty leagues, to the north-east of Samarcan; and his emirs, who traversed the river Irtish, engraven in the forests of Siberia a rude memorial of their exploits. The conquest of Kipzak, or the western Tartary, was founded on the double motive of aiding the distressed, and chastising the ungrateful. Toctamish, a fugitive prince, was entertained and protected in his court; the ambassadors of Auruss Khan were dismissed with an haughty denial, and followed on the same day by the armies of Zogatuj; and their success established Toctamish in the Mogul empire of the north. But, after a reign of ten years, the new khan forgot the merits and the strength of his benefactor, the base usurper, as he deemed him, of the sacred rights of the house of Zingis. Through the gates of Derbend, he entered Persia at the head of ninety thousand horse: with the innumerable forces of Kipzak, Bulgaria, Circassia, and Russia, he passed the Sihoon, burnt the palaces of Timour, and compelled him, amidst the winter snows, to contend for Samarcan and his life. After a mild expostulation and a glorious victory, the emperor resolved on revenge; and by the east and the west of the Caspian, and the Volga, he twice invaded Kipzak.

* Aseksbahan had insulted into Kipzak, and acquired a singular knowledge of the geography, cities, and revolutions, of that northern region (p. 1, c. 42-49).
with such mighty powers, that thirteen miles were measured from his right to his left wing. In a march of five months, they rarely beheld the footsteps of man; and their daily subsistence was often trusted to the fortune of the chase. At length the armies encountered each other; but the treachery of the standard-bearer, who, in the heat of action, revealed the imperial standard of Kipzak, determined the victory of the Zaganais: and Toctamish (I speak the language of the Institutions) gave the tribe of Toushi to the wind of desolation. He fled to the Christian duke of Lithuania; again returned to the banks of the Volga; and, after fifteen battles with a domestic rival, at last perished in the wilds of Siberia. The pursuit of a flying enemy carried Timour into the tributary provinces of Russia: a duke of the reigning family was made prisoner amidst the ruins of his capital; and Yeletz, by the pride and ignorance of the Orientals, might easily be confounded with the genuine metropolis of the nation. Moscow trembled at the approach of the Tartar, and the resistance would have been futile, since the hopes of the Russians were placed in a miraculous image of the virgin, to whose protection they ascribed the casual and voluntary retreat of the conqueror. Ambition and prudence recalled him to the south: the desolate country was exhausted, and the Mogul soldiers were enriched with an immense spoil of precious

* Institutions of Timour, p. 123, 122. Mr. White, the editor, becomes some information on the superficial account of Sherif"

..
furs, of linen of Antioch, and of ingots of gold and silver. On the banks of the Don, or Tanais, he received an humble deputation from the consuls and merchants of Egypt, Venice, Genoa, Catalonia, and Biscay, who occupied the commerce and city of Tanais, or Azoph, at the mouth of the river. They offered their gifts, admired his magnificence, and trusted to his royal word. But the peaceful visits of an emir, who explored the state of the magazines and harbour, was speedily followed by the destructive presence of the Tartars. The city was reduced to ashes; the Moslems were pillaged and dismissed; but all the Christians, who had not fled to their ships, were condemned either to death or slavery. Revenge prompted him to burn the cities of Serai and Astrachan, the monuments of rising civilization;

*The furs of Russia are more valuable than the rubies. But the city of Antioch has never been famous, and Antioch was in ruins. I suspect that it was some manufacture of Europe, which the Hanse merchants had imported by the way of Novgorod.

* M. Lavéque (Hist. de Russie, t. ii. p. 247. Vie de Timour, p. 63-67, before the French version of the Institute) has corrected the errors of Shererekdin, and marked the true limit of Timour’s conquests. His arguments are superb, and a simple appeal to the Russian muses is sufficient to prove that Moscow, which six years before had been taken by Tseremisk, escaped the arms of a more formidable invader.

* An Egyptian named from Grand Cairo is mentioned in Barbaro’s voyage to Tanais in 1485; after the city had been rebuilt (Romulino, tom. ii. fol. 82).

* The sack of Azoph is described by Shererekdin (t. ii. p. 55), and much more particularly by the author of the Italian chronicles (Andrea de Boldini de Querso, in Chron. Transilvanorum in Muratorii Scriptores, p. 602-603). He had conversed with the Minoi, two Venetian brothers, one of whom had been sent a deputation to the camp of Timour, and the other had lost at Azoph thirty-five and 15,000 drachms.
and his vanity proclaimed, that he had pened carried to the region of perpetual daylight, a strange phenomenon, which authorised his mahometan doctors to dispense with the obligation of evening prayer.

111. When Timour first proposed to his princes and emirs the invasion of India or Hindostan, he was answered by a murmur of discontent; "The rivers! and the mountains and deserts! and the soldiers clad in armour! and the elephants, destroyers of men!" But the displeasure of the emperor was more dreadful than all these terrors; and his superior reason was convinced, that an enterprise of such tremendous aspect was safe and easy in the execution. He was informed by his spies of the weakness and anarchy of Hindostan: the soubahs of the provinces had erected the standard of rebellion; and the perpetual infancy of sultan Mahmoud was despised, even in the harem of Delhi. The Mogul army moved in three great divisions; and Timour observes, with pleasure, that the ninety-two squadrons of a thousand horse most fortunately corresponded with the ninety-two names or epithets of the prophet Mahomet. Between the Sihoon and the Indus they crossed

---

* Sherifuddin only says (p. 33, c. 12), that the rays of the setting and those of the rising sun, were scarcely separated by any interval; a problem which may be solved in the latitude of Moscow, (the fiftieth degree), with the aid of the aurora borealis, and a long summer twilight. But a day of forty days (Khan英rans cited in Beaufort, p. 280) would rigidly confine us within the polar circle.

* For the Indian war, see the Institutions (p. 133-130), the fourth book of Sherifuddin, and the history of Ferihat (in Bow, vol. s. p. 1-20), which throws a general light on the affairs of Hindostan.
one of the ridges of mountains, which are styled by the Arabian geographers, the stony girdles of the earth. The highland robbers were subdued or extirpated; but great numbers of men and horses perished in the snow: the emperor himself was let down a precipice on a portable scaffold; the ropes were one hundred and fifty cubits in length, and, before he could reach the bottom, this dangerous operation was five times repeated. Timour crossed the Indus at the ordinary passage of Attok; and successively traversed, in the footsteps of Alexander, the Punjab, or five rivers, that fall into the master-stream. From Attok to Delhi, the high road measures no more than six hundred miles; but the two conquerors deviated to the south-east, and the motive of Timour was to join his grandson, who had achieved, by his command, the conquest of Moutan. On the eastern bank of the Hyphasis, on the edge of the desert, the Macedonian hero halted and wept: the Mogul entered the desert, reduced the fortress of Batur, and stood in arms before the gates of Delhi, a great and flourishing city, which had subsisted three centuries under the dominion of the mahometan kings. The siege, more especially of the castle, might have been a work of time; but he tempted, by the appearance of weakness, the sultan Mahmoud and his vizir.

*The rivers of the Punjab, the five eastern branches of the Indus, have been laid down, for the first time, with truth and accuracy, in Major Rennell's incomparable map of Hindostan. In his Critical Memoir he illustrates, with judgment and learning, the marches of Alexander and Timour.*
to descend into the plain, with ten thousand cuirassiers, forty thousand of his foot guards, and one hundred and twenty elephants, whose tusks are said to have been armed with sharp and poisoned daggers. Against these monsters, or rather, against the imagination of his troops, he condescended to use some extraordinary precautions of fire and a ditch, of iron spikes, and a rampart of bucklers; but the event taught the Moguls to smile at their own fears; and, as soon as these unwieldy animals were routed, the inferior species (the men of India) disappeared from the field. Timour made his triumphal entry into the capital of Hindostan; and admired, with a view to imitate, the architecture of the stately mosch; but the order and licence of a general pillage and massacre polluted the festival of his victory. He resolved to purify his soldiers in the blood of the idolaters, or Gentooos, who still surpass, in the proportion of ten to one, the numbers of the Moolems. In this pious design, he advanced one hundred miles to the north-east of Delhi, passed the Ganges, fought several battles by land and water, and penetrated to the famous rock of Conplee, the statue of the cow, that seems to discharge the mighty river, whose source is far distant among the mountains of Thibet. His
return was along the skirts of the northern hills; nor could this rapid campaign of one year justify the strange foresight of his emirs, that their children, in a warm climate, would degenerate into a race of Hindoos.

It was on the banks of the Ganges that Timour was informed, by his speedy messengers, of the disturbances which had arisen on the confines of Georgia and Anatolia, of the revolt of the christians, and the ambitious designs of the sultan Bajazet. His vigour of mind and body was not impaired by sixty-three years, and innumerable fatigues; and, after enjoying some tranquil months in the palace of Samarcand, he proclaimed a new expedition of seven years into the western countries of Asia. To the soldiers who had served in the Indian war, he granted the choice of remaining at home, or following their prince; but the troops of all the provinces and kingdoms of Persia were commanded to assemble at Ispahan, and wait the arrival of the imperial standard. It was first directed against the christians of Georgia, who were strong only in their rocks, their castles, and the winter season; but these obstacles were overcome by the zeal and perseverance of Timour: the rebels submitted to the tribute or the koran; and if both religions boasted of their martyrs, that name is more justly due to the christian

---

* See the Institutions, p. 141, to the end of the first book, and Shereefuddin (I., v., c. 1-16) to the entrance of Timour into Syria.
prisoners, who were offered the choice of submission or death. On his descent from the hills, the emperor gave audience to the first ambassadors of Bajazet, and opened the hostile correspondence of complaints and menaces; which fermented two years before the final explosion. Between two jealous and haughty neighbours, the motives of quarrel will seldom be wanting. The Mogul and Ottoman conquests now touched each other in the neighbourhood of Erzeroum, and the Euphrates; nor had the doubtful limit been ascertained by time and treaty. Each of these ambitious monarchs might accuse his rival of violating his territory; of threatening his vassals; and protecting his rebels; and, by the name of rebels, each understood the fugitive princes, whose kingdoms he had usurped, and whose life or liberty he implacably pursued. The resemblance of character was still more dangerous than the opposition of interest; and in their victorious career, Timour was impatient of an equal, and Bajazet was ignorant of a superior. The first epistle* of the Mogul emperor must have provoked, instead of reconciling the Turkish sultan, whose family and nation he affected to despise.†

* We have three copies of these hostile epistles in the British Museum (p. 157), in Barbeyrac’s ch. 7, c. 14, and in Arthaber (tom. ii. c. 19, p. 181-201), which agree with each other in the spirit and substance rather than in the style. It is probable, that they have been translated, with various latitude, from the Turkish original into the Arabic and Persian tongues.

† The Mogul name distinguishes himself and his countrymen by the name of Turks, and designates the time and nation of Bajazet with the less honourable epithet of Turkana. Yet I do not understand how.
Dost thou not know, that the greatest part of Asia is subject to our arms and our laws? that our invincible forces extend from one sea to the other? that the potentates of the earth form a line before our gate? and that we have compelled fortune herself to watch over the prosperity of our empire? What is the foundation of thy insolence and folly? Thou hast fought some battles in the woods of Anatolia; contemptible trophies! Thou hast obtained some victories over the christians of Europe; thy sword was blessed by the apostle of God; and thy obedience to the precept of the koran, in waging war against the infidels, is the sole consideration that prevents us from destroying thy country, the frontier and bulwark of the Moslem world. Be wise in time; reflect; repent; and avert the thunder of our vengeance, which is yet suspended over thy head. Thou art no more than a pismire; why wilt thou seek to provoke the elephants? Alas, they will trample thee under their feet." In his replies, Bajazet poured forth the indignation of a soul which was deeply stung by such unusual contempt. After retorting the basest reproaches on the thief and rebel of the desert, the Ottoman recapitulates his boasted victories in Iran, Touran, and the Indies; and labours to prove, that Timour had never triumphed unless by his own perfidy and the vices of his foes. "Thy armies are innumerable; be they so; but what are the arrows of the Ottomans could be descended from a Turkman seller; those inland shepherds were so remote from the sea, and all maritime affairs
the flying Tartar against the scymetars and battle-axes of my firm and invincible janizaries? I will guard the princes who have implored my protection: seek them in my tents. The cities of Arzingan and Erzeroum are mine, and unless the tribute be duly paid, I will demand the arrears under the walls of Tauris and Sultania. The ungovernable rage of the sultan at length betrayed him to an insult of a more domestic kind. "If I fly from my arms," said he, "may my wives be thrice divorced from my bed: but if thou hast not courage to meet me in the field, mayest thou again receive thy wives after they have thrice endured the embraces of a stranger." Any violation by word or deed of the secrecy of the harem is an unpardonable offence among the Turkish nations; and the political quarrel of the two monarchs was embittered by private and personal resentment. Yet in his first expedition, Timour was satisfied with the siege and destruction of Siwas or Sebaste, a strong city on the borders of Anatolia; and he revenged the indiscretion of the Ottoman on a

*According to the lexxo, ii, p. 300, and Sale's Chesmawa, p. 130, a Muhammadan who had thrice divorced his wife (who had thrice rejected the want of a divorce) could not take her again, till after she had been married to, and repudiated by, another husband: an ignominious transaction, which it is needless to aggravate, by supposing that the first husband was not her enjoyed by a second before his face. (Canynt's State of the Ottoman Empire, i. iv. c. 4.)

The common delicacy of the Orientals, in never speaking of their women, is much higher degree by Arabia than the Turkish nation; and it is remarkable enough that Chaldecus (ii. ii. p. 54) had some knowledge of the prejudice and the insult.
garrison of four thousand Armenians, who were buried alive for the brave and faithful discharge of their duty. As a Mussulman he seemed to respect the pious occupation of Bajazet, who was still engaged in the blockade of Constantinople; and after this salutary lesson, the Mogul conqueror checked his pursuit, and turned aside to the invasion of Syria and Egypt. In those transactions, the Ottoman prince, by the Orientals, and even by Timur, is styled the Ḥārām of Rome, the Caesar of the Romans: a title which, by a small anticipation, might be given to a monarch who possessed the provinces, and threatened the city, of the successors of Constantine.

The military republic of the Mamelukes still reigned in Egypt and Syria; but the dynasty of the Turks was overthrown by that of the Circassians, and their favourite Barak, from a slave and a prisoner, was raised and restored to the throne. In the midst of rebellion and discord, he braved the menaces, corresponded with the enemies, and detained the ambassadors, of the Mogul, who patiently expected his decease, to revenge the crimes of the father on the feeble reign of his son Farage. The Syrian emirs

1 For the style of the Mogul, see the Instaurations (p. 131, 147), and for the Pataian, the Bibliothèque Orientale (p. 89): but I do not find that the title of Caesar has been applied by the Arabians, or assumed by the Ottoman Emperors.

2 For the reign of Barak and Pharadaj, see M. de Gaignes (tom. i., p. 237), who, from the Arabic treatise of Aboulmausam, Ebn Schoumeh and Atalal, has added some facts to our country stock of materials.

3 For these recent and domestic transactions, Atallah, though partial, is a credible witness (tom. 1., c. 61-69, tom. 2., c. 1-14).
were assembled at Aleppo to repel the invasion; they confided in the fame and discipline of the Mamlukes, in the temper of their swords and lances of the purest steel of Damascus, in the strength of their walled cities, and in the populousness of sixty thousand villages; and instead of sustaining a siege, they threw open their gates and arrayed their forces in the plain. But these forces were not cemented by virtue and union; and some powerful emirs had been induced to desert or betray their more loyal companions. Timour's front was covered with a line of Indian elephants, whose turrets were filled with archers and Greek fire; the rapid evolutions of his cavalry completed the dismay and disorder; the Syrian crowds fell back on each other; many thousands were stifled or slaughtered in the entrance of the great street; the Moguls entered with the fugitives; and, after a short defence, the citadel, the impregnable citadel of Aleppo, was surrendered by cowardice or treachery. Among the suppliants and captives, Timour distinguished the doctors of the law, whom he invited to the dangerous honour of a personal conference. — The Mogul prince was a zealous musulman; but his Persian schools had taught him to revere the memory of Ali and Hoscin; and he had indulged

Timour must have been aught to a Syrian; but the nobility of base would have oblied him, to some measure, to respect him enemy and himself. His letters may correct the fanciful events of Morefisales I. 47-32.

These interesting conversations appear to have been reported by Aribolai (see, I. c. 68, p. 628-543) from the casual and historical like Schatam, a principal actor. Yet how could he be alive sixty-five years afterwards (Urebeta, p. 260)?
a deep prejudice against the Syrians, as the enemies of the son of the daughter of the apostle of God. To these doctors he proposed a captious question, which the casuists of Bochara, Samarcand, and Herat, were incapable of resolving. "Who are the true martyrs, of those who are slain on my side, or on that of my enemies?" But he was silenced, or satisfied, by the dexterity of one of the cadis of Aleppo, who replied, in the words of Mahomet himself, that the motive, not the ensign, constitutes the martyr; and that the Moslems of either party, who fight only for the glory of God, may deserve that sacred appellation. The true succession of the caliphs was a controversy of a still more delicate nature, and the frankness of a doctor, too honest for his situation, provoked the emperor to exclaim, "Ye are as false as those of Damascus. Moawiyah was an usurper, Yezid a tyrant, and Ali alone is the lawful successor of the prophet." A prudent explanation restored his tranquillity; and he passed to a more familiar topic of conversation. "What is your age?" said he to the cadis. "Fifty years."—"It would be the age of my eldest son; you see me here (continued Timour), a poor, lame, decrepit mortal. Yet by my arm has the Almighty been pleased to subdue the kingdoms of Iran, Tourn, and the Indies. I am not a man of blood; and God is my witness, that in all my wars I have never been the aggressor, and that my enemies have always been the authors of their own calamity." During this peaceful conversation,
the streets of Aleppo streamed with blood, and re-echoed with the cries of mothers and children, with the shrieks of violated virgins. The rich plunder that was abandoned to his soldiers might stimulate their avarice; but their cruelty was enforced by the peremptory command of producing an adequate number of heads, which, according to his custom, were curiously piled in columns and pyramids: the Moguls celebrated the feast of victory, while the surviving Moslems passed the night in tears and in chains. I shall not dwell on the march of the destroyer from Aleppo to Damascus, where he was rudely encountered, and almost overthrown, by the armies of Egypt. A retrograde motion was imputed to his distress and despair: one of his nephews deserted to the enemy; and Syria rejoiced in the tale of his defeat, when the sultan was driven by the revolt of the Mamalukes to escape with precipitation and shame to his palace of Cairo. Abandoned by their prince, the inhabitants of Damascus still defended their walls; and Timour consented to raise the siege, if they would adorn his retreat with a gift or ransom; each article of nine pieces. But no sooner had he introduced himself into the city, under colour of a truce, than he perfidiously violated the treaty; imposed a contribution of ten millions of gold; and animated his troops to chastise the posterity of those Syrians who had executed, or approved, the murder of the grandson of Mahomet. A family which had given honourable burial to the head of Hosein,
and a colony of artificers whom he sent to labour at Samaccaud, were alone reserved in the general massacre; and, after a period of seven centuries, Damascus was reduced to ashes, because a Tartar was moved by religious zeal to avenge the blood of an Arab. The losses and fatigues of the campaign obliged Timour to renounce the conquest of Palestine and Egypt; but in his return to the Euphrates, he delivered Aleppo to the flames; and justified his pious motive by the pardon and reward of two thousand sectaries of All, who were desirous to visit the tomb of his son. I have expatiated on the personal anecdotes which mark the character of the Mogul hero; but I shall briefly mention, that he erected on the ruins of Bagdad a pyramid of ninety thousand heads; again visited Georgus; encamped on the banks of Araxes; and proclaimed his resolution of marching against the Ottoman emperor. Conscious of the importance of the war, he collected his forces from every province: eight hundred thousand men were enrolled on his military list.

*The marches and occupation of Timour between the Syrian and Ottoman arms, are represented by Shereeffinde [I. v, c. 29-33] and Arefeelah (Str. ii, c. 13-18).

*This number of 800,000 was extracted by Arefeelah, or rather by Ilm Schamne, as original in Timour, on the basis of a Tartarian officer from I. v, c. 68. p. 411. and it is remarkable enough, that a Greek historian Baramus, l. 1, c. 20, adds no more than 50,000 men. Poggio recites 1,000,000; another Latin contemporary Chiriz, Tarbullah, apud Muratori, tom. xi, p. 509) 1,100,000; and the enormous sum of 1,600,000, is afforded by a German writer, who was present at the battle of Arges (Lassneke, ed. Chateauneuf, L. ii, p. 82).

Timour, in his institutions, has not ceased to calculate his troops, his subjects, or his revenues.
but the splendid commands of five and ten thousand horse, may be rather expressive of the rank and pension of the chiefs, than of the genuine number of effective soldiers. In the pillage of Syria, the Moguls had acquired immense riches: but the delivery of their pay and arrears for seven years, more firmly attached them to the imperial standard.

During this diversion of the Mogul arms, Bajazet had two years to collect his forces for a more serious encounter. They consisted of four hundred thousand horse and foot, whose merit and fidelity were of an unequal complexion. We may discriminate the janizaries, who have been gradually raised to an establishment of forty thousand men; a national cavalry, the splendour of modern times; twenty thousand encasemiers of Europe, clad in black and impenetrable armour; the troops of Anatolia, whose princes had taken refuge in the camp of Timour, and a colony of Tartars, whom he had driven from Kipzak, and to whom Bajazet had assigned a settlement in the plains of Adrianople. The fearless confidence of the sultan urged him to meet his antagonist; and, as if he had chosen that spot for revenge, he displayed his banners near the ruins of the unfortu-

* A wide latitude of non-effectives was allowed by the great Mogul for his ownroids and the benefit of his officers. Bajazet's forces were Pang-Hamal, commanders of 2000 horse of which he maintained at more than 500 (Voyages, rur. i, p. 388; 580).
* Timour himself lost at 400,000 men the Ottoman army (Histoire de I'Empire Persan, p. 233), which is reduced to 100,000 by Pococke (I.S. x, 260), and swelled by the German soldiers to 1,000,000. It is evident that the Moguls were the more numerous.
nate Sovas. In the meanwhile, Timour moved from the Araxes through the countries of Armenia and Anatolia: his boldness was secured by the wisest precautions; his speed was guided by order and discipline; and the woods, the mountains, and the rivers, were diligently explored by the flying squadrons, who marked his road and preceded his standard. Firm in his plan of fighting in the heart of the Ottoman kingdom, he avoided their camp; dextrously inclined to the left; occupied Caesarea; traversed the salt desert and the river Halys; and invested Angora: while the sultan, immovable and ignorant in his post, compared the Tartar swiftness to the crawling of a snail: he returned on the wings of indignation to the relief of Angora; and as both generals were alike impatient for action, the plains round that city were the scene of a memorable battle, which has immortalized the glory of Timour and the shame of Bajazet. For this signal victory, the Mogul emperor was indebted to himself, to the genius of the moment, and the discipline of thirty years. He had improved the tactics, without violating the manners, of his nation, whose force still consisted in the missile weapons, and rapid evolutions, of a numerous

* It may not be useless to mark the distances between Angora and the neighbouring cities, by the journeys of the caravans, each of twenty or twenty-five miles: to Smyrna 20, to Edirne 10, to Bessos 10, to Caesarea 8, to Smyrna 10, to Nicomedia 9, to Constantinople 12 or 13. Gue Tournay, Voyages du Levant, vol. ii. letter xx. 

* See the Systems of Tactics in the Institutions, which the English editors have illustrated with elaborate plans (p. 373-407).
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

From a single troop to a great army, the mode of attack was the same; a foremost line first advanced to the charge, and was supported in a just order by the squadrons of the great vanguard. The general's eye watched over the field, and at his command the front and rear of the right and left wings successively moved forwards in their several divisions, and in a direct or oblique line; the enemy was pressed by eighteen or twenty attacks, and each attack afforded a chance of victory. If they all proved fruitless, or unsuccessful, the occasion was worthy of the emperor himself, who gave the signal of advancing to the standard and main body, which he led in person. But in the battle of Angora, the main body itself was supported, on the flanks, and in the rear, by the bravest squadrons of the reserve, commanded by the sons and grandsons of Timour. The conqueror of Hindostan ostentatiously shewed a line of elephants, the trophies, rather than the instruments of victory; the use of the Greek fire was familiar to the Moguls and Ottomans; but had they borrowed from Europe the recent invention of gunpowder and cannon, the artificial thunder, in the hands of either nation, must have turned the fortune of the day. In that day,

* * *

* The name himself (says Timour) must then put the foot of courage into the stirrup of patience. A Tartar metaphor, which is lost in the English, but preserved in the French, version of the Institutes (p. 136, 137).

* The Greek fire, on Timour's side, is attested by Shershahib (6, v. 52); but Voltaire's strange suspicion, that some cannon, inscribed with strange characters, must have been sent by that monarch to Delhi, is refuted by the universal silence of contemporaries.
Bajazet displayed the qualities of a soldier and a chief: but his genius sunk under a stronger ascendant; and from various motives, the greatest part of his troops failed him in the decisive moment. His rigour and avarice had provoked a mutiny among the Turks; and even his son Soliman too hastily withdrew from the field. The forces of Anatolia, loyal in their revolt, were drawn away to the banners of their lawful princes. His Tartar allies had been tempted by the letters and emissaries of Timour;* who reproached their ignoble servitude under the slaves of their fathers; and offered to their hopes the dominion of their new, or the liberty of their ancient, country. In the right wing of Bajazet, the cuirassiers of Europe charged, with faithful hearts and irresistible arms; but these men of iron were soon broken by an artful flight and headlong pursuit; and the janizaries alone, without cavalry or missile weapons, were encompassed by the circle of the Mogul hunters. Their valour was at length oppressed by heat, thirst, and the weight of numbers; and the unfortunate sultan, afflicted with the gout in his hands and feet, was transported from the field on the fleetest of his horses. He was pursued and taken by the titular khan of Zagatai; and after his capture, and the defeat of the Ottoman powers, the kingdom of Anatolia

* Timour has disbelieved this secret and important operation with the Tartars, which is indisputably proved by the joint evidence of the Armenian (tom., i. c. 47, p. 291), Turkish (Amali, Leucius. p. 291), and Persian historians (Khamaini, epist. d'Héracle, p. 892).
submitted to the conqueror, who planted his standard at Kiotahia, and dispersed on all sides the ministers of rapine and destruction. Mirza Mohemmed Sultan, the eldest and best beloved of his grandsons, was dispatched to Boursa, with thirty thousand horse; and such was his youthful ardour, that he arrived with only four thousand at the gates of the capital, after performing in five days a march of two hundred and thirty miles. Yet fear is still more rapid in its course; and Soliman, the son of Bajazet, had already passed over to Europe with the royal treasure. The spoil, however, of the palace and city was immense; the inhabitants had escaped; but the buildings, for the most part of wood, were reduced to ashes. From Boursa, the grandson of Timour advanced to Nice, even yet a fair and flourishing city; and the Mogul squadrons were only stopped by the waves of the Propontis. The same success attended the other mirzas and emirs in their excursions: and Smyrna, defended by the zeal and courage of the Rhodian knights, alone deserved the presence of the emperor himself. After an obstinate defence, the place was taken by storm; all that breathed was put to the sword; and the heads of the christian heroes were launched from the engines, on board of two carracks, or great ships of Europe, that rode at anchor in the harbour. The Moslems of Asia rejoiced in their deliverance from a dangerous and domestic foe, and a parallel was drawn between the two rivals, by observing that Timour, in fourteen days, had
The iron cage in which Bajazet was imprisoned by Tamerlane, so long and so often repeated as a moral lesson, is now rejected as a fable by the modern writers, who smile at the vulgar credulity. They appeal with confidence to the Persian history of Sherefeddin Ali, which has been given to our curiosity in a French version, and from which I shall collect and abridge a more specious narrative of this memorable transaction.

No sooner was Timour informed that the captive Ottoman was at the door of his tent, than he graciously stept forwards to receive him, seated him by his side, and mingled with just reproaches a soothing pity for his rank, and misfortune.

"Alas!" said the emperor, "the decree of fate is now accomplished by your own fault: it is the web which you have woven, the thorns of the tree which yourself have planted. I wished to spare, and even to assist, the champion of the Moslems; you braved our threats; you despised our friendship; you forced us to enter your kingdom with our invincible armies. Behold the event. Had you vanquished, I am..."
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

not ignorant of the fate which you reserved for myself and my troops. But I disdain to retaliate: your life and honour are secure; and I shall express my gratitude to God by my clemency to man." The royal captive shewed some signs of repentance, accepted the humiliation of a robe of honour, and embraced with tears his son Mousa, who, at his request, was sought and found among the captives of the field. The Ottoman princes were lodged in a splendid pavilion; and the respect of the guards could be surpassed only by their vigilance. On the arrival of the harem from Boursa, Timour restored the queen Despina and her daughter to their father and husband; but he piously required that the Servian princess, who had hitherto been indulged in the profession of christianity, should embrace without delay the religion of the prophet. In the feast of victory, to which Bajazet was invited, the Mogul emperor placed a crown on his head and a sceptre in his hand, with a solemn assurance of restoring him with an increase of glory to the throne of his ancestors. But the effect of this promise was disappointed by the sultan's untimely death: amidst the care of the most skilful physicians, he expired of an apoplexy at Ak-kehr, the Antioch of Pisidia, about nine months after his defeat. The victor dropped a tear over his grave: his body, with royal pomp, was conveyed to the mausoleum which he had erected at Boursa; and his son Mousa, after receiving a rich present of gold and jewels, of horses and arms, was
vested by a patent in red ink with the kingdom of Anatolia.

Such is the portrait of a generous conqueror, which has been extracted from his own memorials, and dedicated to his son and grandson, nineteen years after his decease; and, at a time when the truth was remembered by thousands, a manifest falsehood would have implied a satire on his real conduct. Weighty indeed is this evidence, adopted by all the Persian histories; yet flattery, more especially in the East, is base and odious; and the harsh and ignominious treatment of Bajazet is attested by a chain of witnesses, some of whom shall be produced in the order of their time and country. The reader has not forgot the garrison of French, whom the marshal Boucicaut left behind him for the defence of Constantinople. They were on the spot to receive the earliest and most faithful intelligence of the overthrow of their great adversary; and it is more than probable that some of them accompanied the Greek embassy to the camp of Tamerlane. From their account, the hardships of the prison and death of Bajazet are affirmed by the marshal’s servant and historian, within the
distance of seven years. 2. The name of Poggio the Italian, is deservedly famous among the revivers of learning in the fifteenth century. His elegant dialogue on the vicissitudes of fortune was composed in his fiftieth year, twenty-eight years after the Turkish victory of Tamerlane; whom he celebrates as not inferior to the illustrious barbarians of antiquity. Of his exploits and discipline, Poggio was informed by several ocular witnesses; nor does he forget an example so opposite to his theme as the Ottoman monarch, whom the Scythian confined like a wild beast in an iron cage, and exhibited a spectacle to Asia. I might add the authority of two Italian chronicles, perhaps of an earlier date, which would prove at least that the same story, whether false or true, was imported into Europe.

* Et fut lui mensa (Rajart) prise, et mené en prison, en laquelle mener de son mort / Memoires de Bossuet, p. 1, c. 27. These monodes were composed while the marshal was still governor of Genoa, from whence he was expelled in the year 1409, by a popular insurrection (Maurtui, Annali d'Italia, tom. xii, p. 473, 474).

* The reader will find a satisfactory account of the life and writings of Poggio in the Foggians, an entertaining work of M. Lafont, and in the Storia della Letteratura latina e italiana (tom. v, p. 305-308). Poggio was born in the year 1380, and died in 1459.

* The dialogue de Victorie Fortunis (of which a complete and elegant edition has been published at Paris, in 1793, in 8vo) was composed a short time before the death of pope Martin v (p. 5), and consequently about the end of the year 1430.

* See a splendid and eloquent eulogy of Tamerlane, p. 30-39, before which Poggio has a fine passage: Beatae victoriae creat, caeteraque in medium ferum inclutus per omnem Asian centrifalit egregium admirandum quo spectaculorum fortunae.
with the first tidings of the revolution. A
the time when Poggius flourished at Rome, Ahmed Ebn Arabishah composed at Damascus the florid and malevolent history of Timour, for which he had collected materials in his journey over Turkey and Tartary. Without any possible correspondence between the Latin and the Arabian writer, they agree in the fact of the iron cage; and their agreement is a striking proof of their common veracity. Ahmed Arabishah likewise relates another outrage, which Bajazet endured, of a more domestic and tender nature. His indiscreet mention of women and divorces was deeply resented by the jealous Tartar; in the feast of victory, the wine was served by female cupbearers, and the sultan beheld his own concubines and wives confounded among the slaves, and exposed without a veil to the eyes of intemperance. To escape a similar indignity, it is said that his successors, except in a single instance, have abstained from legitimate nuptials; and the Ottoman practice and belief, at least in the sixteenth century, is attested by the observing Busbequins, ambassador from the court of Vienna.

1. The Chronicon Turcicum (in Mazarin, Script. Reim. Italic. vol. viii, p. 209) and the Annales Kazanenses (tom. viii, p. 97). The two authors, Andrea de Basanis de Quero, and James de Delbeyto, were both contemporaries, and both chancellors, the one of Trent, the other of Ferrara. The existence of the former is the more probable.


3. Busbequins in Legat, nom Turcici, cap. 1, p. 82. Yet his espectable authority is somewhat shaken by the subsequent marriages of Amosah with a Servian, and of Mahomet with an Arabic, schiurans (Gastemir, p. 89, 90).
to the great Soliman. 4. Such is the separation of language, that the testimony of a Greek is not less independent than that of a Latin or an Arab. I suppress the names of Chalcondyles and Ducas, who flourished in a later period, and who speak in a less positive tone; but more attention is due to George Phranza, protoevstaire of the last emperors, and who was born a year before the battle of Angora. Twenty-two years after that event, he was sent ambassador to Amurath the second; and the historian might converse with some veteran janizaries, who had been made prisoners with the sultan, and had themselves seen him in his iron cage. 5. The last evidence, in every sense, is that of the Turkish annals, which have been consulted or transcribed by Leunclavius, Pocock, and Cautemir. They unanimously deplore the captivity of the iron cage; and some credit may be allowed to national historians, who cannot stigmatize the Tartar without uncovering the shame of their king and country.

From these opposite premises, a fair and moderate conclusion may be deduced. I am satisfied that Sherefeldin Ali has faithfully described the first ostentatious interview, in which the conqueror, whose spirits were harmonized by success, affected the character of generosity. But his mind was insensibly alienated by the unseasonable arrogance of Bajazet: the complaints of his ene-

---

1 See the testimony of George Phranza (c. 1, c. 19), and his life in Haneckius de Script. Byzant. p. 1, c. 40. Chalcondyles and Ducas speak in general terms of Bajazet's slaves.

mies; the Anatolian princes, were just and vehement; and Timour betrayed a design of leading his royal captive in triumph to Samarcand. An attempt to facilitate his escape, by digging a mine under the tent, provoked the Mogul emperor to impose a harsher restraint; and in his perpetual marches, an iron cage on a waggon might be invented, not as a wanton insult, but as a rigorous precaution. Timour had read in some fabulous history a similar treatment of one of his predecessors, a king of Persia; and Bajazet was condemned to represent the person, and expiate the guilt of the Roman Caesar. But the strength of his mind and body fainted under the trial, and his premature death might, without injustice, be ascribed to the severity of Timour. He wept not with the dead; a tear and a sepulchre were all that he could bestow on a captive who was delivered from his power; and if Mousa, the son of Bajazet, was permitted to reign over the ruins of Boursa, the greatest part of the province of Anatolia had been restored by the conqueror to their lawful sovereigns.

From the Iris and Volga to the Persian gulf, and from the Ganges to Damascus and the Archipelago, Asia was in the hands of Timour; his armies were invincible; his ambition was bound-

---

"A Soror, a king of Persia, had been made prisoner, and buried in the figure of a cow's hide, by Maximian or Galerius Caesar. Such is the tale related by Eythamion (Anast. tom. 1, p. 331), etc. Foccash. The recollection of the true history (Decline and Fall, &c. vol. ii, p. 144-150) will teach us to appreciate the knowledge of the Oriental of the ages which precede the higher.
loss; and his zeal might aspire to conquer and convert the Christian kingdoms of the West, which already trembled at his name. He touched the utmost verge of the land; but an insuperable, though narrow, sea rolled between the two continents of Europe and Asia; and the lord of so many tomans, or myriads, of horse, was not master of a single galley. The two passages of the Bosphorus and Hellespont, of Constantinople and Gallipoli, were possessed, the one by the Christians, the other by the Turks. On this great occasion, they forgot the difference of religion, to act with union and firmness in the common cause: the double straits were guarded with ships and fortifications; and they separately withheld the transports which Timour demanded, of either nation, under the pretence of attacking their enemy. At the same time, they soothed his pride with tributary gifts and suppliant embassies, and prudently tempted him to retreat with the honours of victory. Suleiman, the son of Bajazet, implored his clemency for his father and himself; accepted, by a red patent, the investiture of the kingdom of Romania, which he already held by the sword; and reiterated his ardent wish, of casting himself in person at the feet of the king of the world. The Greek

* Abdalrah (lom. ii. c. 35) describes, like a curious traveller, the straits of Gallipoli and Constantinople. To acquire a just idea of these events, I have compared the narratives and prejudices of the Magi, Turks, Greeks, and Arabs. The Spanish ambassador mentions the hostile union of the Christians and Bajazet (Nev de Timour, p. 266).
emperor* (either John or Manuel) submitted to pay the same tribute which he had stipulated with the Turkish sultan, and ratified the treaty by an oath of allegiance, from which he could absolve his conscience as soon as the Mogul arms had retired from Anatolia. But the fears and fancy of nations ascribed to the ambitious Tamerlane a new design of vast and romantic compass; a design of subduing Egypt and Africa, marching from the Nile to the Atlantic ocean, entering Europe by the straits of Gibraltar, and after imposing his yoke on the kingdoms of Christendom, of returning home by the deserts of Russia and Tartary. This remote, and perhaps imaginary, danger was averted by the submission of the sultan of Egypt; the honours of the prayer and the coin attested at Cairo the supremacy of Timour; and a rare gift of a giraffe, or camelopard, and nine ostriches, represented at Samarcand the tribute of the African world. Our imagination is not less astonished by the portrait of a Mogul, who, in his camp before Smyrna, meditates, and almost accomplishes, the invasion of the Chinese empire. Timour was urged to this enterprise by national honour and religious zeal. The torrents which he had shed of musulman blood could be expiated only by an equal destruction of the in-

* Since the name of Caesar had been transferred to the sultan of Roia, the Greek princes of Constantinople (Shereefdin, i. v. c. 4) were confounded with the Christian lords of Galipoli, Thessalonica, &c., under the title of Terekh, which is derived by corruption from the genitive of Terek (Saxtewic, p. 31).

* See Shereefdin, i. v. c. 4, who remarks, in a just manner, the road to China, which Arabshah (tom. ii. c. 33) paints in vague and theoretical colours.
idels; and as he now stood at the gates of paradise, he might best secure his glorious entrance, by demolishing the idols of China, founding maschs in every city, and establishing the profession of faith in one God, and his prophet Mahomet. The recent expulsion of the house of Zingis was an insult on the Mogul name; and the disorders of the empire afforded the fairest opportunity for revenge. The illustrious Hongyou, founder of the dynasty of Ming, died four years before the battle of An- gora; and his grandson, a weak and unfortunate youth, was burnt in his palace, after a million of Chinese had perished in the civil war. Before he evacuated Anatolia, Timour dispatched beyond the Sibmou a numerous army, or rather colony, of his old and new subjects, to open the road, to subdue the pagan Cahancks and Mungals, and to found cities and magazines in the desert; and, by the diligence of his lieutenant, he soon received a perfect map and description of the unknown regions, from the source of the Irtech to the wall of China. During these preparations, the emperor achieved the final conquest of Georgia; passed the winter on the banks of the Araxes; appeased the troubles of Persia; and slowly returned to his capital, after a campaign of four years and nine months.

On the throne of Samarcand," he displayed, in a short repose, his magnificence and power: listened to the complaints of the people; distributed a just measure of rewards and punishments; employed his riches in the architecture of palaces and temples; and gave audience to the ambassadors of Egypt, Arabia, India, Tartary, Russia, and Spain, the last of whom presented a suit of tapestry which eclipsed the pencil of the Oriental artists. The marriage of six of the emperor's grandsons was esteemed an act of religion as well as of paternal tenderness; and the pomp of the ancient caliphs was revived in their nuptials. They were celebrated in the gardens of Canighul, decorated with innumerable tents and pavilions, which displayed the luxury of a great city and the spoils of a victorious camp. Whole forests were cut down to supply fuel for the kitchens; the plain was spread with pyramids of meat, and vases of every liquor, to which thousands of guests were courteously invited: the orders of the state, and the nations of the earth, were marshalled at the royal banquet; nor were the ambassadors of Europe (says the haughty Persian) excluded from the feast; since even the casser, the smallest of fish, find their place in the ocean. The public

---

" For the return, triumph, and death, of Timour, see Sharefodin (ib. vi. c. 4-30) and Arabshah (ib. iv. c. 35-47).

" Sharefodin (ib. xi. c. 28) mentions the ambassadors of one of the most potent sovereigns of Europe. We know that it was Henry, king of Castile; and the curious relation of his two embassies is still
Joy was testified by illuminations and masquerades; the trades of Samarcand passed in review; and every trade was emulous to execute some quaint devise, some marvelous pageant, with the materials of their peculiar art. After the marriage-contracts had been ratified by the califs, the bridegrooms and their brides retired to the nuptial chambers; nine times, according to the Asiatic fashion, they were dressed and undressed; and at each change of apparel, pearls and rubies were showered on their heads, and contemptuously abandoned to their attendants. A general indulgence was proclaimed; every law was relaxed, every pleasure was allowed, the people was free, the sovereign was idle; and the historian of Timour may remark, that, after devoting fifty years to the attainment of empire, the only happy period of his life were the two months in which he ceased to exercise his power. But he was soon awakened to the cares of government and war. The standard was unfurled for the invasion of China: the emirs made their report of two hundred thousand, the select and veteran soldiers of Iran and Touran; their baggage and provisions were transported by five hundred great waggons, and an immense train of horses and camels; and the troops might prepare for a long absence, since more than six months were emi-

employed in the tranquil journey of a caravan from Samarcand to Pekin. Neither age, nor the severity of the winter, could retard the impatience of Timour; he mounted on horseback, passed the Sihoon on the ice, marched seventy-six parasangs, three hundred miles, from his capital, and pitched his last camp in the neighbourhood of Otrar, where he was expected by the angel of death. Fatigue, and the indirect use of iced water accelerated the progress of his fever; and the conqueror of Asia expired in the seventieth year of his age; thirty-five years after he had ascended the throne of Zagatai. His designs were lost; his armies were disbanded; China was saved; and fourteen years after his decease, the most powerful of his children sent an embassy of friendship and commerce to the court of Pekin.\footnote{See the translation of the Persian account of their embassy, a curious and original piece, in the fourth part of the Relation de Thévenot. They presented the emperor of China with an old horse which Timour had formerly rode. It was in the year 1310 that they departed from the court of Heraclius, to which place they returned in 1422 from Pekin.}

The fame of Timour has pervaded the East and West; his posterity is still invested with the imperial title; and the admiration of his subjects, who revered him almost as a deity, may be justified, in some degree, by the praise or confession of his bitterest enemies.\footnote{From Arukshah, tom. ii. p. 99. The height or softer colours are borrowed from Shereddin, d'Herteliot, and the Institutiones.} Although he was lame of an hand and foot, his form and stature were not unworthy of his rank; and his vigorous health, so essential to himself and to the world,
was corroborated by temperance and exercise. In his familiar discourse he was grave and modest, and if he was ignorant of the Arabic language, he spoke, with fluency and elegance, the Persian and Turkish idioms. It was his delight to converse with the learned on topics of history and science; and the amusement of his leisure hours was the game of chess, which he improved, or corrupted, with new refinements. In his religion, he was a zealous, though not perhaps an orthodox, Mussulman; but his sound understanding may tempt us to believe, that a superstitious reverence for omens and prophecies, for saints and astrologers, was only affected as an instrument of policy. In the government of a vast empire, he stood alone and absolute, without a rebel to oppose his power, a favourite to seduce his affections, or a minister to mislead his judgment. It was his firmest maxim, that whatever might be the consequence, the word of the prince should never be disputed or recalled; but his foes have maliciously observed, that the commands of anger and destruction were more strictly executed than those of benevolence and favour. His sons and grandsons, of whom Timour left six and thirty at his decease, were his first and

---

4 His new system was multiplied from 22 pieces and 84 squares, to 28 pieces and 110 or 120 squares. But, except in his wars, the old game has been thought sufficiently elaborate. The Mogul Emperor was rather pleased three hours with the victory of a subject, whose player will fix the value of the monarchy.

5 See Tehran's K., c. 13, 22. Armitage, Ixxxvi. c. 86, p. 301. 302, reports the murder of Timour and the Mogul, who also preferred the korne, the piece, or bar of Kings and Besh undeclared; but will he believe that Timour had abandoned the use and custom of that pagan relic.
most submissive subjects; and whenever they
deviated from their duty, they were corrected,
according to the laws of Zingis, with the baston-
ade, and afterwards restored to honour and com-
mand. Perhaps his heart was not devoid of the
social virtues; perhaps he was not incapable of
loving his friends, and pardoning his enemies;
but the rules of morality are founded on the
public interest; and it may be sufficient to appla-
und the wisdom of a monarch, for the liberality by
which he is not impoverished, and for the justice
by which he is strengthened and enriched. To
maintain the harmony of authority and obedience,
to chastise the proud, to protect the weak, to
reward the deserving, to banish vice and idleness
from his dominions, to secure the traveller and
merchant, to restrain the depredations of the
soldier, to cherish the labours of the husbandman,
to encourage industry and learning; and, by an
equal and moderate assessment, to increase the
revenue, without increasing the taxes, are indeed
the duties of a prince; but, in the discharge of
these duties, he finds an ample and immediate
recompense. Timour might boast, that, at his
accession to the throne, Asia was the prey of
anarchy and rapine, whilst under his prosperous
monarchy a child, fearless and unhurt, might
carry a purse of gold from the east to the west.
Such was his confidence of merit, that from this
reformation he derived excuse for his victories,
and a title to universal dominion. The four fol-
lowing observations will serve to appreciate his
claim to the public gratitude; and perhaps we
shall conclude, that the Mogul emperor was
rather the scourge than the benefactor of mankind. 1. If some partial disorders, some local oppressions, were healed by the sword of Timour, the remedy was far more pernicious than the disease. By their rapine, cruelty, and discord, the petty tyrants of Persia might afflict their subjects; but whole nations were crushed under the footsteps of the reformer. The ground which had been occupied by flourishing cities was often marked by his abominable trophies, by columns, or pyramids, of human heads. Astrakan, Carizme, Delhi, Isphahan, Bagdad, Aleppo, Damascus, Boursa, Smyrna, and a thousand others, were sacked, or burnt, or utterly destroyed, in his presence, and by his troops; and perhaps his conscience would have been startled, if a priest or philosopher had dared to number the millions of victims whom he had sacrificed to the establishment of peace and order. 2. His most destructive wars were rather inroads than conquests. He invaded Turkestan, Kipzak, Russia, Hindostan, Syria, Anatolia, Armenia, and Georgia, without a hope or a desire of preserving those distant provinces. From thence he departed, laden with spoil; but he left behind him neither troops to awe the contumacious, nor magistrates to protect the obedient, natives. When he had broken

* Besides the bloody passage of this narrative, I must refer to an anticipation in the sixth volume of the Dictam and Fath, which, in a single note (pp. 56, into 53), accumulates near 300,000 heads of the monuments of his cruelty. Except in Rowe's play on the fifth of November, I dare not expect to hear of Timour's unavailing moderation (Wood's prologue, p. 7). Yet I can scarce a generous enthusiasm in the reader, and still more in the editor, of the fantastic.
the fabric of their ancient government, he abandoned them to the evils which his invasion had aggravated or caused; nor were these evils compensated by any present or possible benefits.

3. The kingdoms of Transoxiana and Persia were the proper field which he laboured to cultivate and adorn, as the perpetual inheritance of his family. But his peaceful labours were often interrupted, and sometimes blasted, by the absence of the conqueror. While he triumphed on the Volga or the Ganges, his servants, and even his sons, forgot their master and their duty. The public and private injuries were poorly redressed by the tardy rigour of enquiry and punishment; and we must be content to praise the Institutions of Timour as the specious idea of a perfect monarchy.

4. Whatsoever might be the blessings of his administration, they evaporated with his life. 'To reign, rather than to govern, was the ambition of his children and grandchildren,' the enemies of each other and of the people. A fragment of the empire was upheld with some glory by Sharokh his youngest son; but after his decease, the scene was again involved in darkness and blood; and before the end of a century, Transoxiana and Persia were trampled by the Uzbeks from the north, and the Turkmans of the black and white sheep. The race of Timour would have been extinct, if an hero, his descendant in the fifth degree, had not

*Consult the last chapter of Shereefddin and Arabshah, and M. de Guignes Hist. des Huns, tom. iv, p. 221. Fraser's History of Nadir Shah, p. 142. The story of Timour's descendants is imperfectly told, and the second and third parts of Shereefddin are unknown.*
led before the Uzbak arms to the conquest of Hindustan. His successors (the great Moguls) extended their sway from the mountains of Cashmir to Cape Comorin, and from Candahar to the gulf of Bengal. Since the reign of Aurungzebe, their empire has been dissolved; their treasures of Delhi have been rifled by a Persian robber, and the richest of their kingdoms is now possessed by a company of Christian merchants, of a remote island in the Northern ocean.

Far different was the fate of the Ottoman monarchy. The masy trunk was bent to the ground, but no sooner did the hurricane pass away, than it again rose with fresh vigour and more lively vegetation. When Timour, in every sense, had evacuated Anatolia, he left the cities without a palace, a treasure, or a king. The open country was overspread with hordes of shepherds and robbers of Tartar or Turkman origin; the recent conquests of Bajazet were restored to the emirs, one of whom, in base revenge, demolished his sepulchre; and his five sons were eager, by civil discord, to consume the remnant of their patrimony. I shall enumerate their names in the order of their age and actions. 1. It is doubtful, whether I relate the story of the true Mustapha, or of an impostor, who personated that lost:
prince. He fought by his father's side in the battle of Angora; but when the captive sultan was permitted to inquire for his children, Moussa alone could be found; and the Turkish historians, the slaves of the triumphant faction, are persuaded that his brother was confounded among the slain. If Mustapha escaped from that disastrous field, he was concealed twelve years from his friends and enemies, till he emerged in Thessaly, and was hailed by a numerous party, as the son and successor of Bajazet. His first defeat would have been his last, had not the true, or false, Mustapha been saved by the Greeks, and restored, after the decease of his brother Mahomet, to liberty and empire. A degenerate mind seemed to argue his spurious birth; and if, on the throne of Adrianople, he was adored as the Ottoman sultan, his flight, his letters, and an ignominious gibbet, delivered the impostor to popular contempt. A similar character and claim was asserted by several rival pretenders; thirty persons are said to have suffered under the name of Mustapha; and these frequent executions may perhaps insinuate, that the Turkish court was not perfectly secure of the death of the lawful prince. 2. After his father's captivity, Isæ reign'd for some time in the neighbourhood of Angora, Sinope, and the Black sea; and his ambassadors were dismissed from the presence of Timour with fair promises and honourable gifts. But their master was soon deprived of his province and life, by a jealous bro-

* Arabotr., tom. 6, p. 39, whose testimony on this occasion is weighty and valuable. The existence of Isæ (unknown to the Turks) is likewise confirmed by Encounter (v. x, p. 57).
ther, the sovereign of Amasia; and the final event suggested a pious allusion, that the law of Moses and Jesus, of Isa and Mousa had been abrogated by the greater Mahomet. 3. Solliman is not numbered in the list of the Turkish emperors: yet he checked the victorious progress of the Moguls; and after their departure, united for a while the thrones of Adrianople and Boursa. In war he was brave, active, and unfortunate; his courage was softened by clemency; but it was likewise inflamed by presumption, and corrupted by intemperance and idleness. He relaxed the nerves of discipline, in a government where either the subject or the sovereign must continually tremble; his vices alienated the chiefs of the army and the law; and his daily drunkenness, so contemptible in a prince and a man, was doubly odious in a disciple of the prophet. In the slumber of intoxication he was surprised by his brother Mousa; and as he fled from Adrianople towards the Byzantine capital, Solliman was overtaken and slain in a bath, after a reign of seven years and ten months. 4. The investiture of Mousa degraded him as the slave of the Moguls; his tributary kingdom of Anatolia was confined within a narrow limit, nor could his broken militia and empty treasury contend with the hardy and veteran bands of the sovereign of Romania. Mousa fled in disguise from the palace of Boursa; traversed the Propontis in an open boat; wandered over the Wallachian and Servian hills; and after some vain attempts, ascended the throne of Adrianople, so recently stained with the blood of Solliman.
In a reign of three years and a half, his troops were victorious against the Christians of Hungary and the Morea; but Mousa was ruined by his timorous disposition and unseasonable clemency. After resigning the sovereignty of Anatolia, he fell a victim to the perfidy of his ministers, and the superior ascendant of his brother Mahomet.

5. The final victory of Mahomet was the just recompense of his prudence and moderation. Before his father's captivity, the royal youth had been entrusted with the government of Amasia, thirty days journey from Constantinople, and the Turkish frontier against the Christians of Trebizond and Georgia. The castle, in Asiatic warfare, was esteemed impregnable; and the city of Amasia,* which is equally divided by the river Iris, rises on either side in the form of an amphitheatre, and represents on a smaller scale the image of Bagdad. In his rapid career, Timour appears to have overlooked this obscure and contentious angle of Anatolia; and Mahomet, without provoking the conqueror, maintained his silent independence, and chased from the province the last stragglers of the Tartar host. He relieved himself from the dangerous neighbourhood of Isa; but in the contests of their more powerful brethren, his firm neutrality was respected; till, after the triumph of Mousa, he stood forth the heir and avenger of the unfortunate Soliman. Mahomet obtained Anatolia by treaty, and Romania by arms; and the soldier who presented him

---


Busbecius, cap. l, p. 86; 97; in Thuret C. F. de Amanzée.
with the head of Mousa, was rewarded as the benefactor of his king and country. The eight years of his sole and peaceful reign were usefully employed in banishing the vices of civil discord, and restoring on a firmer basis the fabric of the Ottoman monarchy. His last care was the choice of two vizirs, Bajazet and Ibrahim, who might guide the youth of his son Amurath; and such was their union and prudence, that they concealed above forty days the emperor's death, till the arrival of his successor in the palace of Bursa. A new war was kindled in Europe by the prince, or impostor, Mustapha; the first vizir lost his army and his head; but the more fortunate Ibrahim, whose name and family are still revered, extinguished the last pretender to the throne of Bajazet, and closed the scene of domestic hostility.

In these conflicts, the wisest Turks, and indeed the body of the nation, were strongly attached to the unity of the empire; and Romania and Anatolia, so often torn asunder by private ambition, were animated by a strong and invincible tendency of cohesion. Their efforts might have instructed the Christian powers; and had they occupied with a confederate fleet the straits of Gallipoli, the Ottomans, at least in Europe, must have been speedily annihilated. But the schism of the West, and the factions and wars of France and England, diverted the Latins from this generous enterprise:

* The virtues of Ibrahim are praised by a contemporary Greek (Doria, c. 25). His descendants are the sole nobles in Turkey; they content themselves with the administration of his family foundations, are exempt from public offices, and receive two annual visits from the sultan (Cinàmici, p. 70).
they enjoyed the present respite, without a thought of futurity; and were often tempted by a momentary interest to serve the common enemy of their religion. A colony of Genoese, which had been planted at Phocaenia on the Ionian coast, was enriched by the lucrative monopoly of alum; and their tranquillity under the Turkish empire was secured by the annual payment of tribute. In the last civil war of the Ottomans, the Genoese governor, Adorno, a bold and ambitious youth, embraced the party of Amurath; and undertook, with seven stout galleys, to transport him from Asia to Europe. The sultan and five hundred guards embarked on board the admiral's ship, which was manned by eight hundred of the bravest Franks. His life and liberty were in their hands; nor can we, without reluctance, applaud the fidelity of Adorno, who, in the midst of the passage, knelt before him, and gratefully accepted a discharge of his arrests of tribute.

---

2 See Pachynus, c. 1. v. 2. 29. Numaenus Gregorius, C. 11. 4. 1. Aper (v. 4. 52), and Dunam (c. 25). The list of those, a curious and exploit observer, is omitted, from his book and station, to particular credit in all that concern Ionis and the islands. Among the nations that consort to New Phocaia, he mentions the English (Aegaei) as the chief enemies of Mediterranean trade.


5 Phocaia is not enumerated by Piso (Hist. Nat. xxi. 52) among the places productive of alum; but Ptolemaus, Egypt as the first, and for the second the Isle of Molos, where alum mines are described by Tournefort (Ann. 4. Lettre 25), a traveler and a naturalist. After the loss of Phocaia, the Genoese, in 1435, found that useful mineral in the Isle of Ichiha (Ismahen, Bouillanh, ed Duran, c. 25).
They landed in sight of Mustapha and Gallipoll; two thousand Italians, armed with lances and battle-axes, attended Amurath to the conquest of Adrianople; and this venal service was soon repaid by the ruin of the commerce and colony of Phocaea.

If Timour had generously marched at the request and to the relief of the Greek emperor, he might be entitled to the praise and gratitude of the christians. But a Mussulman, who carried into Georgia the sword of persecution, and respected the holy warfare of Bajazet, was not disposed to pity or succour the idola\texttildelowes of Europe. The Tartar followed the impulse of ambition; and the deliverance of Constantinople was the accidental consequence. When Manuel abdicated the government, it was his prayer, rather than his hope, that the ruin of the church and state might be delayed beyond his unhappy days; and after his return from a western pilgrimage, he expected every hour the news of the sad catastrophe. On a sudden, he was astonished and rejoiced by the intelligence of the retreat, the overthrow, and the captivity of the Ottoman. Manuel im-

\footnote{The writer who has most abounded this fabulous generosity is our ingenuous Sir William Temple (his works, vol. iii, p. 343, 350, octavo edition), that lover of exotic virtue. After the conquest of Russia, and the passage of the Danube, his Tartar hero ravishes, visits, admires, and revisits, the city of Constantinople. His flattering pen is declarative in every line from the truth of history; yet his pleasing fictions are more excusable than the gross errors of Cato.}

\footnote{For the reign of Manuel and John, of Mahomet's, and Amurath in, see the Ottoman History of Constantin (p. 76-78), and the three Greeks, Chalcondyles, Phocas, and Doukas, who is still superior to his rivals.}
mediately sailed from Modon, in the Morea; ascended the throne of Constantinople; and dismissed his blind competitor to an easy exile in the isle of Lesbos. The ambassadors of the son of Bajazet were soon introduced to his presence; but their pride was fallen, their tone was modest; they were awed by the just apprehension, lest the Greeks should open to the Moguls the gates of Europe. Soliman saluted the emperor by the name of father; solicited at his hands the government or gift of Romania; and promised to deserve his favour by inviolable friendship, and the restitution of Thessalonica, with the most important places along the Strymon, the Propontis, and the Black sea. The alliance of Soliman exposed the emperor to the enmity and revenge of Moursa; the Turks appeared in arms before the gates of Constantinople; but they were repulsed by sea and land; and unless the city was guarded by some foreign mercenaries, the Greeks must have wondered at their own triumph. But, instead of prolonging the division of the Ottoman powers, the policy or passion of Manuel was tempted to asist the most formidable of the sons of Bajazet. He concluded a treaty with Malemnet, whose progress was checked by the insuperable barrier of Gallipoli; the sultan and his troops were transported over the Bosporus; he was hospitably entertained in the capital; and his successful sally was the first step to the conquest of Romania. The ruin was suspended by the prudence and moderation of the conqueror; he faithfully discharged his own
obligations and those of Soliman, respected the laws of gratitude and peace; and left the emperor guardian of his two younger sons, in the vain hope of saving them from the jealous cruelty of their brother Amurath. But the execution of his last testament would have offended the national honour and religion; and the divan unanimously pronounced, that the royal youths should never be abandoned to the custody and education of a Christian dog. On this refusal, the Byzantine councils were divided; but the age and caution of Manuel yielded to the presumption of his son John; and they unsheathed a dangerous weapon of revenge, by dismissing the true or false Mustapha, who had long been detained as a captive and hostage, and for whose maintenance they received an annual pension of three hundred thousand aspers. At the door of his prison, Mustapha subscribed to every proposal; and the keys of Gallipoli, or rather of Europe, were stipulated as the price of his deliverance. But no sooner was he seated on the throne of Rumelia, than he dismissed the Greek ambassadors with a smile of contempt, declaring, in a pious tone, that, at the day of judgment, he would rather answer for the violation of an oath, than for the surrender of a Mussulman city into the hands of the infidels. The emperor was at once the enemy of the two rivals; from whom he had sustained,

---

---

*The Turkish asper from the Greek τραπατινα, or was, a piece of white or silver money, at present much debased, but which was formerly equivalent to the thirty-fourth part, at least, of a Venetian ducat or sequin; and the 300,000 aspers, a princely allowance or royal tribute, may be computed at 150,000 sterling (Lambsley, Pandect. Turc., p. 408-408).*
and to whom he had offered, an injury; and the victory of Amurath was followed, in the ensuing spring, by the siege of Constantinople.*

The religious merit of subduing the city of the Caesars attracted from Asia a crowd of volunteers, who aspired to the crown of martyrdom; their military ardour was inflamed by the promise of rich spoils and beautiful females; and the sultan's ambition was consecrated by the presence and prediction of Seid Bechar, a descendant of the prophet, who arrived in the camp, on a mule, with a venerable train of five hundred disciples: But he might blush, if a fanatic could blush, at the failure of his assurances. The strength of the walls resisted an army of two hundred thousand Turks: their assaults were repelled by the sallies of the Greeks and their foreign mercenaries; the old resources of defence were opposed to the new engines of attack; and the enthusiasm of the dervish, who was snatched to heaven in visionary converse with Mahomet, was answered by the credulity of the christians, who beheld the virgin Mary, in a violet garment, walking on the rampart and animating their courage.† After a siege of two months, Amurath was recalled to Boursa by a domestic revolt,

* For the siege of Constantinople in 1522, see the particular and contemporary narrative of John Camden, published by Lee Allatius, at the end of his edition of Acropolita (p. 188-190).
† Camden, p. 80. Camden, who describes Seid Bechar without naming him, supposes that the friend of Mahomet assumed in his dreams the privilege of a prophet, and that the statue of the Greek nun was promised to the saint and his disciples.
‡ For this miraculous apparition, Camden appeals to the musul- man salut; but who will bear testimony for Seid Bechar?
which had been kindled by Greek treachery, and was soon extinguished by the death of a guiltless brother. While he led his janizaries to new conquests in Europe and Asia, the Byzantine empire was indulged in a servile and precarious respite of thirty years. Manuel sank into the grave, and John Palaeologus was permitted to reign, for an annual tribute of three hundred thousand aspers, and the dereliction of almost all that he held beyond the suburbs of Constantinople.

In the establishment and restoration of the Turkish empire, the first merit must doubtless be assigned to the personal qualities of the sultans; since, in human life, the most important scenes will depend on the character of a single actor. By some shades of wisdom and virtue, they may be discriminated from each other; but, except in a single instance, a period of nine reigns and two hundred and sixty-five years is occupied, from the elevation of Othman to the death of Soliman, by a rare series of warlike and active princes, who impressed their subjects with obedience and their enemies with terror. Instead of the slothful luxury of the seraglio, the heirs of royalty were educated in the council and the field; from early youth they were entrusted by their fathers with the command of provinces and armies; and this manly institution, which was often productive of civil war, must have essentially contributed to the discipline and vigour of the monarchy. The Ottomans cannot style themselves, like the Arabian caliphs, the descendants or successors of the apostle of God; and the
kindred which they claim with the Tartar khans of the house of Zingis appears to be founded in flattery, rather than in truth. Their origin is obscure; but their sacred and indefeasible right, which no time can erasure and no violence can infringe, was soon and unalterably implanted in the minds of their subjects. A weak or vicious sultan may be deposed and strangled; but his inheritance devolves to an infant or an idiot; nor has the most daring rebel presumed to ascend the throne of his lawful sovereign. While the transient dynasties of Asia have been continually subverted by a crafty vizir in the palace, or a victorious general in the camp, the Ottoman succession has been confirmed by the practice of five centuries, and is now incorporated with the vital principle of the Turkish nation.

To the spirit and constitution of that nation, a strong and singular influence may however be ascribed. The primitive subjects of Othman were the four hundred families of wandering Turkmans, who had followed his ancestors from the Oxus to the Sangar; and the plains of Anatolia are still covered with the white and black tents of their rustic brethren. But this original drop was

* See Ricetti, ii. c. 134. The Turkish sultans assume the title of Kiam. Yet Abul-Âla is ignorant of his Ottoman coadjutors.

* The third grand sire of the name of Kip infrared was slain at the battle of Salmaan in 1451 (Constance, p. 323), presumed to say, that all the successors of Soloiman had been fools or tyrants, and that it was time to abolish the race (Mauritius, Histoire des Ottomans, tom. iii. p. 114). His presumption condemns the singular exception of continually office in the same family.
dissolved in the mass of voluntary and vanquished subjects, who, under the name of Turks, are united by the common ties of religion, language, and manners. In the cities, from Erzeroum to Belgrade, that national appellation is common to all the Moslems, the first and most honourable inhabitants; but they have abandoned, at least in Romania, the villages and the cultivation of the land to the christian peasants. In the vigorous age of the Ottonian government, the Turks were themselves excluded from all civil and military honours; and a servile class, an artificial people, was raised by the discipline of education to obey, to conquer, and to command. From the time of Orchan and the first Amurath, the sultans were persuaded that a government of the sword must be renewed in each generation with new soldiers; and that such soldiers must be sought, not in effeminate Asia, but among the hardy and warlike natives of Europe. The provinces of Thrace, Macedonia, Albania, Bulgaria, and Servia, became the perpetual seminary of the Turkish army; and when the royal fifth of the captives was diminished by conquest, an inhuman tax of the fifth child, or of every fifth year, was rigorously levied on the christian families. At the age of twelve or fourteen years, the most robust youths were torn from their parents; their names were enrolled in a book; and from that moment they were clothed, taught, and main-

*Chalcedon (p. 5) and Ducea (c. 33) exhibit the rude instruments of the Ottoman policy, and the transmutation of christian children into Turkish soldiers.
tained, for the public service. According to the promise of their appearance, they were selected for the royal schools of Boursa, Pera, and Adrianople, entrusted to the care of the hashaws, or dispersed in the houses of the Anatolian peasantry. It was the first care of their masters to instruct them in the Turkish language; their bodies were exercised by every labour that could fortify their strength; they learned to wrestle, to leap, to run, to shoot with the bow, and afterwards with the musket; till they were drafted into the chambers and companies of the janizaries, and severely trained in the military or monastic discipline of the order. The youths, most conspicuous for birth, talents, and beauty, were admitted into the inferior class of agiamoglans, or the more liberal rank of șchogluans, of whom the former were attached to the palace, and the latter to the person of the prince. In four successive schools, under the rod of the white emnuchs, the arts of horsemanship and of darting the javelin were their daily exercise, while those of a more studious cast applied themselves to the study of the Koran, and the knowledge of the Arabic and Persian tongues. As they advanced in seniority and merit, they were gradually dismissed to military, civil, and even ecclesiastical employments; the longer their stay, the higher was their expectation; till, at a mature period, they were admitted into the number of the forty agus, who stood before the sultan, and were promoted by his choice to the government of provinces and the first honours of the
such a mode of institution was admirably adapted to the form and spirit of a despotic monarchy. The ministers and generals were, in the strictest sense, the slaves of the emperor, to whose bounty they were indebted for their instruction and support. When they left the seraglio, and suffered their beards to grow as the symbol of enfranchisement, they found themselves in an important office, without faction or friendship, without parents and without heirs, dependent on the hand which had raised them from the dust, and which, on the slightest displeasure, could break in pieces these statues of glass, as they are aptly termed by the Turkish proverb. In the slow and painful steps of education, their character and talents were unfolded to a discerning eye; the man, naked and alone, was reduced to the standard of his personal merit; and, if the sovereign had wisdom to chuse, he possessed a pure and boundless liberty of choice. The Ottoman candidates were trained by the virtues of abstinence to those of action; by the habits of submission to those of command. A similar spirit was diffused among the troops; and their silence and solace, their patience and modesty, have extorted the reluc-

* This sketch of the Turkish education and discipline is chiefly borrowed from Bent's State of the Ottoman empire, the State Militare dell' Império Ottomano of Count Marsigli in Haya, 1732, in salmo, and a Description of the Seraglio, approved by Mr. Greswin himself, a curious traveller, and inserted in the second volume of his works.

* From the series of 115 states till the siege of Vienna (Marsigli, p. 15) their place may be valued at three years and a half purchase.
tant praise of their Christian enemies. Nor can the victory appear doubtful, if we compare the discipline and exercise of the janizaries with the pride of birth, the independence of chivalry, the ignorance of the new levies, the mutinous temper of the veterans, and the vices of intemperance and disorder, which so long contaminated the armies of Europe.

The only hope of salvation for the Greek empire and the adjacent kingdoms, would have been some more powerful weapon, some discovery in the art of war, that should give them a decisive superiority over their Turkish foes. Such a weapon was in their hands; such a discovery had been made in the critical moment of their fate. The chemists of China or Europe had found, by casual or elaborate experiments, that a mixture of saltpetre, sulphur, and charcoal, produces, with a spark of fire, a tremendous explosion. It was soon observed, that if the expansive force were compressed in a strong tube, a ball of stone or iron might be expelled with irresistible and destructive velocity. The precise era of the invention and application of gunpowder is involved in doubtful traditions and equivocal language; yet we may clearly discern, that it was known before the middle of the fourteenth century; and that before the end of the same, the use of artillery in battles and sieges, by sea and land, was familiar to the states.

* See the entertaining and judicious letters of Bohoquinus.

7 The first and second volumes of Dr. Waran's Chemical Essays contain two valuable discourses on the discovery and composition of gunpowder.
of Germany, Italy, Spain, France, and England. The priority of nations is of small account; none could derive any exclusive benefit from their previous or superior knowledge; and in the common improvement they stood on the same level of relative power and military science. Nor was it possible to circumscribe the secret within the pale of the church; it was disclosed to the Turks by the treachery of apostates and the selfish policy of rivals; and the sultans had sense to adopt, and wealth to reward, the talents of a Christian engineer. The Genoese, who transported Amurath into Europe, must be accused as his preceptors; and it was probably by their hands that his cannon was cast and directed at the siege of Constantinople. The first attempt was indeed unsuccessful; but in the general warfare of the age, the advantage was on their side, who were most commonly the assailants: for a while the proportion of the attack and defence was suspended; and this thundering...

* On this subject, modern testimonies cannot be trusted. The original passages are collected by Durango (Hist. Lat., tom. i, p. 472, Nonsensical). But in the early Middle Ages, the names, actions, facts, and efforts that seem to express new artillery, may be fairly interpreted of the old engines and the Greek fire. For the English cannon at Crécy, the authority of John Villani (Chron. i. xii., p. 85) must be weighed against the silence of Froissart. Yet Muratori (Antiquit. Italic. mediol. Lat., tom. ii, Dissert. xxii., p. 514, 515) has produced a decisive passage from Petrarch (de Remedia utrinque Fortune Ditt., who, before the year 1344, executes this terrible thing, under pain, such communis.

* The Turkish cannon, which Du Cange (c. 30) first introduces below Belgrade (c. a. 1420) is mentioned by Chicherinides (l. vi., c. 123) in 1422, at the siege of Constantinople.
artillery was pointed against the walls and towers which had been erected only to resist the less potent engines of antiquity. By the Venetians, the use of gunpowder was communicated without reproach to the sultans of Egypt and Persia, their allies against the Ottoman power; the secret was soon propagated to the extremities of Asia; and the advantage of the European was confined to his easy victories over the savages of the new world. If we contrast the rapid progress of this mischievous discovery with the slow and laborious advances of reason, science, and the arts of peace, a philosopher, according to his temper, will laugh or weep at the folly of mankind.
CHAP. LXVI.

Applications of the eastern emperors to the pope.—Visits to the West, of John the first, Manuel, and John the second, Palaeologus.—Union of the Greek and Latin churches, promoted by the council of Basil, and concluded at Ferrara and Florence.—State of literature at Constantinople.—Its revival in Italy by the Greek jurists.—Curiosity and emulation of the Saints.

In the four last centuries of the Greek emperors, their friendly or hostile aspect towards the pope and the Latins may be observed as the thermometer of their prosperity or distress, as the scale of their rise and fall of the barbarian dynasties. When the Turks of the house of Seljuk pervaded Asia, and threatened Constantinople, we have seen, at the council of Placentia, the suppliant ambassadors of Alexius imploring the protection of the common father of the christians. No sooner had the arms of the French pilgrims removed the sultan from Nice to Iconium, than the Greek princes resumed, or avowed, their genuine hatred and contempt for the schismatics of the West, which precipitated the first downfall of their empire. The date of the Mogul invasion is marked in the soft and charitable language of John Vataces. After the recovery of Constantinople, the throne of the

VOL. XII.
first Palæologus was encompassed by foreign and domestic enemies; as long as the sword of Charles was suspended over his head he basely courted the favour of the Roman pontiff, and sacrificed to the present danger his faith, his virtue, and the affection of his subjects. On the decease of Michael, the prince and people asserted the independence of the church and the purity of their creed: the elder Andronicus neither feared nor loved the Latins: in his last distress pride was the safeguard of superstition: nor could he decently retract in his age the firm and orthodox declarations of his youth. His grandson, the younger Andronicus, was less a slave in his temper and situation; and the conquest of Bithynia by the Turks admonished him to seek a temporal and spiritual alliance with the Western princes. After a separation and silence of fifty years, a secret agent, the monk Barham, was dispatched to pope Benedict the twelfth; and his artful instructions appear to have been drawn by the master-hand of the great domestic.*

"Most holy father," was he commissioned to say, "the emperor is not less desirous than yourself of an union between the two churches: but in this delicate transaction, he is obliged to respect his own dignity and the prejudices of his subjects. The ways of

* This curious instruction was transcribed (I believe) from the Vatican archives, by Odoricus Raymondus, in his Continuation of the Annals of Barnina (Rome, 1646-1677, in ten volumes in folio). I have consented myself with the able Fluriy (Hist. Ecclesiastique, tom. xx. p. 1-8), whose abstract I have always found to be clear, accurate, and impartial.
union are two-fold; force and persuasion. Of force, the inefficacy has been already tried; since the Latins have subdued the empire, without subduing the minds, of the Greeks. The method of persuasion, though slow, is sure and permanent. A deputation of thirty or forty of our doctors would probably agree with those of the Vatican, in the love of truth and the unity of belief; but on their return, what would be the use, the recompense of such agreement? the scorn of their brethren, and the reproaches of a blind and obstinate nation. Yet that nation is accustomed to reverence the general councils, which have fixed the articles of our faith; and if they reprobate the decrees of Lyons, it is because the Eastern churches were neither heard nor represented in that arbitrary meeting. For this salutary end, it will be expedient, and even necessary, that a well-chosen legate should be sent into Greece, to convene the patriarchs of Constantinople, Alexandria, Antioch, and Jerusalem; and, with their aid, to prepare a free and universal synod. But at this moment, continued the subtle agent, "the empire is assaulted and endangered by the Turks, who have occupied four of the greatest cities in Anatolia. The Christian inhabitants have expressed a wish of returning to their allegiance and religion; but the forces and revenues of the emperor are insufficient for their deliverance; and the Roman legate must be accompanied, or preceded, by an army of Franks, to expel the infidels, and open a way to the holy sepulchre." If the suspicious Latins should require some pledge,
some previous effect of the sincerity of the Greeks, the answers of Barlaam were perspicuous and rational. "1. A general synod can alone consummate the union of the churches; nor can such a synod be held till the three Oriental patriarchs, and a great number of bishops, are enfranchised from the mahometan yoke. 2. The Greeks are alienated by a long series of oppression and injury: they must be reconciled by some act of brotherly love, some effectual succour, which may fortify the authority and arguments of the emperor, and the friends of the union. 3. If some difference of faith or ceremonies should be found ineradicable, the Greeks however are the disciples of Christ; and the Turks are the common enemies of the christian name. The Armenians, Cyprians, and Rhodians, are equally attacked; and it will become the piety of the French princes to draw their swords in the general defence of religion. 4. Should the subjects of Andronicus be treated as the worst of schismatics, of heretics, of pagans, a judicious policy may yet instruct the powers of the West to embrace an useful ally, to uphold a sinking empire, to guard the confines of Europe; and rather to join the Greeks against the Turks, than to expect the union of the Turkish arms with the troops and treasures of captive Greece." The reasons, the offers, and the demands, of Andronicus, were eluded with cold and stately indifference. The kings of France and Naples declined the dangers and glory of a crusade: the pope refused
to call a new synod to determine old articles of faith; and his regard for the obsolete claims of the Latin emperor and clergy engaged him to use an offensive superscription: "To the moderate "rator" of the Greeks, and the persons who "style themselves the patriarchs of the Eastern "churches." For such an embassy, a time and character less propitious could not easily have been found. Benedict the twelfth was a dull peasant, perplexed with scruples, and immersed in sloth and wine; his pride might enrich with a third crown the papal tiara, but he was alike unfit for the regal and the pastoral office.

After the decease of Andronicus, while the Greeks were distracted by intestine war, they could not presume to agitate a general union of the christians. But as soon as Cantacuzene had subdued and pardoned his enemies, he was anxious to justify, or at least to extenuate, the introduction of the Turks into Europe, and the nuptials of his daughter with a musalmian prince.

* The ambiguity of this title is happy or ingenious; and such names as synonyman to rest, gubernator, is of a word of uncertain and even Cynromjan, latinum, which may be found, not in the Glossary of Dico- opaque, but in the Tatyra of Robert Stephens.

* The first serious colonnial of Petropol proses the danger of the dark, and the incapacity of the pilot. How little, this modern, are gravis nec superhers cm re perpetua, quum nonm matre, nonnust, jam somne percip, stipe colunm solam ruit . . . . Hoc quantum infeudat patria terrae solis segenero utrin, quum scelumin plantationem mercedeis. This satire expects his biographer to weigh the virtues and vices of Benedict xii, which have been exaggerated by Guaspis and Ambroinos by papists and protestants (see Memoriae sur la Vie de Petrospou, tom. i, p 309, b, nov. xx, p 13-16). He gave occasion in the saying, Romanus populus.
Two officers of state, with a Latin interpreter, were sent in his name to the Roman court, which was transplanted to Avignon, on the banks of the Rhone, during a period of seventy years: they represented the hard necessity which had urged him to embrace the alliance of the miscreants, and pronounced by his command the sanguine and edifying sounds of union under the cross. Pope Clement the sixth, the successor of Benedict, received them with hospitality and honour, acknowledged the innocence of their sovereign, excused his distress, applauded his magnanimity, and displayed a clear knowledge of the state and revolutions of the Greek empire, which he had imbibed from the honest accounts of a Savoyard lady, an attendant of the empress Anne. If Clement was ill endowed with the virtues of a prince, he possessed however the spirit and magnificence of a prince, whose liberal hand distributed benefices and kingdoms with equal facility. Under his reign Avignon was the seat of pomp and pleasure; in his youth he had surpassed the licentiousness of a baron; and the palace, nay, the bed-chamber of the pope, was adorned, or pol-

* See the original lives of Clement vi, in Muratori, Script. rerum Italicarum, tom. iii. p. i, p. 520-526; Matteo Villani (Chron. l. iii. c. 43, in Muratori, tom. iv. p. 186); who styles him, multo cavalleresco, poco religiosus; Flavius (Hist. Eccles. tom. xx. p. 197); and the Vie de Petrarcha (tom. ii. p. 43-44. The abbe de Sales treats him with the most indulgence; but, as he is a gentleman as well as a priest.

* Her name (most probably corrupted) was Zanpes. She had accompanied, and alone remained with her mistress at Constantinople, where her prudence,erdurance, and politeness, deserved the praise of the Greeks themselves (Cassiodorus, l. i. c. 42).
inted, by the visits of his female favourites. The wars of France and England were adverse to the holy enterprise; but his vanity was amused by the splendid idea; and the Greek ambassadors returned with two Latin bishops, the ministers of the pontiff. On their arrival at Constantinople the emperor and the nuncios admired each other's piety and eloquence; and their frequent conferences were filled with mutual praises and promises, by which both parties were amused, and neither could be deceived. "I am delighted," said the devout Cantacuzene, "with the project of our holy war, which must redound to my personal glory as well as to the public benefit of Christendom. My dominions will give a free passage to the armies of France; my troops, my galleys, my treasures, shall be consecrated to the common cause; and happy would be my fate, could I deserve and obtain the crown of martyrdom. Words are insufficient to express the ardour with which I sigh for the reunion of the scattered members of Christ. If my death could avail, I would gladly present my sword and my neck; if the spiritual phoenix could arise from my ashes, I would cret the pile, and kindle the flame with my own hands." Yet the Greek emperor presumed to observe, that the articles of faith which divided the two churches had been introduced by the pride and precipitation of the Latins; he disclaimed the servile and arbitrary steps of the first Palaeologus; and firmly declared, that he would never submit his conscience, unless to the decrees of a free and
universal synod. "The situation of the times," continued he, "will not allow the pope and myself to meet either at Rome or Constantinople; but some maritime city may be chosen on the verge of the two empires, to unite the bishops, and to instruct the faithful, of the East and West." The nuncios seemed content with the proposition; and Cantacuzene affects to deplore the failure of his hopes, which were soon overthrown by the death of Clement, and the different temper of his successor. His own life was prolonged, but it was prolonged in a cloister; and, except by his prayers, the humble monk was incapable of directing the counsels of his pupil or the state.

Yet of all the Byzantine princes, that pupil, John Palæologus, was the best disposed to embrace, to believe, and to obey, the shepherd of the West. His mother, Anne of Savoy, was baptized in the bosom of the Latin church; her marriage with Andronicus imposed a change of name, of apparel, and of worship, but her heart was still faithful to her country and religion: she had formed the infancy of her son, and she governed the emperor, after his mind, or at least his stature, was enlarged to the size of man. In the first year of his deliverance and restoration, the Turks were still masters of the Hellespont; the son of Cantacuzene was in arms at Adrianople; and Palæologus could depend neither on himself.

† See this whole negociation in Cantacuzene (I.v. c. 9), who, amidst the praises and virtues which he bestows on himself, reveals the consciousness of a guilty conscience.
not on his people. By his mother's advice, and in the hope of foreign aid, he abjured the rights both of the church and state; and the act of slavery, subscribed in purple ink, and sealed with the golden bull, was privately intrusted to an Italian agent. The first article of the treaty is an oath of fidelity and obedience to Innocent the sixth and his successors, the supreme pontiffs of the Roman and catholic church. The emperor promises to entertain with due reverence their legates and amici; to assign a palace for their residence, and a temple for their worship; and to deliver his second son Manuel as the hostage of his faith. For these condescensions he requires a prompt succour of fifteen galleys, with five hundred men at arms, and a thousand archers; to serve against his christian and musulman enemies. Palaeologus engages to impose on his clergy and people the same spiritual yoke; but as the resistance of the Greeks might be justly foreseen, he adopts the two effectual methods of corruption and education. The legate was empowered to distribute the vacant benefices among the ecclesiastics who should subscribe the creed of the Vatican: three schools were instituted to instruct the youth of Constantinople in the language and doctrine of the Latins; and the name of Andronicus, the heir of the empire, was enrolled as the first student. Should he fail in the measures of persuasion or force, Palaeologus declares himself

* See this ignominious treaty in Fiercy (Hist. Rhet. p. 131-134), from Raymondus, who drew it from the Vatican archives. It was not worth the trouble of a paper forgery.
unworthy to reign; transferred to the pope all regal and paternal authority; and invests Innocent with full power to regulate the family, the government, and the marriage, of his son and successor. But this treaty was neither executed nor published: the Roman galleys were as vain and imaginary as the submission of the Greeks; and it was only by the secrecy, that their sovereign escaped the dishonour, of this fruitless humiliation.

The tempest of the Turkish arms soon burst on his head; and, after the loss of Adrianople and Romania, he was inclosed in his capital, the vassel of the haughty Amurath, with the miserable hope of being the last devoured by the savage. In this abject state Palæologus embraced the resolution of embarking for Venice, and casting himself at the feet of the pope: he was the first of the Byzantine princes who had ever visited the unknown regions of the West; yet in them alone he could seek consolation or relief; and with less violation of his dignity he might appear in the sacred college than at the Ottoman Porte. After a long absence the Roman pontiffs were returning from Avignon to the banks of the Tyber: Urban the fifth, of a mild and virtuous character, encouraged or allowed the pilgrimage of the Greek prince; and, within the same year,

enjoyed the glory of receiving in the Vatican the two imperial shadows, who represented the majesty of Constantine and Charlemagne. In this suppliant visit the emperor of Constantinople, whose vanity was lost in his distress, gave more than could be expected of empty sounds and formal submissions. A previous trial was imposed; and in the presence of four cardinals, he acknowledged, as a true catholic, the supremacy of the pope, and the double procession of the Holy Ghost. After this purification he was introduced to a public audience in the church of St. Peter; Urban, in the midst of the cardinals, was seated on his throne; the Greek monarch, after three genuflexions, devoutly kissed the feet, the hands, and at length the mouth, of the holy father, who celebrated high mass in his presence, allowed him to lead the bridle of his mule; and treated him with a sumptuous banquet in the Vatican. The entertainment of Palæologus was friendly and honourable; yet some difference was observed between the emperors of the East and West; nor could the former be entitled to the rare privilege of chanting the gospel in the rank of a deacon. In favour of his proselyte, Urban

^ Paulo minus quam alius Imperatorum Romanorum. Yet his title of Imperator Græcorum was no longer disputed (Vit. Urban vi, p. 623).

^ It was continued to the successors of Charlemagne, and to them only on Christmas day. On all other festivals these imperial domes were content to serve the pope, as he said mass, with the book and the censer. Yet the abbe de Sade generously thinks, that the merit of Charles vi might have entitled him, though not on the proper day (i.e. 1368, November 1), to the whole privilege. He seems to value justly on the privilege and the man (Vie de Petruqte, tom. iii, p. 725).
strove to rekindle the zeal of the French king, and the other powers of the West; but he found them cold in the general cause, and active only in their domestic quarrels. The last hope of the emperor was in an English mercenary, John Hawkwood, or Acuto, who with a band of adventurers, the white brotherhood, had ravaged Italy from the Alps to Calabria; sold his services to the hostile states; and incurred a just excommunication by shooting his arrows against the papal residence. A special licence was granted to negotiate with the outlaw, but the forces, or the spirit, of Hawkwood were unequal to the enterprise; and it was for the advantage, perhaps, of Paleologus to be disappointed of a succour that must have been costly, that could not be efectual, and which might have been dangerous. The disconsolate Greek prepared for his return.

*Through some Italian corruptions, the etymology of Palaeo is here (Marsus Vittani, l. ii. c. 70, in Minuscius, tom. xx., p. 744), suggests the English word Hawkwood; the true name of one adventurous countryman. (Thomas Walsingham, Hist. Angliae, inter Scriptores Compend., p. 184). After two and twenty victories, and one defeat, he died, in 1394, general of the Florentines, and was buried with such honours as the republic has not sold Dante or Petrarch (Munster), Annali d'Italia, tom. xii., p. 212-211.

* This torrent of English by birth or service overflowed from France into Italy after the peace of Bretigny in 1380. Yet the exclamation of Minutoli (Annales, tom. xii., p. 197) is rather true than civil. "O mannae sincerum, che depressione capitatum l'Italia da tanti maestieri Torrechi ed Ughierti, venisse sin detto! Inghilterra non si può avere di divorare."

* Chauncey's, l. i. p. 25, 30. The Greek supposes his journey to the king of France, which is sufficiently refuted by the silence of the national historians. Nor am I much more inclined to believe that Paleologus departed from Italy, valde bene consolatus et consilium (Vit. Urban, v., p. 623)."
but even his return was impeded by a most ignominious obstacle. On his arrival at Venice he had borrowed large sums at exorbitant usury; but his coffers were empty, his creditors were impatient, and his person was detained as the best security for the payment. His eldest son Andronicus, the regent of Constantinople, was repeatedly urged to exhaust every resource; and, even by stripping the churches, to extricate his father from captivity and disgrace. But the unnatural youth was insensible to the disgrace, and secretly pleased with the captivity, of the emperor; the state was poor, the clergy were obstinate; nor could some religious scruple he wanting to excuse the guilt of his indifference and delay. Such un- dutiful neglect was severely reproofed by the piety of his brother Manuel, who instantly sold or mortgaged all that he possessed, embarked for Venice, relieved his father, and pledged his own freedom to be responsible for the debt. On his return to Constantinople the parent and king distinguished his two sons with suitable rewards; but the faith and manners of the slothful Paleologus had not been improved by his Roman pilgrimage; and his apostacy or conversion, devoid of any spiritual or temporal effects, was speedily forgotten by the Greeks and Latins.

Thirty years after the return of Paleologus, his son and successor, Manuel, from a similar motive, but on a larger scale, again visited the

* His return in 1370, and the rapprochement of Manuel, Sept. 25, 1373 (Dornage, Fam. Byzant. p. 341), leaves some intermediate era for the conspiracy and punishment of Andronicus.
countries of the West. In a preceding chapter I have related his treaty with Bajazet, the violation of that treaty, the siege or blockade of Constantinople, and the French succour under the command of the gallant Boncicault. By his ambassadors, Manuel had solicited the Latin powers; but it was thought that the presence of a distressed monarch would draw tears and supplies from the hardest barbarians; and the marshal who advised the journey, prepared the reception of the Byzantine prince. The land was occupied by the Turks; but the navigation of Venice was safe and open; Italy received him as the first, or, at least, as the second of the christian princes; Manuel was pitied as the champion and confessor of the faith; and the dignity of his behaviour prevented that pity from sinking into contempt. From Venice he proceeded to Padua and Pavia; and even the duke of Milan, a secret ally of Bajazet, gave him safe and honourable conduct to the verge of his dominions. On the confines of France the royal officers undertook the care of his person, journey, and expenses; and two

- Memoires de Boncicault, p. 1, c. 35, 36.
- His journey into the west of Europe is slightly, and I believe reluctantly, noticed by Chateaubriand (i. ii. c. 44–50) and Dupont, c. 14.
- Muratori, Annali d'Italia, tom. xii. p. 469. John Galienus was the first and most powerful duke of Milan. His connection with Bajazet is attested by Frumentius; and he contributed to save and deliver the French captives of Nicopolis.
- For the reception of Manuel at Paris, see Spalanzani (Annal. Eccl., tom. i. p. 676, 677; a. a. 1460, No. 5), who quotes Juvenal des Ursins, and the monks of St. Denis, and Villaret (Hist. de France, tom. xii. p. 331–334), who quotes nobody, according to the last fashion of the French writers.
thousand of the richest citizens, in arms and on horseback, came forth to meet him as far as Charenton, in the neighbourhood of the capital. At the gates of Paris, he was saluted by the chancellor and the parliament; and Charles the sixth, attended by his princes and nobles, welcomed his brother with a cordial embrace. The successor of Constantine was clothed in a robe of white silk, and mounted on a milk-white steed; a circumstance, in the French ceremonial, of singular importance: the white colour is considered as the symbol of sovereignty; and, in a late visit, the German emperor, after an haughty demand and a peevish refusal, had been reduced to content himself with a black courser. Manuel was lodged in the Louvre; a succession of feasts and balls, the pleasures of the banquet and the chase, were ingeniously varied by the politeness of the French, to display their magnificence and amuse his grief; he was indulged in the liberty of his chapel; and the doctors of the Sorbonne were astonished, and possibly scandalised, by the language, the rites, and the vestments, of his Greek clergy. But the slightest glance on the state of the kingdom must teach him to despair of any effective assistance. The unfortunate Charles, though he enjoyed some lucid intervals, continually relapsed into furious or stupid insanity; the reins of government were alternately seized by his brother and uncle, the dukes of Orleans and Burgundy, whose factions competition prepared the miseries of civil war. The former was a gay youth, dissolved in luxury and
love: the latter was the father of John, count of Nevers, who had so lately been ransomed from Turkish captivity; and, if the fearless son was ardent to revenge his defeat, the more prudent Burgundy was content with the cost and peril of the first experiment. When Manuel had satiated the curiosity, and perhaps fatigued the patience, of the French, he resolved on a visit to the adjacent island. In his progress from Dover he was entertained at Canterbury with due reverence by the prior and monks of St. Austin; and, on Blackheath, king Henry the fourth, with the English court, saluted the Greek hero (I copy our old historian), who, during many days, was lodged and treated in London as emperor of the East. But the state of England was still more adverse to the design of the holy war. In the same year the hereditary sovereign had been deposed and murdered; the reigning prince was a successful usurper, whose ambition was punished by jealousy and remorse; nor could Henry of Lancaster withdraw his person or forces from the defence of a throne incessantly shaken by conspiracy and rebellion. He pitied, he praised, he feasted, the emperor of Constantinople; but if the English monarch assumed the cross, it was

---

1 A short note of Manuel, in England, is extracted by Dr. Holy from a ms. at Lambeth (De Gracia illustribus, p. 148, c. v. Imperator, die sanctique et gloriosissimo pagorum insulam castitatem, et per diversa resonantissimam triumphantem perpetuam Anglorum regnas visiter decrevit, &c. Rex (says Walsingham, p. 304) taleb apparatrum...susceptit (ut decet) tantum Heron, sanctique Lendalas, et per millia dies exibiit gloriosae, pro expansa hortili sui adventu, et sum riparum tuta fastigio dominativ. He repeats the same in his Topica Naustra (p. 355).
only to appease his people, and perhaps his conscience, by the merit or semblance of this pious intention. Satisfied, however, with gifts and honours, Manuel returned to Paris; and, after a residence of two years in the West, shaped his course through Germany and Italy, embarked at Venice, and patiently expected, in the Morea, the moment of his ruin or deliverance. Yet he had escaped the ignominious necessity of offering his religion to public or private sale. The Latin church was distracted by the great schism: the kings, the nations, the universities, of Europe, were divided in their obedience between the popes of Rome and Avignon; and the emperor, anxious to conciliate the friendship of both parties, abstained from any correspondence with the indigent and unpopular rivals. His journey coincided with the year of the jubilee; but he passed through Italy without desiring, or deserving, the plenary indulgence which abolished the guilt or penance of the sins of the faithful. The Roman pope was offended by this neglect; accused him of irreverence to an image of Christ; and exhorted the princes of Italy to reject and abandon the obstinate schismatic.

During the period of the crusades, the Greeks beheld with astonishment and terror the perpetual

---

* Shakespeare begins and ends the play of Henry vi. with the prince's vow of a crusade, and his belief that he should die in Jerusalem.

** This fact is preserved in the Historia Politica, a. e. 1591-1479, published by Martin Crusius (Turco Gracia, p. 1-43). The image of Christ, which the Greek emperor refused to worship, was probably a work of sculpture.
stream of emigration that flowed, and continued to flow, from the unknown climates of the West. The visits of their last emperors removed the veil of separation, and they disclosed to their eyes the powerful nations of Europe, whom they no longer presumed to brand with the name of barbarians. The observations of Manuel, and his more inquisitive followers, have been preserved by a Byzantine historian of the times: his scattered ideas I shall collect and abridge: and it may be amusing enough, perhaps instructive, to contemplate the rude pictures of Germany, France, and England, whose ancient and modern state are so familiar to our minds. 1. Germany (says the Greek Chalcondyles) is of ample latitude, from Vienna to the ocean; and it stretches (a strange geography) from Prague in Bohemia to the river Tartessus, and the Pyrenean mountains. The soil, except in figs and olives, is sufficiently fruitful; the air is salubrious; the bodies of the natives are

* The Greek and Turkish history of Laumond Chalcondyles ends with the winter of 1463, and the abrupt conclusion seems to mark that he laid down his pen in the same year. We know that he was not Athenian, and that none contemporaries of the same name contributed to the revival of the Greek language in Italy. But in his numerous digressions, the modest historian has never introduced himself and his editor, Lernisdian, as well as Patriarchs (Milan, Grec. I. 4, p. 871), some ignorant of his life and character. For his descriptions of Germany, France, and England, see 1. II, p. 36, 37, 44—50.

* I shall not advert to the geographical errors of Chalcondyles. In this instance he perhaps followed, and mistook, Herodotus (I. ii. c. 23), whose text may be explained (Hermite de Larcher, tom. ii. p. 219, 279), or whose ignorance may be excused. Had these modern Greeks never read Strabo, or any of the lesser geographers?
robust and healthy; and those cold regions are seldom visited with the calamities of pestilence or earthquakes. After the Scythians or Tartars, the Germans are the most numerous of nations; they are brave and patient, and were they united under a single head, their force would be irresistible. By the gift of the pope, they have acquired the privilege of choosing the Roman emperor; nor is any people more devoutly attached to the faith and obedience of the Latin patriarch. The greatest part of the country is divided among the princes and prelates; but Strasburgh, Cologne, Hamburgh, and more than two hundred free cities, are governed by sage and equal laws, according to the will, and for the advantage, of the whole community. The use of duels, or single combats on foot, prevails among them in peace and war; their industry excels in all the mechanic arts, and the Germans may boast of the invention of gunpowder and cannon, which is now diffused over the greatest part of the world. 11. The kingdom of France is spread above fifteen or twenty days journey from Germany to Spain, and from the Alps to the British ocean; containing many flourishing cities, and among these Paris, the seat of the king, which surpasses the rest in riches and luxury. Many princes and lords alternately wait in his
palace, and acknowledge him as their sovereign; the most powerful are the dukes of Breteagne and Burgundy, of whom the latter possesses the wealthy province of Flanders, whose harbours are frequented by the ships and merchants of our own and the more remote seas. The French are an ancient and opulent people; and their language and manners, though somewhat different, are not dissimilar from those of the Italians. Vain of the imperial dignity of Charlemagne, of their victories over the Saracens, and of the exploits of their heroes, Oliver and Rowland, they esteem themselves the first of the western nations; but this foolish arrogance has been recently humbled by the unfortunate events of their wars against the English, the inhabitants of the British island. III. Britain, in the ocean, and opposite to the shores of Flanders, may be considered either as one, or as three islands; but the whole is united by a common interest, by the same manners, and by a similar government. The measure of its circumference is five thousand stadia: the land is overspread with towns and villages; though destitute of wine, and not abounding in fruit trees, it is fertile in wheat and barley, in honey and wool; and much cloth is manufactured by the inhabitants. In populous,

* Most of the old romances were transcribed in the fourteenth century into French prose, and soon became the favourite amusement of the knights and ladies in the court of Charlevoix. If a Greek believed in the exploits of Rowland and Oliver, he may surely be excused, since the monks of St. Denys, the national historians, have inserted the tales of archbishop Turpin in their Chronicles of France.
ness and power, in riches and luxury. London, the metropolis of the isle, may claim a pre-eminence over all the cities of the West. It is situate on the Thames, a broad and rapid river, which, at the distance of thirty miles, falls into the Gallic sea; and the daily flow and ebb of the tide affords a safe entrance and departure to the vessels of commerce. The king is the head of a powerful and turbulent aristocracy; his principal vassals hold their estates by a free and unalterable tenure; and the laws define the limits of his authority and their obedience. The kingdom has been often afflicted by foreign conquest and domestic sedition; but the natives are bold and hardy, renowned in arms, and victorious in war. The form of their shields or targets is derived from the Italians, that of their swords from the Greeks; the use of the long bow is the peculiar and decisive advantage of the English. Their language bears no affinity to the idioms of the continent: in the habits of domestic life, they are not easily distinguished from their neighbours of France; but the most singular circumstance of their manners is their disregard of conjugal honour and of female chastity. In their mutual visits, as the first act of hospitality, the guest is welcomed in the embraces of their wives and daughters: among friends, they are lent and borrowed without

*Amos.*
shame; nor are the islanders offended at this
strange commerce, and its inevitable con-
sequences. Informed as we are of the customs
of old England, and assured of the virtue of our
mothers, we may smile at the credulity, or resent
the injustice, of the Greek, who must have con-
founded a modest salute with a criminal em-
brace. But his credulity and injustice may teach
an important lesson: to distrust the accounts of
foreign and remote nations, and to suspend our
belief of every tale that deviates from the laws
of nature and the character of man.

After his return, and the victory of Timour,
Manuel reigned many years in prosperity and
peace. As long as the sons of Bajazet solicited
his friendship and spared his dominions, he was
satisfied with the national religion: and his leis-
ure was employed in composing twenty theo-
logical dialogues for its defence. The appearance
of the Byzantine ambassadors at the council
of Constance\(^a\) announces the restoration of the

---

\(^a\) If the double name of the task Kas (senior, and in office gene-
be equivalent, the consent and plea-bearer of Chalcemylas can leave
no doubt of his meaning and mistake (p. 48).

\(^b\) Eremius (Epist. Fanato Andrélino) has a pretty passage on the
English fashion of amusing strangers on their arrival and departure.

\(^c\) Perhaps we may apply this remark to the community of cuius
among the old Romans, as it is supposed by Caesar and Dion (Dion
Caesari. I. lxxi. tom. ii. p. 1005), with Reina's judicious annota-
. The dress of Ostilia, as certain at first, is become less vis-
ble and scandalous, in proportion as we have studied the manners
of that gentile and among people.

\(^d\) See Lactant. Hist. du Concile de Constance, tom. ii. p. 376.1
and for the ecclesiastical history of the times. the Annales Episcopial
the Bibliotheca of Dupin, tom. xxii. and volumes xxiii and xxiv
of the History, or rather the Continuation, of Henry.
Turkish power, as well as of the Latin church; the conquest of the sultans, Mahomet and Amurath, reconciled the emperor to the Vatican; and the siege of Constantinople almost tempted him to acquiesce in the double procession of the Holy Ghost. When Martin the fifth ascended, without a rival, the chair of St. Peter, a friendly intercourse of letters and embassies was revived between the East and West. Ambition on one side, and distress on the other, dictated the same decent language of charity and peace: the artful Greek expressed a desire of marrying his six sons to Italian princesses; and the Roman, not less artful, dispatched the daughter of the marquis of Montferrat, with a company of noble virgins, to soften by their charms the obstinacy of the schismatics. Yet under this mask of zeal, a discerning eye will perceive that all was hollow and insincere in the court and church of Constantinople. According to the vicissitudes of danger and repose, the emperor advanced or retreated; alternately instructed and disavowed his ministers; and escaped from an importunate pressure by urging the duty of inquiry, the obligation of collecting the sense of his patriarchs and bishops, and the impossibility of convening them at a time when the Turkish arms were at the gates of his capital. From a review of the public transactions, it will appear that the Greeks insisted on three successive measures, a succour, a council, and a final reunion, while the Latins eluded the second, and only promised the first, as a consequential and voluntary reward of the third. But
we have an opportunity of unfolding the most secret intentions of Manuel, as he explained them in a private conversation, without artifice or disguise. In his declining age, the emperor had associated John Palaeologus, the second of the name, and the eldest of his sons, on whom he devolved the greatest part of the authority and weight of government. One day, in the presence only of the historian Phranza, his favourite chamberlain, he opened to his colleague and successor the true principle of his negotiations with the pope. "Our last resource," said Manuel, "against the Turks is their fear of our union with the Latins, of the warlike nations of the West, who may arm for our relief, and for their destruction. As often as you are threatened by the miscreants, present this danger before their eyes. Propose a council; consult on the means; but ever delay and avoid the convocation of an assembly, which cannot tend either to our spiritual or temporal emolument.

*From his early youth, George Phranza, or Phranzus, was employed in the service of the state and palace; and Huculius (De Script. Byzant. p. 1, c. 40) has collected his life from his own writings. He was no more than four-and-twenty years of age at the death of Manuel, who recommended him in the strongest terms to his successor. Impetuous was his fate. Phranza the envious, qui ministeri ministrit ad inferius et dissipat (Phranza, i. ii. c. 1). Yet the emperor John was rude, and he preferred the service of the despots of Palaeonemus.

*See Phranza, i. ii. c. 13. While so many manuscripts of the Greek original are extant in the libraries of Rome, Milan, the Esenval, &c., it is a matter of shame and reproach, that we should be reduced to the Latin version, or abstracts of James Pontanno ad callem Theophylact. Symeontinus (Ingolstadt, 1004), so deficient in accuracy and elegance (Fabric. Biblil. Graec. tom. vi, p. 615-620).
The Latins are proud; the Greeks are obstinate; neither party will recede or retract; and the attempt of a perfect union will confirm the schism, alienate the churches, and leave us, without hope or defence, at the mercy of the barbarians." Impatient of this salutary lesson, the royal youth arose from his seat, and departed in silence; and the wise monarch (continues Pharanza), casting his eyes on me, thus resumed his discourse: "My son deems himself a great and heroic prince; but, alas! our miserable age does not afford scope for heroism or greatness. His daring spirit might have suited the happier times of our ancestors; but the present state requires not an emperor, but a cautious steward of the last relics of our fortunes. Well do I remember the lofty expectations which he built on our alliance with Mustapha; and much do I fear that his rash courage will urge the ruin of our house, and that even religion may precipitate our downfall." Yet the experience and authority of Manuel preserved the peace, and eluded the council, till, in the seventy-eighth year of his age, and the death in the habit of a monk, he terminated his career, dividing his precious moveables among his children and the poor, his physicians and his favourite servants. Of his six sons, Andronicus, the second, was invested with the principality of Thessalonica, and died of a leprosy soon after the sale of that city to the Venetians, and its final conquest by the Turks. Some fortunate incidents

---

*See Ducange, Fam. Byzant., p. 343-448.*
had restored Peloponnesus, or the Morea, to the empire; and in his more prosperous days, Manuel had fortified the narrow isthmus of six miles with a stone wall and one hundred and fifty-three towers. The wall was overthrown by the first blast of the Ottomans; the fertile peninsula might have been sufficient for the four younger brothers, Theodore and Constantine, Demetrius and Thomas; but they wasted in domestic contests the remains of their strength; and the least successful of the rivals were reduced to a life of dependence in the Byzantine palace.

The eldest of the sons of Manuel, John Palaeologus the second, was acknowledged, after his father's death, as the sole emperor of the Greeks. He immediately proceeded to repudiate his wife, and to contract a new marriage with the princess of Trebizond; beauty was, in his eyes, the first qualification of an empress; and the clergy had yielded to his firm assurance, that unless he might be indulged in a divorce, he would retire to a cloister, and leave the throne to his brother Constantine. The first, and, in truth, the only, victory of Palaeologus was over a Jew, whom, after a long and learned dispute, he converted to

---

1 The exact measure of the Hexamillion, from sea to sea, was 3800 argons, or sires, of six Greek feet (Pampane, 1, 12, c. 15), which would produce a Greek mile, still smaller than that of 600 French toises, which is assigned by Mr. A'Court as still in use in Turkey. Five miles are commonly reckoned for the breadth of the isthmus, see the Travels of Spence, Wheeler, and Chandler.

2 The first objection of the Jews, is on the death of Christ; if it were voluntary, Christ was a suicide; which the emperors put aside with a mystery. They then dispute on the conception of the virgin, the sense of the prophet, &c. (Phranze, 1, 2, c. 12, a whole chapter).
the Christian faith; and this momentous conquest is carefully recorded in the history of the times. But he soon resumed the design of uniting the East and West; and regardless of his father's advice, listened, as it should seem, with sincerity, to the proposal of meeting the pope in a general council beyond the Adriatic. This dangerous project was encouraged by Martin the fifth, and coldly entertained by his successor Eugenius, till, after a tedious negotiation, the emperor received a summons from the Latin assembly of a new character, the independent prelates of Basil, who styled themselves the representatives and judges of the Catholic church.

The Roman pontiff had fought and conquered in the cause of ecclesiastical freedom; but the victorious clergy were soon exposed to the tyranny of their deliverer; and his sacred character was invulnerable to those arms which they found so keen and effectual against the civil magistrate. Their great charter, the right of election, was annihilated by appeals, evaded by trusts or commendams, disappointed by reversionary grants, and superseded by previous and arbitrary reservations.* A public auction was instituted in the court of Rome: the cardinals and favourites were enriched with the spoils of nations; and every country might complain that the most important and valuable benefices were accumulated on the

---

* In the treatise delle Matrice Beneficar of Pra-Pusta in the fourth volume of the last and best edition of his works, the papal system is deeply studied and freely described. Should Rome and her religion be annihilated, this golden volume may still survive, a philosophical history, and a salutary warning.
heads of aliens and absentees. During their residence at Avignon, the ambition of the popes subsided in the manner passions of avarice and luxury: they rigorously imposed on the clergy the tributes of first-fruits and tenths; but they freely tolerated the impiety of vice, disorder, and corruption. These manifold scandals were aggravated by the great schism of the West, which continued above fifty years. In the furious conflicts of Rome and Avignon, the vices of the rivals were mutually exposed; and their precarious situation degraded their authority, relaxed their discipline, and multiplied their wants and exactions. To heal the wounds, and restore the monarchy, of the church, the synods of Pisa and Constance* were successively convened; but these great assemblies, conscious of their strength, resolved to vindicate the privileges of the Christian aristocracy. From a personal sentence against two pontiffs, whom they rejected, and a third, their acknowledged sovereign, whom they deposed, the fathers of Constance proceeded to examine the nature and limits of the Roman supremacy; nor did they separate till they had

* Pope John XXII (in 1334) left behind him, at Avignon, eighteen millions of gold ducats, and the value of seven millions more in plate and jewels. See the Chronicle of John Villani (c. 21, c. 39, in Muratori’s Collection, tom. 210, p. 763), whose brother received the account from the papal treasuries. A treasure of six or eight millions sterling in the fourteenth century is enormous, and almost incredible.

* A learned and liberal protestant, M. Lefebre, has given a fair history of the councils of Pisa, Constance, and Basil, in six volumes in quarto; but the last part is the most faulty and imperfect, except in the account of the troubles of Bohemia.
established the authority, above the pope, of a general council. It was enacted, that, for the government and reformation of the church, such assemblies should be held at regular intervals; and that each synod, before its dissolution, should appoint the time and place of the subsequent meeting. By the influence of the court of Rome, the next convocation at Sienna was easily eluded; but the bold and vigorous proceedings of the council of Basil had almost been fatal to the reigning pontiff, Eugenius the fourth. A just suspicion of his design prompted the fathers to hasten the promulgation of their first decree, that the representatives of the church-militant on earth were invested with a divine and spiritual jurisdiction over all christians, without excepting the pope; and that a general council could not be dissolved, prorogued, or transferred, unless by their free deliberation and consent. On the notice that Eugenius had fulminated a bull for that purpose, they ventured to summon, to admonish, to threaten, to censure, the contumacious successor of St. Peter. After many delays, to allow time for repentance, they finally declared, that, unless he submitted within the term of sixty days, he was suspended from the exercise of all temporal and ecclesiastic power.
astical authority. And to mark their jurisdiction over the prince as well as the priest, they assumed the government of Avignon, annulled the alienation of the sacred patrimony, and protected Rome from the imposition of new taxes. Their boldness was justified, not only by the general opinion of the clergy, but by the support and power of the first monarchs of Christendom; the emperor Sigismond declared himself the servant and protector of the synd; Germany and France adhered to their cause; the duke of Milan was the enemy of Eugenius; and he was driven from the Vatican by an insurrection of the Roman people. Rejected at the same time by his temporal and spiritual subjects, submission was his only choice; by a most humiliating bull, the pope repealed his own acts, and ratified those of the council; incorporated his legates and cardinals with that venerable body; and seemed to resign himself to the decrees of the supreme legislature. Their fame pervaded the countries of the East; and it was in their presence that Sigismond received the ambassadors of the Turkish sultan,* who laid at his feet twelve large vases, filled with robes of silk and pieces of gold. The fathers of Basil aspired to the glory of reducing the Greeks, as well as the Bohemians, within the pale of the church; and their deputies invited the emperor and patriarch of Constantinople to unite with an assembly which possessed the confidence of the western nations. Palæologus was not averse to

* This Turkish embassy, attested only by Cameron, is related, with some doubt, by the annalist Spondaneus, a. a. 1435, No. 25; tom. i. p. 824.
the proposal; and his ambassadors were introduced with due honours into the catholic senate. But the choice of the place appeared to be an insuperable obstacle, since he refused to pass the Alps, or the sea of Sicily, and positively required that the synod should be adjourned to some convenient city in Italy, or at least on the Danube. The other articles of this treaty were more readily stipulated: it was agreed to defray the travelling expenses of the emperor, with a train of seven hundred persons; to remit an immediate sum of eight thousand ducats for the accommodation of the Greek clergy; and in his absence to grant a supply of ten thousand ducats, with three hundred archers and some galluses, for the protection of Constantinople. The city of Avignon advanced the funds for the preliminary expenses; and the embarkation was prepared at Marseilles with some difficulty and delay.

In his distress, the friendship of Palaeologus, was disputed by the ecclesiastical powers of the West; but the dexterous activity of a monarch prevailed over the slow debates and inflexible temper of a republic. The decrees of Basil continually tended to circumscribe the despotism of *A Synopsis, p. 19. In this list, the Greeks appear to have exceed the real numbers of the clergy and laity which afterwards attended the emperor and patriarch, but which are not clearly specified by the great ecclesiastics. The 73,000 ducats which they asked for this negotiation of the pope (p. 9) were more than they could hope to want.

4 Unbeknownst the words seem and gloin, which derive their name, the former from the dukes of Milan, the latter from the republic of Florence. These gold pieces, the first that were coined in Italy, perhaps in the Latin world, may be esteemed, in weight and value, to one-third of the English guinea.
the pope, and to erect a supreme and perpetual tribunal in the church. Eugenius was impatient of the yoke; and the union of the Greeks might afford a decent pretence for translating a rebellious synod from the Rhine to the Po. The independence of the fathers was lost if they passed the Alps; Savoy or Avignon, to which they acceded with reluctance, were described at Constantinople as situate far beyond the pillars of Hercules; the emperor and his clergy were apprehensive of the dangers of a long navigation; they were offended by an haughty declaration, that after suppressing the new heresy of the Bohemians, the council would soon eradicate the old heresy of the Greeks. On the side of Eugenius, all was smooth, and yielding, and respectful; and he invited the Byzantine monarch to heal by his presence the schism of the Latin, as well as of the Eastern church. Ferrara, near the coast of the Adriatic, was proposed for their amicable interview; and with some indulgence of forgery and theft, a surreptitious decree was procured, which transferred the synod, with its own consent, to that Italian city. Nine galleys were equipped for this service at Venice, and in the

*At the end of the Latin version of Focenius, we read a long Greek epistle or declaration of George of Trebizond, who advised the emperor to prefer Eugenius and Italy. His treatise with contempt the achromatic assembly of Basil, the heretics of Gaul and Germany, who had conspired to transport the chair of St. Peter beyond the Alps: οἱ ἀδιάντητοι ηθοποιοὶ καὶ τὰ ματαιαὶ πολιτικά πεπλατυμένοι. Οὐκ οὐδὲ τὴν ἐπαρχίαν ἐπάνω ἐπὶ τερατώρια. Was Constantinople unprovided with a map?

*Syropodius (p. 26-M) attests his own indignation, and that of his countrymen; and the Basil deputies, who excused the rash declaration, could neither deny nor alter an act of the council.
isle of Candia; their diligence anticipated the slower vessels of Basil; the Roman admiral was commissioned to burn, sink, and destroy; and these priestly squadrons might have encountered each other in the same seas where Athens and Sparta had formerly contended for the pre-eminence of glory. Assaulted by the importunity of the factions, who were ready to fight for the possession of his person, Palaeologus hesitated before he left his palace and country on a perilous experiment. His father's advice still dwelt on his memory: and reason must suggest, that since the Latins were divided among themselves, they could never unite in a foreign cause. Sigismund dissuaded the unseasonable adventure; his advice was impartial, since he adhered to the council; and it was enforced by the strange belief, that the German Caesar would nominate a Greek his heir and successor in the empire of the West. Even the Turkish sultan was a counsellor whom it might be unsafe to trust, but whom it was dangerous to offend. Amurath was unskilled in the disputes, but he was apprehensive of the union of the Christians. From his own treasures, he offered to relieve the wants of the Byzantine court; yet he declared with seeming magnanimity,

* Fundamentally, the pope's nephew and admiral, expressly declared, that * MAGICA MORTY MAVE * BARW DEE WAT qske eit ce ceve ably qe Xeka, am c hose adhcen am adhcen. The naval orders of the council were less preceptory; and, till the hostile squadrons opposed, both parties tried to conceal their quarrel from the Greeks.

* Synopsis mentions the hopes of Palaeologus (p. 38), and the last advice of Sigismund (p. 57). At Corfu, the Greek emperor was informed of his friend's death: he knew it answer, he would have returned home (p. 70).
that Constantinople should be secure and inviolate in the absence of her sovereign. The resolution of Palaeologus was decided by the most splendid gifts and the most specious promises; he wished to escape for a while from a scene of danger and distress; and after dismissing with an ambiguous answer the messengers of the council, he declared his intention of embarking in the Roman galleys. The age of the patriarch Joseph was more susceptible of fear than of hope; he trembled at the perils of the sea, and expressed his apprehension, that his feeble voice, with thirty perhaps of his orthodox brethren, would be oppressed in a foreign land by the power and numbers of a Latin synod. He yielded to the royal mandate, to the flattering assurance, that he would be heard as the oracle of nations, and to the secret wish of learning from his brother of the West, to deliver the church from the yoke of kings. The five cross-bearers, or dignitaries of St. Sophia, were bound to attend his person; and one of these, the great ecclesiarch or preacher, Sylvester Syropulus, has

* Phrases himself, though from different motives, was at the advice of Anaurath (l. ii. 12). Ullman, as synod was soon after closed, makes affinities at detrimenta jurta sent. This Turkish embassy to Ghirardone, mentioned by Syropulus (p. 26); and Anaurath kept his word. He visited the Synod (p. 123, 219), but he never attacked the city.

* The reader will smile at the simplicity with which he imported these hopes in his own church and to the emperor. See the Decretum Gelasianum, cap. xxxiv. 12. vill. ut vesta sancus sint; see also the persecutors with justice on the Synods (p. 22). Yet it would have been difficult for him to have practised the lessons of Gregory viii.

* The christening name of Sylvester is borrowed from the Latin ex."
composed a free and curious history of the false union. Of the clergy that reluctantly obeyed the summons of the emperor and the patriarch, submission was the first duty, and patience the most useful virtue. In a chosen list of twenty bishops, we discover the metropolitan titles of Heraclea and Cyzicus, Nice and Nicomedia, Ephesus and Trebizond, and the personal merit of Mark and Bessarion, who, in the confidence of their learning and eloquence, were promoted to the episcopal rank. Some monks and philosophers were named to display the science and sanctity of the Greek church; and the service of the choir was performed by a select band of singers and musicians. The patriarchs of Alexandria, Antioch, and Jerusalem, appeared by their genuine or fictitious deputies; the primate of Russia represented a national church, and the Greeks might contend with the Latins in the extent of their spiritual empire. The precious vases of St. Sophia were exposed to the winds and waves; that the patriarch might officiate with becoming splendour; whatever gold

end of prose: but can any reasoning of Creighton, the editor, except this changing into Syropedias (Greek, Syropedias of his own manuscript, whose name is substituted to his own hand in the acts of the council of Florence. Why might not the author be at Syropedias extraction?

* From the conclusion of the history. I should fix the date in the year 1444, four years after the synod, when the great metropolitans had dedicated his office (secte xii, p. 326-329). His passions were raised by fire and water on all, although Syropedias is often partial, he is never insupportable.

* Very honourable amends are made here. Glimpses of Latin and Greek Sources, 1859. In Italy, was first published with 4 lines and marked error, by Robert Creighton, chaplain to Charles II, in his exile. The seal of the editor has prefixed a polemical title, for the beginning of the original is wanting. Syropedias may be ranked with the best of the Byzantine writers for the merit of his narration, and even of his style, but has excluded from the orthodox collections of the council.
the emperor could procure, was expended in the
massy ornaments of his bed and chariot; and
while they affected to maintain the prosperity of
their ancient fortune, they quarrelled for the
division of fifteen thousand ducats, the first alms
of the Roman pontiff. After the necessary prepa-

dations, John Paleologus, with a numerous
train, accompanied by his brother Demetrius, and
the most respectable persons of the church and
state, embarked in eight vessels with sails and
oars, which steered through the Turkish straits
of Gallipoli to the Archipelago, the Morea, and
the Adriatic gulf."

After a tedious and troublesome navigation of
seventy-seven days, this religious squadron cast
anchor before Venice; and their reception pro-
claimed the joy and magnificence of that pow-
erful republic. In the command of the world, the
modest Augustus had never claimed such honours
from his subjects, as were paid to his feeble
successor by an independent state. Seated on the
poop, on a lofty throne, he received the visit, or,
in the Greek style, the *adoration*, of the doge
and senators. They sailed in the Bucentaur,

* SyrupACA (p. 63) simply expresses his intention after a reception to honor their hosts and their majesty the Latin of Creepstone may afford a specimen of his liberal paraphrase. By proper circum-
dances under immense idle populus aliquis dominantis Jupiter exer-
didum, met Creus ex opulentia Lydii.

* Although I cannot stop to quote Syrupaca for every line, I will
observe that the navigation of the Greeks from Constantinople to Ve-
nice and Venetia is contained in the fourth section (p. 87-100), and
that the historian has the consummate talent of placing each scene be-
fore the reader's eye.

* At the time of the synod, Phocas was in Peloponnesus; but he
remained from the despotic Demetrius a faithful account of the unmanable
terminations.
which was accompanied by twelve stately galleys: the sea was overspread with innumerable gondolas of pomp and pleasure; the air resounded with music and acclamations; the mariners, and even the vessels, were dressed in silk and gold; and in all the emblems and pageants, the Roman eagles were blended with the lions of St. Mark. The triumphal procession, ascending the great canal, passed under the bridge of the Rialto: and the eastern strangers gazed with admiration on the palaces, the churches, and the populousness of a city, that seems to float on the bosom of the waves. They sighed to behold the spoils and trophies with which it had been decorated after the sack of Constantinople. After an hospitable entertainment of fifteen days, Palaeologus pursued his journey by land and water from Venice to Ferrara; and on this occasion, the pride of the Vatican was tempered by policy to indulge the ancient dignity of the emperor of the East. He made his entry on a black horse; but a milk-white steed, whose trappings were embroidered with golden eagles, was led before him; and the canopy was borne over his head by the princes of Este, the sons or kinsmen of Nicholas, marquis of the city, and a sovereign

1 Receipt of the emperor and patriarch both at Venice and Ferrara (Deur. ... immortem imperatorum adcrat), which are more slightly mentioned by the Latins (n. i., n. 14, 15, 16).

2 The visitation of a Greek prince and a French ambassador (Mem. de Philippe de Conti, i. vii., c. 18), at the sight of Venice, abundantly proves, that in the fifteenth century, it was the first and most splendid of the Christian cities. For the spoils of Constantinople at Venice, see Syracusan (p. 87).
more powerful than himself.  

Paleologus did not alight till he reached the bottom of the staircase: the pope advanced to the door of the apartment; refused his proffered genuflection; and, after a paternal embrace, conducted the emperor to a seat on his left hand. Nor would the patriarch descend from his galley, till a ceremony, almost equal, had been stipulated between the bishops of Rome and Constantinople. The latter was saluted by his brother with a kiss of union and charity; nor would any of the Greek ecclesiastics submit to kiss the foot of the western primate. On the opening of the synod, the place of honour in the centre was claimed by the temporal and ecclesiastical chiefs; and it was only by alleging that his predecessors had not assisted in person at Nice or Chalcedon, that Eugenius could evade the ancient precedents of Constantine and Marcellus. After much debate, it was agreed that the right and left sides of the church should be occupied by the two nations; that the solitary chair of St. Peter should be raised the first of the Latin line; and that the throne of the Greek emperor, at the head of his clergy, should be equal and opposite to the second place, the vacant seat of the emperor of the West.

Nicholas III of Este reigned for forty-eight years (A.D. 1303-1343), and was lord of Ferrara, Modena, Reggio, Forlì, Ravenna, and Comacchio. See his life in Muratori (Antiquitates Rheticae, tom. II, p. 132-201).

The Latin vulgar was provoked to laughter at the strange colour of the Greeks, and especially the length of their garments, their shoes, and their beards; nor was the emperor distinguishable except by the purple colour, and his diadem or tira, with a jewel on the top.
But as soon as festivity and form had given place to a more serious treaty, the Greeks were dissatisfied with their journey, with themselves, and with the pope. The artful pencil of his emissaries had painted him in a prosperous state; at the head of the princes and prelates of Europe, obedient, at his voice, to believe and to arm. The thin appearance of the universal synod of Ferrara betrayed his weakness; and the Latins opened the first session with only five archbishops, eighteen bishops, and ten abbots, the greatest part of whom were the subjects or countrymen of the Italian pontiff. Except the duke of Burgundy, none of the potentates of the West condescended to appear in person, or by their ambassadors; nor was it possible to suppress the judicial acts of Basili against the dignity and person of Eugenius, which were finally concluded by a new election. Under these circumstances, a truce or delay was asked and granted, till Paleologus could expect from the consent of the Latins some temporal reward for an unpopular union; and, after the first session, the public proceedings were adjourned above six months. The emperor, with a chosen band of his favourites and janizaries, fixed his summer residence at a pleasant spacious monastery, six miles from Ferrara; forgot, in the pleasures of the chase, the distress of the church and state; and persisted in destroying the game, without listening to the just complaints of the marquis or

(Holy de Graecia Illustrata, p. 31). Yet another spectaculor confirms, that the Greek fashion was plus grande et plus digne than the Italian (Vespasiano, in Vit. Eugen. iv, in Muratori, tom. xiv, p. 261).
the husbandman." In the meanwhile, his unfortunate Greeks were exposed to all the miseries of exile and poverty; for the support of each stranger, a monthly allowance was assigned of three or four gold florins; and although the entire sum did not amount to seven hundred florins, a long arrear was repeatedly incurred by the indigence or policy of the Roman court. They sighed for a speedy deliverance, but their escape was prevented by a triple chain: a passport from their superiors was required at the gates of Ferrara: the government of Venice had engaged to arrest and send back the fugitives; and inevitable punishment awaited them at Constantinople: excommunication, fines, and a sentence, which did not respect the sacerdotal dignity, that they should be stripped naked and publicly whipped. It was only by the alternative of hunger or dispute that the Greeks could be persuaded to

* For the empire's history, see Syropulus (p. 143, 144, 191). The pope had sent him eleven miserable lacks; but he bought a strong and well-located castle from Muscovy. The name of Muscovy may surprise: but the name, rather than the institution, had passed from the Ottoman to the Byzantine court, and is often used in the last age of the empire.

* The Greeks obtained, with much difficulty, that instead of provisions, money should be distributed, four ducats per month to the persons of honorable rank, and three florins to their servants, with an addition of thirty sous to the emperor, twenty-five to the patriarch, and twenty to the prince of Despot Demetrius. The payment of the first month amounted to 884 florins, a sum which will not allow us to reckon above 200 Greeks of every condition (Syropulus, p. 191, 192). On the 20th October 1438, there was an arrear of four months; in April 1439, of three; and of five and a half in July, at the time of the union (p. 173, 224, 271).

* Syropulus (p. 141, 142, 204, 225) depicts the imprisonment of the Greeks, and the tyranny of the emperor and patriarch.
open the first conference; and they yielded with extreme reluctance to attend from Ferrara to Florence the rear of a flying synod. This new translation was urged by inevitable necessity: the city was visited by the plague; the fidelity of the marquis might be suspected; the mercenary troops of the duke of Milan were at the gates; and as they occupied Romagna, it was not without difficulty and danger that the pope, the emperor, and the bishops, explored their way through the unfrequented paths of the Apennine.

Yet all these obstacles were surmounted by time and policy. The violence of the fathers of Basil rather promoted than injured the cause of Eugenius; the nations of Europe abhorred the schism, and disowned the election of Felix the fifth, who was successively a duke of Savoy, an hermit, and a pope; and the great princes were gradually reclaimed by his competitor to a favourable neutrality and a firm attachment. The legates, with some respectable members, deserted to the Roman army, which insensibly rose in numbers and reputation: the council of Basil was reduced to thirty-nine bishops, and three hundred of the inferior clergy; while the Latins of

* The wars of Italy are most clearly represented in the thirteenth volume of the Annales of Montecors. The schismatic Greek, Syruponus (p. 148), appears to have exaggerated the fear and disquiet of the pope in his retreat from Ferrara to Florence, which is proved by the facts to have been somewhat more decent and deliberate.

* Syruponus is pleased to reckon seven hundred prelates in the council of Basil. The sum is manifest, and perhaps voluntary. That is, not
Florence could produce the subscriptions of the pope himself, eight cardinals, two patriarchs, eight archbishops, fifty-two bishops, and forty-five abbots, or chiefs of religious orders. After the labour of nine months, and the debates of twenty-five sessions, they attained the advantage and glory of the re-union of the Greeks. Four principal questions had been agitated between the two churches: 1. The use of unleavened bread in the communion of Christ's body. 2. The nature of purgatory. 3. The supremacy of the pope. And, 4. The single or double procession of the Holy Ghost. The cause of either nation was managed by ten theological champions; the Latins were supported by the inexhaustible eloquence of cardinal Julian; and Mark of Ephesus and Bessarion of Nice were the bold and able leaders of the Greek forces. We may bestow some praise on the progress of human reason, by observing, that the first of these questions was ever treated as an immaterial rite, which might innocently vary with the fashion of the age and country. With regard to the second, both parties were agreed in the belief of an intermediate state of purification for the venial sins of the faithful; and whether their souls were purified by elemental fire was a doubtful point, which in a few years might be conveniently settled on the spot by the disputants. The claims of supremacy appeared of a more
weighty and substantial kind; yet by the Orientalists the Roman bishop had ever been respected as the first of the five patriarchs; nor did they scruple to admit, that his jurisdiction should be exercised agreeable to the holy canons; a vague allowance, which might be defined or chided by occasional convenience. The procession of the Holy Ghost from the Father alone, or from the Father and the Son, was an article of faith which had sunk much deeper into the minds of men; and in the sessions of Ferrara and Florence, the Latin edition of *filioque* was subdivided into two questions, whether it were legal, and whether it were orthodox. Perhaps it may not be necessary to boast on this subject of my own impartial indifference; but I must think, that the Greeks were strongly supported by the prohibition of the council of Chalcedon, against adding my article whatsoever to the creed of Nice, or rather of Constantinople. In earthly affairs, it is not easy to conceive how an assembly of legislators can bind their successors, invested with powers equal to their own. But the dictates of inspiration must be true and unchangeable; nor should a private bishop, or a provincial synod, have presumed to innovate against the judgment of the catholic church. On the substance of the doctrine, the controversy was equal and endless: reason is confounded by the procession of a deity:

---

*The Greeks, who disliked the union, were unwilling to ally from this uneasy mixture (p. 176, 179, 195, 202, of Syropach). The cause of the Latins was aggravated by their producing an old sin of the second council of Nice, with *filioque* in the Nicean creed. A palpable forgery! (p. 178).*
the gospel which lay on the altar, was silent; the various texts of the fathers might be corrupted by fraud or entangled by sophistry; and the Greeks were ignorant of the characters and writings of the Latin saints. Of this at least we may be sure, that neither side could be convinced by the arguments of their opponents. Prejudice may be enlightened by reason, and a superficial glance may be rectified by a clear and more perfect view of an object adapted to our faculties; but the bishops and monks had been taught from their infancy to repeat a form of mysterious words; their national and personal honour depended on the repetition of the same sounds; and their narrow minds were hardened and inflamed by the acrimony of a public dispute.

While they were lost in a cloud of dust and darkness, the pope and emperor were desirous of a seeming union, which could alone accomplish the purposes of their interview; and the obstinacy of public dispute was softened by the arts of private and personal negotiation. The patriarch Joseph had sunk under the weight of age and infirmities; his dying voice breathed the counsels of charity and concord, and his vacant benediction might tempt the hopes of the ambitious clergy. The ready and active obedience of the archbishops of Russia and Nice, of Isidore and Bessarion, was prompted and recompensed by their speedy promotion to the dignity of cardinals. Bessarion, in the first de-
hates, had stood forth the most strenuous and eloquent champion of the Greek church; and if the apostate, the bastard, was reprobated by his country, he appears in ecclesiastical story a rare example of a patriot who was recommended to court-favour by loud opposition and well-timed compliance. With the aid of his two spiritual coadjutors, the emperor applied his arguments to the general situation and personal characters of the bishops; and each was successively moved by authority and example. Their revenues were in the hands of the Turks, their persons in those of the Latins; an episcopal treasure, three robes and forty ducats, was soon exhausted: the hopes of their return still depended on the ships of Venice and the alms of Rome; and such was their indigence, that their arrears, the payment of a debt, would be accepted as a favour, and might operate as a bribe. The danger and relief of Constantinople might excuse some prudent and pious dissimulation; and it was insinuated, that the obstinate heretics who should resist the consent of the

1 See the polite address of Mark and Berenice in Syphilus (p. 237), who never dissemble the aim of his own party, and hardly praise the virtues of the Latins.

2 For the poverty of the Greek bishops, see a remarkable passage of Dioeces (c. 31). One had possessed, for his whole property, three old grana, &c. By reascending one-and-twenty years in his monastery, Berenice himself had collected forty gold ducats; but of these, the archbishop had expended twenty-eight in his voyage from Philadelphia, and the remainder at Constantinople (Syphilus, 3. 137).

3 Syphilus states that, the Greeks received any money before they had subscribed the act of union (p. 283); yet he relates some suspicious circumstances; and, their liberality and corruption are positively affirmed by the historian Dioeces.
East and West, would be abandoned in a hostile land to the revenge or justice of the Roman pontiff. In the first private assembly of the Greeks, the formulary of union was approved by twenty-four, and rejected by twelve, members; but the five cross-bearers of St. Sophia, who aspired to represent the patriarch, were disqualified by ancient discipline; and their right of voting was transferred to an eloquent train of monks, grammarians, and profane laymen. The will of the monarch produced a false and servile unanimity, and no more than two patriots had courage to speak their own sentiments and those of their country. Demetrius, the emperor's brother, retired to Venice, that he might not be witness of the union; and Mark of Ephesus, mistaking perhaps his pride for his conscience, disclaimed all communion with the Latin heretics, and avowed himself the champion and confessor of the orthodox creed. In the treaty between the two nations, several forms of consent were proposed, such as might satisfy the Latins without displeasing the Greeks; and they weighed the scruples of words and syllables, till the theological balance trembled with a slight preponderance in favour of the Vatican. It was agreed (I must intreat the attention of the read-

---

3 The Greeks must naturally expect their own share of ridicule and perpetual slavery (Syrac. p. 186); and 'they were strongly moved by the emperor's threats (p. 279).  
4 I had long another popular and orthodox preacher, a favourite bishop, who usually lay quiet on the back of the emperor's throne; but who had but just formed while the act of union was really without being silenced by the nothing on the Index of the royal attendants (Syrac. p. 263, 266).
er), that the Holy Ghost proceeds from the Father and the Son, as from one principle and one substance; that he proceeds by the Son, being of the same nature and substance, and that he proceeds from the Father and the Son, by one spiration and production. It is less difficult to understand the articles of the preliminary treaty; that the pope should defray all the expenses of the Greeks in their return home; that he should annually maintain two galleys and three hundred soldiers for the defence of Constantinople; that all the ships which transported pilgrims to Jerusalem should be obliged to touch at that port; that as often as they were required, the pope should furnish ten galleys for a year, or twenty for six months; and that he should powerfully solicit the princes of Europe, if the emperor had occasion for land-forces.

The same year, and almost the same day, were marked by the deposition of Eugenius at Basel; and, at Florence, by his re-union of the Greeks and Latins. In the former synod (which he styled indeed an assembly of damns), the pope was branded with the guilt of simony, perjury, tyranny, heresy, and schism and declared to be incorrigible in his vices, unworthy of any title, and incapable of holding any ecclesiastical office. In the latter he was revered as the true and holy vicar of Christ, who, after a separation of six hundred years, had reconciled the catholics of the East.

* From the original Lives of the Popes, in Muratori’s Edita, tom. viii. p. 218, note 32, the manner of Eugenius at Basle to have been decent, and even exemplary. His situation, exposed to the world and to his enemies, was a restraint, and a guide.
and West, in one fold, and under one shepherd. The act of union was subscribed by the pope, the emperor, and the principal members of both churches; even by those who, like Syropulus, had been deprived of the right of voting. Two copies might have sufficed for the East and West; but Eugenius was not satisfied, unless four authentic and similar transcripts were signed and attested as the monuments of his victory. On a memorable day, the sixth of July, the successors of St. Peter and Constantine ascended their thrones: the two nations assembled in the cathedral of Florence: their representatives, cardinal Julian and Bessarion archbishop of Nice, appeared in the pulpit, and after reading in their respective tongues the act of union, they mutually embraced, in the name and the presence of the applauding brethren. The pope and his ministers then officiated according to the Roman liturgy: the creed was chanted with the addition of *filioque*; the acquiescence of the Greeks was poorly excused by their ignorance of the harmonious, but inarti-

* Syropulus, rather than subscribe, would have assisted, as the last evil, at the ceremony of the union. He was compelled to do both, and the great ecclesiarch poorly excused his submission to the emperor (p. 290-291).

* None of these original acts of union can at present be produced. Of the two sets that are preserved—viz. at Rome, and the remainder at Florence, Bologna, Venice, Paris, and Lembour—the first have been examined by an accurate critic (M. de Breugny); who condemns them for the variety and imperfections of the Greek signatures. Yet several of these may be esteemed as authentic copies, which were subscribed at Florence, before 8th August 1439, the final separation of the pope and emperor (Memoires de l'Académie des Inscriptions, vol. III, p. 287-311).
culate, sounds; and the more scrupulous Latins refused any public celebration of the Byzantine rite. Yet the emperor and his clergy were not totally unmindful of national honour. The treaty was ratified by their consent; it was tacitly agreed that no innovation should be attempted in their creed or ceremonies; they spared, and secretly respected, the generous firmness of Mark of Ephesus; and, on the decease of the patriarch, they refused to elect his successor, except in the cathedral of St. Sophia. In the distribution of public and private rewards, the liberal pontiff exceeded their hopes and his promises: the Greeks, with less pomp and pride, returned by the same road of Ferrara and Venice; and their reception at Constantinople was such as will be described in the following chapter. The success of the first trial encouraged Eugenius to repeat the same edifying scenes; and the deputies of the Armenians, the Maronites, the Jacobites of Syria and Egypt, the Nestorians, and the Ethiopians, were successively introduced, to kiss the feet of the Roman pontiff, and to announce the obedience and the orthodoxy of the East. These Oriental embassies, unknown in the countries which they presumed to represent, diffused over the West the fame of Eugenius.

- *Ten years since these scenes (Synepol. p. 297).
- In their return, the Greeks conversed at Bologna with the ambassadors of England; and after some questions and answers, these impartial strangers laughed at the pretended union of Florence (Synepol. p. 307).
- So nugatory, or rather so fabulous, are these reunions of the Nestorians, Jacobites, etc. that I have turned over, without success, the Bibliotheca Orientalis of Assemani, a faithful slave of the Vatican.
nins; and a clamour was artfully propagated against the remnant of a schism in Switzerland and Savoy, which alone impeded the harmony of the christian world. The vigour of opposition was succeeded by the lassitude of despair: the council of Basil was silently dissolved; and Felix, renouncing the tiara, again withdrew to the devout or delicious hermitage of Ripaille.

A general peace was secured by mutual acts of oblivion and indemnity: all ideas of reformation subsided; the popes continued to exercise and abuse their ecclesiastical despotism; nor has Rome been since disturbed by the mischiefs of a contested election.

The journeys of three emperors were unavailing for their temporal, or perhaps their spiritual, salvation: but they were productive of a beneficial consequence; the revival of the Greek learning in Italy, from whence it was propagated to the last nations of the west and north. In their lowest servitude and depression, the subjects of the Byzanc-

---

2 Ripaille is situated near Thonon in Savoy, on the southern side of the lake of Geneva. It is now a Carthusian abbey: and Mr. Adanson (Travels into Italy, vol. ii. p. 147-148 of Backettville’s edition of his works) has celebrated the place and the founder. Alaco Sylvius, and the fathers of Basil, applaud the ascetic life of the dual hermit; but the French and Italian prelates most naturally attach the popular opinion of his luxury.

9 In this account of the councils of Basil, Ferrara, and Florence, I have consulted the original acts, which fill the seventeenth and eighteenth volumes of the editions of Venice, and are closed by the perspicuous, though partial, history of Augustin Patrizi, an Italian of the fifteenth century. They are digested and abridged by Dupin (Bibliothèque Ecclesiastique, vol. xii) and the continuator of Flury (tome, xxxii) and the respect of the Gallican church for the adverse party con

lines their members to an awkward moderation.
time throne were still possessed of a golden key that could unlock the treasures of antiquity; of a musical and prolific language, that gives a soul to the objects of sense, and a body to the abstractions of philosophy. Since the barriers of the monarchy, and even of the capital, had been trampled under foot, the various barbarians had doubtless corrupted the form and substance of the national dialect; and ample glossaries have been composed, to interpret a multitude of words of Arabic, Turkish, Slavonian, Latin, or French origin. But a purer idiom was spoken in the court, and taught in the college; and the flourishing state of the language is described, and perhaps embellished, by a learned Italian, who, by a long residence and noble marriage, was naturalized at Constantinople about thirty years before the Turkish conquest. "The vulgar speech," says Philel-

1 In the first attempt, Mauriä collected 3000 Greek-barbarian words; to which, in a second edition, he subjoined 1800 more: yet what plentiful gleanings did he leave to Porcino, Durango, Fabri, the Balmanders, &c. (Fabric. Biblioth. Graec., tom. x. p. 151, &c.) Some Persian words may be found in Xenophon, and some Latin ones in Plutarch; and part is the inevitable effect of war and commerce: but the form and substance of the language were not affected by this slight

ity.

* The life of Francis Philopomus, a sophist, proud, restless, and capricious, has been diligently composed by Lancelot (Memorie de l'Academia dei Lincei, tom. xi. p. 691-731) and Tiraboschi (Galleria delle Letterature Italiana, tom. vii. p. 222-234), for the most part from his own letters. His elaborate writings, and those of his contemporaries, are forgotten but their familiar epistles still describe the men and the times.

1 He married, and had perhaps debauched, the daughter of John, and the grand-daughter of Manuel Chrysolambus. She was young, beautiful, and wealthy; and her noble family was allied to the Docus of Genoa and the emperor of Constantinople.
chap. lxvi.

... has been depraved by the people; and infected by the multitude of strangers and merchants, who every day flock to the city, and mingle with the inhabitants. It is from the disciples of such a school that the Latin language received the versions of Aristotle and Plato, so obscure in sense, and in spirit so poor. But the Greeks who have escaped the contagion are those whom we follow; and they alone are worthy of our imitation. In familiar discourse, they still speak the tongue of Aristophanes and Euripides, of the historians and philosophers of Athens; and the style of their writings is still more elaborate and correct. The persons who, by their birth and offices, are attached to the Byzantine court, are those who maintain, with the least alloy, the ancient standard of elegance and purity; and the native graces of language most conspicuously shine among the noble matrons, who are excluded from all intercourse with foreigners. With foreigners, do I say? They live retired and sequestered from the eyes of their fellow-citizens. Seldom are they seen in the streets; and when they leave their houses, it is in the dusk of...
evening, on visits to the churches and their nearest kindred. On these occasions, they are on horseback, covered with a veil, and encompassed by their parents, their husbands, or their servants."

Among the Greeks, a numerous and opulent clergy was dedicated to the service of religion; their monks and bishops have ever been distinguished by the gravity and austerity of their manners; nor were they diverted, like the Latin priests, by the pursuits and pleasures of a secular, and even military, life. After a large deduction for the time and talents that were lost in the devotion, the laziness, and the discord, of the church and cloister, the more inquisitive and ambitious minds would explore the sacred and profane erudition of their native language. The ecclesiastics presided over the education of youth; the schools of philosophy and eloquence were perpetuated till the fall of the empire; and it may be affirmed, that more books and more knowledge were included within the walls of Constantinople, than could be dispersed over the extensive countries of the West. But an important distinction has been already noticed: the Greeks were stationary or retrograde, while the Latins were advancing with a rapid and progressive motion. The nations were excited by the spirit of independence and emula-

---

*Philippus, absurdly enough, derives this Greek or Oriental jargon from the manners of ancient Rome.*

*See the state of learning in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, in the learned and judicious Masters (Institut. Hist. Ecclesi. p. 435-440, 496-498).*
tion; and even the little world of the Italian states contained more people and industry than the decreasing circle of the Byzantine empire. In Europe, the lower ranks of society were relieved from the yoke of feudal servitude; and freedom is the first step to curiosity and knowledge. The use, however rude and corrupt, of the Latin tongue had been preserved by superstition; the universities, from Bologna to Oxford, were peopled with thousands of scholars; and their misguided ardour might be directed to more liberal and manly studies. In the resurrection of science, Italy was the first that cast away her shroud; and the eloquent Petrarch, by his lessons and his example, may justly be applauded as the first harbinger of day. A purer style of composition, a more generous and rational strain of sentiment, flowed from the study and imitation of the writers of ancient Rome; and the disciples of Cicero and Virgil approached, with reverence and love, the sanctuary of their Grecian masters. In the sack of Constantinople, the French, and even the Venetians, had despised and destroyed the works of Lysippus and Homer; the monuments of art may be annihilated by a single blow; but the immortal mind is renewed and multiplied by the copies of the pen; and such copies it was the am-

*At the end of the fifteenth century, there existed in Europe about fifty universities, and of these the foundation of ten or twelve is prior to the year 1300. They were crowded in proportion to their scarcity. Bologna contained 10,000 students, chiefly of the civil law. In the year 1337, the number at Oxford had decreased from 30,000 to 8000 scholars (Henry's History of Great Britain, vol. iv, p. 478). Yet even this decrease is much superior to the present list of the members of the university.
bition of Petrarch and his friends to possess and understand. The arms of the Turks undoubtedly pressed the flight of the muses; yet we may tremble at the thought, that Greece might have been overwhelmed, with her schools and libraries, before Europe had emerged from the deluge of barbarism, that the seeds of science might have been scattered by the winds, before the Italian soil was prepared for their cultivation.

The most learned Italians of the fifteenth century have confessed and applauded the restoration of Greek literature, after a long oblivion of many hundred years. Yet in that country, and beyond the Alps, some names are quoted; some profound scholars, who in the darker ages were honourably distinguished by their knowledge of the Greek tongue; and national vanity has been loud in the praise of such rare examples of erudition. Without scrutinizing the merit of individuals, truth must observe, that their science is without a cause, and without an effect; that it was easy for them to satisfy themselves and their more ignorant contemporaries; and that the idiom, which they had so marvellously acquired, was transcribed in few manuscripts, and was not taught in any university of the West. In a corner

* Of those writers who professedly treat of the restoration of the Greek learning in Italy, the two principal are Houdas, Dr. Humphrey Holt (de Graeca Illustrita, Lingua Graeca, Literarumque humanitarum Institutione, London, 1741, in two volumes, and Tirocchi (Storia della Letteratura Italiana, tom. i., p. 364-377, tom. ii., p. 175-176). The Oxford professor is a learned scholar, but the liberation of Modena enjoys the superiority of a modern and national historian.
of Italy, it faintly existed as the popular, or at least as the ecclesiastical, dialect. The first impression of the Doric and Ionic colonies has never been completely erased: the Calabrian churches were long attached to the throne of Constantinople; and the monks of St. Basil pursued their studies in Mount Athos and the schools of the East. Calabria was the native country of Barlaam, who has already appeared as a sectary and an ambassador; and Barlaam was the first who revived, beyond the Alps, the memory, or at least the writings, of Homer. He is described, by Petrarch and Boccace, as a man of a diminutive stature, though truly great in the measure of learning and genius; of a piercing discernment, though of a slow and painful elocution. For many ages (as they affirm) Greece had not produced his equal in the knowledge of history, grammar, and philosophy; and his merit was celebrated in the attestations of the princes and doctors of Constantinople. One of these attestations is still extant; and the emperor Cantacuzene, the protector of his adversaries, is forced to allow, that Euclid, Aristotle, and Plato,

* In Calabria quae alius magno Grecia desiderat... [-ed and German] viii, non dem, quibus sed num Homerius annverst. Perhaps, in that respect, the thirteenth century was less happy than the age of Charlemagne.

- See the character of Barlaam, in Boccace de Genealog. Dunstan, c. xvi, c. 8.
were familiar to that profound and subtle logician. In the court of Avignon, he formed an intimate connection with Petrarch, the first of the Latin scholars; and the desire of mutual instruction was the principle of their literary commerce. The Tuscan applied himself with eager curiosity and assiduous diligence to the study of the Greek language; and in a laborious struggle with the dryness and difficulty of the first rudiments, he began to reach the sense, and to feel the spirit, of poets and philosophers, whose minds were congenial to his own. But he was soon deprived of the society and lessons of this useful assistant: Barlaam relinquished his fruitless embassy; and, on his return to Greece, he rashly provoked the swarms of fanatic monks, by attempting to substitute the light of reason to that of their navel. After a separation of three years, the two friends again met in the court of Naples; but the generous pupil renounced the fairest occasion of improvement; and by his recommendation Barlaam was finally settled in a small bishopric of his native Calabria. The manifold avocations of Petrarch, love and friendship, his

* Censurens, i. ii. c. 39.

* For the connection of Petrarch and Barlaam, and the two interviews, at Avignon in 1329, and at Naples in 1342, see the excellent Memoires sur la Vie de Petrarque, tom. i., p. 406-410; tom. ii., p. 75-77.

† The bishopric to which Barlaam retired was the old Locri, in the middle ages sancta Cyriaca, and by corruption, Hiarumine. Gennese (Diatribe, Choregraphica Italiae antiqui, p. 312). The dire oppression of the Norman times soon pressed into poverty, since even the church was poor; yet the town still contains 5000 inhabitants (Carmicha, p. 310).
various correspondence and frequent journeys, the Roman laurel, and his elaborate compositions in prose and verse, in Latin and Italian, diverted him from a foreign idiom; and as he advanced in life, the attainment of the Greek language was the object of his wishes, rather than of his hopes. When he was about fifty years of age, a Byzantine ambassador, his friend, and a master of both tongues, presented him with a copy of Homer; and the answer of Petrarch is at once expressive of his eloquence, gratitude, and regret. After celebrating the generosity of the donor, and the value of a gift more precious in his estimation than gold or rubies, he thus proceeds:

"Your present of the genuine and original text of the divine poet, the fountain of all invention, is worthy of yourself and of me: you have fulfilled your promise, and satisfied my desires. Yet your liberality is still imperfect; with Homer you should have given me yourself; a guide, who could lead me into the fields of light, and disclose to my wondering eyes the spacious miracles of the Iliad and Odyssey. But, alas! Homer is dumb, or I am deaf; nor is it in my power to enjoy the beauty which I possess. I have seated him by the side of Plato, the prince of poets near the prince of philosophers; and I glory in the sight of my illustrious guests. Of their immortal writings, whatever had been translated into the Latin idiom, I had already acquired; but if there be no profit, there is some pleasure, in beholding these venerable Greeks in their proper and national habit. I am delighted with the aspect of
"Homer; and as often as I embrace the silent volume, I exclaim, with a sigh, Illustrious bard! with what pleasure should I listen to thy song, if my sense of hearing were not obstructed and lost by the death of one friend, and in the much lamentable absence of another! Nor do I yet despair; and the example of Cato suggests some comfort and hope, since it was in the last period of age that he attained the knowledge of the Greek letters."

The prize which eluded the efforts of Petrarch of Boccaccio, was obtained by the fortune and industry of his friend Boccace, the father of the Tuscan prose. That popular writer, who derives his reputation from the Decameron, an hundred novels of pleasantry and love, may aspire to the more serious praise of restoring, in Italy, the study of the Greek language. In the year one thousand three hundred and sixty, a disciple of Barlaam, whose name was Leo, or Leonitus Pilatus, was detained in his way to Avignon by the advice and hospitality of Boccace, who lodged the stranger in

---

*I will transcribe a passage from this epistle of Petrarch (Frani, 1. 2, 3), Domati: Homerum non in alienum sermonem violenta ubere derivavit, sed in iudiciis Graecis eloquentia scriptoris, ipsius divinae lice producta imitatio. Sine sua voce Homerum sumus, unde me vastum, iamero ego apud illum mundum sum. Gaudia tamae vel adsperch volo, ac serio illum amantis seque impios adoro. O magna vita, &c.*

**For the life and writings of Boccace, who was born in 1313, and died in 1375, Fabricius (Bibl. Lat., vol. vii. p. 240, &c.) and Tirauchi (tom. iv. p. 83, 428-431) may be consulted. The editions, versions, imitations, of his novels, are innumerable. Yet he was averse to communication of truths, and perhaps scandalous, work to Petrarch, his respectful friend, in whose letters and manuscripts he conspicuously appears.**
his house, prevailed on the republic of Florence to allow him an annual stipend, and devoted his leisure to the first Greek professor, who taught that language in the western countries of Europe. The appearance of Leo might disgust the most eager disciple; he was clothed in the mantle of a philosopher, or a mendicant; his countenance was hideous; his face was overshadowed with black hair; his beard long and uncombed; his deportment rustic; his temper gloomy and inconstant; nor could he grace his discourse with the ornaments, or even the perspicuity, of Latin elocution. But his mind was stored with a treasure of Greek learning; history and fable, philosophy and grammar, were alike at his command; and he read the poems of Homer in the schools of Florence. It was from his explanation that Boccace composed and transcribed a literal prose version of the Iliad and Odyssey, which satisfied the thirst of his friend Petrarch, and which perhaps, in the succeeding century, was clandestinely used by Laurentius Valla, the Latin interpreter. It was from his narratives that the same Boccace collected the materials for his treatise on the genealogy of the heathen gods, a work, in that age, of stupendous erudition, and which he ostentatiously sprinkled with Greek characters and passages, to excite the wonder and applause of his more ignorant readers. The first steps

*Boccace indulges an human vanity: Orationes causam Græcis carminibus abscriptos, jussu utar more, manum est hoc demum rei gratie collectis inter alios Graecos aliis carminibus. Nunc easque ut prius Laurentium Platonem, &c. de Genealogia Deorum, l. xv, c. 7, a work which, though now forgotten, has run through thirteen or fourteen editions.*
of learning are slow and laborious; no more than
ten votaries of Homer could be enumerated in all
Italy; and neither Rome, nor Venice, nor Naples,
could add a single name to this studious catalogue.
But their numbers would have multiplied, their
progress would have been accelerated, if the in-
constant Leo, at the end of three years, had not
relinquished an honourable and beneficial station.
In his passage, Petrarch entertained him at Pa-
dua a short time; he enjoyed the scholar, but
was justly offended with the gloomy and unsocial
temper of the man. Discontented with the world
and with himself, Leo deplored his present en-
joyments, while absent persons and objects were
dear to his imagination. In Italy he was a Thessa-
larian, in Greece a native of Calabria; in the com-
pany of the Latins he disdained their language,
religion, and manner; no sooner was he landed
at Constantinople, than he again sighed for the
wealth of Venice and the elegance of Florence.
His Italian friends were dead to his importunity;
he depended on their curiosity and indulgence,
and embarked on a second voyage; but on hisentrance into the Adriatic, the ship was assailed
by a tempest, and the unfortunate teacher, who,
like Ulysses, had fastened himself to the mast,
was struck dead by a flash of lightning. The
humane Petrarch dropt a tear on his misfortune;
but he was most anxious to learn whether some
copy of Euripides or Sophocles might not be
saved from the hands of the mariners.

*Laumonier, or Las Planas, is sufficiently made known by Haly
(p. 311) and ibid. de Sade, (Vir. de Petrocyno, tom. iii. p. 479, 480.)
But the faint rudiments of Greek learning, which Petrarch had encouraged and Boccaccio had planted, soon withered and expired. The succeeding generation was content for a while with the improvement of Latin eloquence; nor was it before the end of the fourteenth century, that a new and perpetual flame was rekindled in Italy. Previous to his own journey, the emperor Manuel dispatched his envoys and orators to implore the compassion of the western princes. Of these envoys, the most conspicuous, or the most learned, was Manuel Chrysoloras, of noble birth, and whose Roman ancestors are supposed to have migrated with the great Constantine. After visiting the courts of France and England, where he obtained some contributions, and more promises, the envoy was invited to assume the office of a professor; and Florence had again the honour of this second invitation. By his knowledge not only of the Greek, but of the Latin tongue, Chrysoloras deserved the stipend, and surpassed the expectation, of the republic. His school was frequented by a crowd of disciples of

634. 676-678, who has very happily caught the lively and dramatic manner of his original.

* Dr. Hody (p. 54) is angry with Leonard Arsen, Guatinn, Paulus Jacitus, &c., for affirming that the Greek letters were restored in Italy just septacento annos, as if, says he, they had flourished till the end of the seventh century. These writers most probably reckoned from the last period of the saracens and the progress of the Greek magnificence and troops at Ravenna and Rome must have preserved, in some degree, the use of their native tongue.

* See the article of Emmanuel, or Manuel Chrysoloras, in Hody (p. 12-34), and Tieck's Athenaeum, vol. vii. p. 173-119. The precise date of his arrival dates between the years 1380 and 1400, and is only verified by the reign of Boniface vii.
every rank and age; and one of these, in a general history, has described his motives and his success. "At that time," says Leonard Aretin, "I was a student of the civil law; but my soul was inflamed with the love of letters; and I bestowed some application on the sciences of logic and rhetoric. On the arrival of Manuel I hesitated whether I should desert my legal studies, or relinquish this golden opportunity; and thus, in the ardour of youth, I communed with my own mind—Wilt thou be wanting to thyself and thy fortune? Wilt thou refuse to be introduced to a familiar converse with Homer, Plato, and Demosthenes? with those poets, philosophers, and orators, of whom such wonders are related, and who are celebrated by every age as the great masters of human science? Of professors and scholars in civil law, a sufficient supply will always be found in our universities; but a teacher, and such a teacher, of the Greek language, if he once be suffered to escape, may never afterwards be retrieved. Convinced by these reasons, I gave myself to Chrysolora; and so strong was my passion, that the lessons which I had imbibed in the day were the constant
subject of my nightly dreams." At the same time and place, the Latin classics were explained by John of Ravenna, the domestic pupil of Petrarch; the Italians, who illustrated their age and country, were formed in this double school; and Florence became the fruitful seminary of Greek and Roman erudition. The presence of the emperor recalled Chrysoloras from the college to the court, but he afterwards taught at Pavia and Rome with equal industry and applause. The remainder of his life, about fifteen years, was divided between Italy and Constantinople, between embassies and lessons. In the noble office of enlightening a foreign nation, the grammarian was not unmindful of a more sacred duty to his prince and country; and Emanuel Chrysoloras died at Constance, on a public mission from the emperor to the council.

After his example, the restoration of the Greek letters in Italy was prosecuted by a series of emigrants, who were destitute of fortune, and endowed with learning, or at least with language.


* In this double discipline, Petrarch, who loved the youth, often complains of the eager curiosity, restless temper, and proud feelings, which annulled the genius and glory of a riper age (Memorie sue Petrarca, tom. ii, p. 700-709).

1 Hier. Graccae Latineisque scholae exstant sum, Gennino Philippo, Leonardo Arctino, Catelopoe, et plerique alii magni saeque Trojani prodromi, quinis enstatibus multa legendae disceptae et haudem existant sumi (Plutarch in Bonifacio 17). Another Italian writer adds the names of Paulus Petrus Verginus, Gnadias Vinseutius, Procuus, Franciscus Barbarea, etc. But I question whether a rigid chronology would allow Chrysoloras all these eminent scholars (Hudson, p. 25-27, 62).
From the terror or oppression of the Turkish arms, the natives of Thessalonica and Constantinople escaped to a land of freedom, curiosity, and wealth. The synod introduced into Florence the lights of the Greek church and the oracles of the Platonic philosophy; and the fugitives who adhered to the union had the double merit of renouncing their country, not only for the Christian, but for the Catholic, cause. A patriot, who sacrifices his party and conscience to the allurements of favour, may be possessed, however, of the private and social virtues; he no longer bears the reproachful epithets of slave and apostate; and the consideration which he acquires among his new associates, will restore in his own eyes the dignity of his character. The prudent conformity of Bessarion was rewarded with the Roman purple; he fixed his residence in Italy, and the Greek cardinal, the titular patriarch of Constantinople, was respected as the chief and protector of his nation. His abilities were exercised in the legations of Bologna, Venice, Germany, and France; and his election to the chair of St. Peter floated for a moment on the uncertain breath of a conclave. His ecclesiastical honours diffused a splendour and pre-eminence over his literary merit and service.

*See in Hoby the article of Bessarion (p. 155–171). Theodore Gaza, George of Trebizond, and the rest of the Greeks whom I have named or omitted, are inserted in their proper chapters of his learned work. See likewise Titubachi, in the first and second parts of the sixth tome.*

*The candidates knocked at his door, but his confessor refused to be arraigned in the studies of Bessarion; "Nicholas," said he, "thy son! *has cost thee an hat, and me the hair."*
his palace was a school; as often as the cardinal visited the Vatican, he was attended by a learned train of both nations,* of men applauded by themselves and the public; and whose writings, now overspread with dust, were popular and useful in their own times. I shall not attempt to enumerate the restorers of Grecian literature in the fifteenth century; and it may be sufficient to mention, with gratitude, the names of Theodore Gaza, of George of Trebizond, of John Argyropulus, and Demetrius Chalcocondyles, who taught their native language in the schools of Florence and Rome. Their labours were not inferior to those of Bessarion, whose purple they revered, and whose fortune was the secret object of their envy. But the lives of these grammarians were humble and obscure; they had declined the lucrative paths of the church; their dress and manners secluded them from the commerce of the world; and since they were confined to the merit, they might be content with the rewards of learning. From this character, Janus Lascaris* will deserve an exception. His eloquence, politeness, and in-

* Such as George of Trebizond, Theodore Gaza, Argyropulus Anargirides of Thessalonic, Philotheus, Poggius, Blundus, Nicholas Purchas, Valla, Cambomius, Plutarch, &c. Virgil says Hoc with the plainest of a scholar's motto cura pertinat (p. 185).

* He was born before the taking of Constantinople, but his honourable life was stretched far into the sixteenth century (s. v. 1223). Leo and Francis were his native patrons, under whose auspices he founded the Greek colleges of Rome and Paris (Hodg, p. 247-270). He left posterity in France, but the count de Vintimilla, and their numerous branches, derive the name of Lascaris from a doubtful marriage in the thirteenth century with the daughter of a Greek emperor (Durange, Fam. Byzant, p. 331-335).
perial descent, recommended him to the French
monarchs; and in the same cities he was alter-
nately employed to teach and to negotiate. Duty
and interest prompted them to cultivate the study
of the Latin language; and the most successful
attained the faculty of writing and speaking with
fluency and elegance in a foreign idiom. But they
ever retained the inveterate vanity of their coun-
try: their praise, or at least their esteem, was re-
served for the national writers, to whom they
owed their fame and subsistence: and they some-
times betrayed their contempt in licentious cri-
ticism or satire on Virgil’s poetry and the oratory
of Tully. The superiority of these masters
arose from the familiar use of a living language;
and their first disciples were incapable of discern-
ing how far they had degenerated from the knowl-
edge, and even the practice, of their ancestors.
A vicious pronunciation, which they introduc-

* Two of his epigrams against Virgil, and three against Tully, are
preserved and related by Franciscus Floridus, who can find no better
names than Grenulus, inuersus at impudens (Hody, p. 274). In our
own times, an English state has assailed the science of containing
middle-language, sicurius, opulens et insignia carmina herois de-
fectus; many such verses as his, the said Jeremiah Meikle, would
have been ashamed of writing (pestis, adv. Matti Sylvius, p. 31, 22).

* Emanuel Chrysoloras, and his colligatae, are accused of ignorance,
envy, or aversion (Syllogis. &c. tom. ii. p. 235). The modern Greeks
pronounce the as a V embryon, and confound three voweis (a e e),
and several dipthongs. Such was the vuggest pronunciation which the
Este Gardiner maintained by penal statutes in the university of Cam-
bridge; but the nonsyllable as represented to an Attic ear the
bleating of sheep, and a bellweather is better evidence than a bishop
or a chancellor. The treatise of those scholars, particularly Kiesmu, who
asserted a more classical pronunciation, are collected in the Syllogis
of Illecrump. (3 vola in octavo, Lond. Bat. 1726, 1740) : but it is
difficult
ed, was banished from the schools by the reason of the succeeding age. Of the power of the Greek accents they were ignorant, and those musical notes, which, from an Attic tongue, and to an Attic ear, must have been the secret soul of harmony, were to their eyes, as to our own, no more than minute and meaningless marks, in prose superfluous, and troublesome in verse. The art of grammar they truly possessed; the valuable fragments of Apollonius and Herodian were transfused into their lessons; and their treatises of syntax and etymology, though devoid of philosophic spirit, are still useful to the Greek student. In the shipwreck of the Byzantine libraries, each fugitive seized a fragment of treasure, a copy of some author, who, without his industry, might have perished: the transcripts were multiplied by an assiduous, and sometimes an elegant, pen: and the text was corrected and explained by their own comments, or those of the elder scholiasts. The sense, though not the spirit, of the Greek classics, was interpreted to the Latin world: the beauties of style evaporate in a version; but the judgement of Theodore Gaza selected the more solid works of Aristotle and Theophrastus, and their natural histories of animals and plants opened a rich fund of genuine and experimental science.

Yet the fleeting shadows of metaphysics were pursued with more curiosity and ardour. After a
long oblivion, Plato was revived in Italy by a venerable Greek, who taught in the house of Cosmo de' Medici. While the synod of Florence was involved in theological debate, some beneficial consequences might flow from the study of his elegant philosophy: his style is the purest standard of the Attic dialect; and his sublime thoughts are sometimes adapted to familiar conversation, and sometimes adorned with the richest colours of poetry and eloquence. The dialogues of Plato are a dramatic picture of the life and death of a sage; and as often as he descends from the clouds, his moral system inculcates the love of truth, of our country, and of mankind. The precept and example of Socrates recommended a modest doubt and liberal inquiry; and if the Platonists, with blind devotion, adored the visions and errors of their divine master, their enthusiasm might correct the dry dogmatic method of the Peripatetic school. So equal, yet so opposite, are the merits of Plato and Aristotle, that they may be balanced in endless controversy; but some spark of freedom may be produced by the collision of adverse servitude. The modern Greeks were divided between the two sects: with more fury than skill they fought under the banner of their leaders; and the field of battle was removed in their flight from Constantinople to Rome. But this philosophical debate soon degenerated into an

*George Giovanni Plato, a various and sublimious writer, the master of Boezem, and all the Platonists of the times. He visited Italy in his old age, and soon returned to end his days in Peloponnesus. See the various discriue of Les Aliases de Georgio, in Paria (Biblia Graec. tom. x, p. 789-799).
angry and personal quarrel of grammarians; and Bessarion, though an advocate for Plato, protected the national honour, by interposing the advice and authority of a mediator. In the gardens of the Medici, the academical doctrine was enjoyed by the polite and learned: but their philosophic society was quickly dissolved; and if the writings of the Attic sage were perused in the closet, the more powerful Stagyrite continued to reign the oracle of the church and school.

I have fairly represented the literary merits of the Greeks; yet it must be confessed that they were seconded and surpassed by the ardour of the Latins. Italy was divided into many independent states; and at that time, it was the ambition of princes and republics to vie with each other in the encouragement and reward of literature. The fame of Nicholas the fifth has not been inadequate to his merits. From a plebeian origin, he raised himself by his virtue and learning; the character of the man prevailed over the interest of the pope; and he sharpened those weapons which were soon pointed against the Roman church.

* The state of the Platonic philosophy in Italy is illustrated by Bozzi in *Mem. de l'Acad. des Inscriptions*, tom. vii, p. 115-220, and *Zurich* (tom. vi, p. 322-348).

* See the life of Nicholas v, by two contemporary authors, Jacques Munoz (tom. iii, p. 85-96), and Vespasian of Florence (tom. xxv, p. 217-226), in the collection of *Munster*; and generally *Zurich* (tom. vi, p. 96-99), 109, and *Daily in the articles of Theodorus Gass, George of Trebizond, &c.*

* Lord Binglebrooke observes, with truth and spirit, that the pope, in this instance, was worse than his master, and that the charms which have bound mankind for so many ages was broken by the magicians themselves (Letters on the Study of History, t. vi, p. 167, 168, octavo edition, 1779).
He had been the friend of the most eminent scholars of the age; he became their patron; and such was the humility of his manners, that the change was scarcely discernible either to them or to himself. If he pressed the acceptance of a liberal gift, it was not as the measure of desert, but as the proof of benevolence; and when modest merit declined his bounty, "accept it," would he say with a consciousness of his own worth: "you will not always have a Nicholas among ye." The influence of the holy see persuaded Christendom; and he exerted that influence in the search, not of benefices, but of books. From the ruins of the Byzantine libraries, from the darkest monasteries of Germany and Britain, he collected the dusty manuscripts of the writers of antiquity; and wherever the original could not be removed, a faithful copy was transcribed and transmitted for his use. The Vatican, the old repository for bulls and legends, for superstition and forgery, was daily replenished with more precious furniture: and such was the industry of Nicholas, that in a reign of eight years, he formed a library of five thousand volumes. To his munificence the Latin world was indebted for the versions of Xenophon, Diodorus, Polybius, Thucydides, Herodotus, and Appian; of Strabo's Geography, of the Iliad, of the most valuable works of Plato and Aristotle, of Ptolemy and Theophrastus, and of the fathers of the Greek church. The example of the Roman pontiff was preceded or imitated by a Florentine merchant, who governed the republic without arms and
without a title. Cosimo of Medici was a father of a line of princes, whose name and age are almost synonymous with the restoration of learning: his credit was ennobled into fame; his riches were dedicated to the service of mankind; he corresponded at once with Cairo and London; and a cargo of Indian spices and Greek books was often imported in the same vessel. The genius and education of his grandson Lorenzo rendered him not only a patron, but a judge and candidate, in the literary race. In his palace, distress was entitled to relief, and merit to reward: his leisure hours were delightfully spent in the Platonic academy; he encouraged the emulation of Demetrius Chalcocondyles and Angelo Politian; and his active missionary Janus Lascaris returned from the East with a treasure of two hundred manuscripts, fourscore of which were as yet unknown in the libraries of Europe. The rest of Italy was animated by a similar spirit, and the progress of the nation repaid the liberality of her princes. The Latins held the exclusive property of their own literature; and these disciples of Greece were

---

* See the literary history of Cosimo and Lorenzo of Medici, in Turchi (vol. vi, p. 1, l. i, c. 3), who becomes a due measure of praise on Alphonso of Aragon, king of Naples, the duke of Milan, Ferrara, Urbino, &c. The republic of Venice has deserved the least from the gratitude of scholars.

* Turchi (tom. vi, p. 4, p. 104), from the preface of Janus Lascaris to the Greek Anthology, printed at Florence 1494. Lascaris (cosm. Aldus in his preface to the Greek Orators, and Italius, p. 249) in Atic Theaxin triumph. Est Lascaris, ut in Italien repertorit. Miseras enim ipsarum Laurentium litterarum in Graeciam ad inquirendum simul, et quantus essardus propterea bonus fuit. It is remarkable enough that the research was facilitated by sultan Beyzat II.
soon capable of transmitting and improving the lessons which they had imbied. After a short succession of foreign teachers, the tide of emigration subsided; but the language of Constantinople was spread beyond the Alps; and the natives of France, Germany, and England, imparted to their country the sacred fire which they had kindled in the schools of Florence and Rome. In the productions of the mind, as in those of the soil, the gifts of nature are excelled by industry and skill: the Greek authors, forgotten on the banks of the Ilissus, have been illustrated on those of the Elbe and the Thames; and Bessarion or Gaza might have envied the superior science of the barbarians; the accuracy of Budæus, the taste of Erasmus, the copiousness of Stephens, the erudition of Scaliger, the discernment of Reiske, or of Bentley. On the side of the Latins, the discovery of printing was a casual advantage; but this useful art has been applied by Aldus, and his innumerable successors, to perpetuate and multiply.

* The Greek language was introduced into the university of Oxford in the last years of the fifteenth century, by Grægo, Lister, and Lathbury, who had all studied at Florence under Demetrius Chalcobrindio. See Dr. Knight's curious life of Erasmus. Although a stern academical patron, he is forced to acknowledge that Erasmus learned Greek at Oxford, and taught it at Cambridge.

* The jealous Italians were desirous of keeping a monopoly of Greek learning. When Aldus was about to publish the Greek scholiasts on Septuagint and Euripides, Curr (as they, rare heretics, so express) into adjusting doing matter, of punctures in Italian variant (Dr. Knight, in his Life of Erasmus, p. 365, from Bessus Blassavus).
the works of antiquity.* A single manuscript imported from Greece is revived in ten thousand copies; and each copy is fairer than the original. In this form Homer and Plato would peruse with more satisfaction their own writings; and their scholiasts must resign the prize to the labours of our western editors.

Before the revival of classic literature, the barbarians in Europe were immersed in ignorance; and their vulgar tongues were marked with the rudeness and poverty of their manners. The students of the more perfect idioms of Rome and Greece were introduced to a new world of light and science; to the society of the free and polished nations of antiquity; and to a familiar converse with those immortal men who spoke the sublime language of eloquence and reason. Such an intercourse must tend to refine the taste and to elevate the genius of the moderns; and yet, from the first experiments, it might appear that the study of the ancients had given fetters, rather than wings, to the human mind. However laudable, the spirit of imitation is of a servile cast; and the

---

* The press of Aldus Manutius, a Roman, was established at Venice about the year 1494; he printed above sixty considerable works of Greek literature, almost all for the first time; several containing different treatises and authors, and of several authors two, three, or four editions (Fabric. Bibl. Graec. tom. xlii. p. 605. &c.). Yet his glory must not tempt us to forget, that the first Greek book, the Grammar of Constantine Lascaris, was printed at Milan, in 1476; and that the Florence Homer of 1488 displays all the luxury of the typographical art. See the Annales Typographici of Manutius, and the Bibliographia Instructiva of de Bure, a knowing bookseller of Paris.
first disciples of the Greeks and Romans were a colony of strangers in the midst of their age and country. The minute and laborious diligence which explored the antiquities of remote times might have improved or adorned the present state of society; the critic and metaphysician were the slaves of Aristotle; the poets, historians, and orators, were proud to repeat the thoughts and words of the Augustan age; the works of nature were observed with the eyes of Pliny and Theophrastus; and some pagan votaries professed a secret devotion to the gods of Homer and Plato.* The Italians were oppressed by the strength and number of their ancient auxiliaries; the century after the deaths of Petrarch and Boccace was filled with a crowd of Latin-imitators, who decently repose on our shelves; but in that era of learning, it will not be easy to discern a real discovery of science, a work of invention or eloquence, in the popular language of the country. But as

* I will select three singular examples of this classic enthusiasm.
1. At the court of Florence, Gentilis Piatti said, in familiar conversation, to George of Trevisa, that in a short time manuscript would necessarily commence the gospel and the laws for a religion similar to that of the gentiles (Lus Alston, apud Facetielus, tom. ii, p. 251).
2. Paulus presented the Roman academy, which had been founded by Pamphilus Luctius; and the principal members were accused of heresy, impiety, and paganism (Tiraboschi, tom. vi, p. 71, p. 81, 82).
3. In the next century, some scholars and poets in France celebrated the success of !della's tragedy of Cidius, by a festival of Bacchus, and, as it is said, by the sacrifice of a goat, Chaine, Dictionaire, !della, Franconello, tom. iii, p. 58-61). Yet the spirit of bigotry might often discern a serious impiety in the spectre play of fancy and learning.

* The deaths of Boccace died in the year 1375, and we cannot place before 1480 the composition of the Morgante Maggiore of Pulci, and the Orlando Innamorato of Boemio (Tiraboschi, tom, i, p. 11, p. 174-177.)
soon as it had been deeply saturated with the celestial dew, the soil was quickened into vegetation and life; the modern idioms were refined; the classics of Athens and Rome inspired a pure taste and a generous emulation; and in Italy, as afterwards in France and England, the pleasing reign of poetry and fiction was succeeded by the light of speculative and experimental philosophy. Genius may anticipate the season of maturity; but in the education of a people, as in that of an individual, memory must be exercised, before the powers of reason and fancy can be expanded; nor may the artist hope to equal or surpass, till he has learned to imitate, the works of his predecessors.
CHAP. LXVII.

Schism of the Greeks and Latins.—Reign and character of Anacrusth the second.—Crusade of Louis duc, king of Hungary.—His defeat and death.—John Hunyadi.—Seandlerbeg.—Constantine Paleologus, last emperor of the East.

The respective merits of Rome and Constantinople are compared and celebrated by an eloquent Greek, the father of the Italian schools. The view of the ancient capital, the seat of his ancestors, surpassed the most sanguine expectations of Emanuel Chrysoloras; and he no longer blamed the exclamation of an old sophist, that Rome was the habitation, not of men, but of gods. Those gods, and those men, had long since vanished; but, to the eye of liberal enthusiasm, the majesty of ruin restored the image of her ancient prosperity. The monuments of the consuls and Caesars, of the martyrs and apostles, engaged on all sides the curiosity of the philosopher and the Christian; and he confessed, that in every age the arms and the religion of Rome were destined to reign over the earth.

* The Epistle of Emanuel Chrysoloras to the emperor John Palæologus will not offend the eye or ear of a classical student (v. Plin. de Antiquitatibus c. x. p. 167—170). The superintension suggests a chronological remark, that John Palæologus was associated in the empire before the year 1414, the date of Chrysoloras’s death. A still earlier date, at least 1408, is deduced from the age of his youngest sons, Demetrius and Thomas, who were both Papylogum (Durange, ius Byzant. p. 244, 245).
While Chrysoloras admired the venerable beauties of the mother, he was not forgetful of his native country, her fairest daughter, her imperial colony; and the Byzantine patriot expatiates with zeal and truth on the eternal advantages of nature, and the more transitory glories of art and dominion, which adorned, or had adorned, the city of Constantine. Yet the perfection of the copy still redounds (as he modestly observes) to the honour of the original, and parents are delighted to be renewed, and even excelled, by the superior merit of their children. "Constantinople," says the orator, "is situate on a commanding point, between Europe and Asia, between the Archipelago and the Euxine. By her interposition, the two seas, and the two continents, are united for the common benefit of nations; and the gates of commerce may be shut or opened at her command. The harbour, encompassed on all sides by the sea and the continent, is the most secure and capacious in the world. The walls and gates of Constantinople may be compared with those of Babylon: the towers are many; each tower is a solid and lofty structure; and the second wall, the outer fortification, would be sufficient for the defence and dignity of an ordinary capital. A broad and rapid stream may be introduced into the ditches; and the artificial island may be encompassed like Athens by land or water."

[End of extract]
Two strong and natural causes are alleged for the perfection of the model of New Rome. The royal founder reigned over the most illustrious nations of the globe; and in the accomplishment of his designs, the power of the Romans was combined with the art and science of the Greeks. Other cities have been reared to maturity by accident and time, their beauties are mingled with disorder and deformity; and the inhabitants, unwilling to move from their natal spot, are incapable of correcting the errors of their ancestors, and the original vices of situation or climate. But the free idea of Constantinople was formed and executed by a single mind; and the primitive model was improved by the obedient zeal of the subjects and successors of the first monarch. The adjacent isles were stored with an inexhaustible supply of marble; but the various materials were transported from the most remote shores of Europe and Asia; and the public and private buildings, and palaces, churches, aqueducts, cisterns, porticoes, columns, baths, and hippodromes, were adapted to the greatness of the capital of the East. The superfluity of wealth was spread along the shores of Europe and Asia; and the Byzantine territory, as far as the Euxine, the Hellespont, and the long wall, might be considered as a populous suburb and a perpetual garden. In this flattering picture, the past and the present, the times of prosperity and decay, are artfully con-
founded: but a sigh and a confession escape from the orator, that his wretched country was the shadow and sepulchre of its former self. The works of ancient sculpture had been defaced by Christian zeal or barbaric violence; the fairest structures were demolished; and the marbles of Paes or Numidia were burnt for lime, or applied to the meanest uses. Of many a statue, the place was marked by an empty pedestal; of many a column, the size was determined by a broken capital; the tombs of the emperors were scattered on the ground; the stroke of time was accelerated by storms and earthquakes; and the vacant space was adorned, by vulgar tradition, with fabulous monuments of gold and silver. From these wonders, which lived only in memory or belief, he distinguishes, however, the porphyry pillar, the column and colossus of Justinian, and the church, more especially the dome, of St. Sophia: the best conclusion, since it could not be described according to its merits, and after it no other object could deserve to be mentioned. But he forgets, that a century before, the trembling fabrics of the colossus and the church had been saved and supported by the timely care of Andronicus the elder. Thirty years after the emperor had fortified St. Sophia with two new buttresses or pyra-

* Nicophorus Gregoras has described the colossus of Justinian (C. vii. 12) but his measures are false and incorrect. The editor Belver committed his friend Chonos on 2, and the sculptor gave him the true proportions of an equestrian statue. That of Justinian was still visible to Peter Gennius, not on the column, but in the outward empty of the angulus, and he was at Constantinople when it was melted down, and cast into a brass cannon (De Topographia, c. vi. 1, b, c. 17).
minds the eastern hemisphere suddenly gave way; and the images, the altars, and the sanctuary, were crushed by the falling ruin. The mischief indeed was speedily repaired; the rubbish was cleared by the incessant labour of every rank and age; and the poor remains of riches and industry were consecrated by the Greeks to the most stately and venerable temple of the East. The last hope of the falling city and empire was placed in the harmony of the mother and daughter, in the maternal tenderness of Rome, and the filial obedience of Constantinople. In the synod of Florence, the Greeks and Latins had embraced, and subscribed, and promised; but these signs of friendship were pernicious or fruitless; and the baseless fabric of the union vanished like a dream. The emperor and his prelates returned home in the Venetian galleys; but as they touched at the Morea and the isles of

*See the decay and repair of St. Sophia, in Murschius Græcia, p. 306. 12. 1st, 172. The building was propped by Anastasius in 1217; the eastern hemisphere fell in 1248. The Greeks, in their popular character, visited the beauty and Indiana of the church; to really see, the shade of an angel, and of God himself, &c.

*The position and original narrative of Symeon (p. 218-221) upon the scheme from the first siege of the Greeks at Venice, to the general opposition at Constantinople of the clergy and people.

*On the action of Constantinople, see Itinerarium C. II. c. 171. Laconum Cambriacum (p. 71, p. 138, 140), and Deacon, p. 414, the list of whom assigns with truth and fairness. Among the causes we may distinguish the continuance of Venetian power (tax. 140, p. 335, 401, 440, &c.) and dynamis (p. 1446, 209). The cause of the latter is treated in prejudice and passions, as well as Rome and Crete.

VOL. XII. B.
Corfu and Lesbos, the subjects of the Latins complained that the pretended union would be an instrument of oppression. No sooner did they land on the Byzantine shore, than they were saluted, or rather assailed, with a general murmur of zeal and discontent. During their absence, above two years, the capital had been deprived of its civil and ecclesiastical rulers; fanaticism fermented in anarchy; the most furious monks reigned over the conscience of women and bigots; and the hatred of the Latin name was the first principle of nature and religion. Before his departure for Italy, the emperor had flattered the city with the assurance of a prompt relief and a powerful succour; and the clergy, confident in their orthodoxy and science, had promised themselves and their flocks an easy victory over the blind shepherds of the West. The double disappointment exasperated the Greeks: the conscience of the subscribing prelates was awakened; the hour of temptation was past; and they had more to dread from the public resentment, than they could hope from the favour of the emperor or the pope. Instead of justifying their conduct, they deplored their weakness, professed their contrition, and cast themselves on the mercy of God and of their brethren. To the reproachful question, what had been the event or use of their Italian synod? they answered, with sighs and tears, "Alas! we have made a new faith; we have exchanged piety for impiety; we have betrayed the immaculate sacrifice; and we are become
"Azymites." (The Azymites were those who celebrated the communion with unleavened bread; and I must retract or qualify the praise which I have bestowed on the growing philosophy of the times). "Alas! we have been seduced by distress, by fraud, and by the hopes and fears of a transitory life. The hand that has signed the union should be cut off; and the tongue that has pronounced the Latin creed deserves to be torn from the root." The best proof of their repentance was an increase of zeal for the most trivial rites and the most incomprehensible doctrines; and an absolute separation from all, without excepting their prince, who preserved some regard for honour and consistency. After the decease of the patriarch Joseph, the archbishops of Heraclia and Trebizond had courage to refuse the vacant office; and cardinal Bessarion preferred the warm and comfortable shelter of the Vatican. The choice of the emperor and his clergy was confined to Metrophanes of Cyrus; he was consecrated in St. Sophia, but the temple was vacant. The cross-bearers abdicated their service; the infection spread from the city to the village; and Metrophanes discharged, without effect, some ecclesiastical thunders against a nation of schismatics. The eyes of the Greeks were directed to Mark of Ephesus, the champion of his country; and the sufferings of the holy confessor were repaid with a tribute of admiration and applause. His example and writings propagated the flame of religious discord; age and infirmity soon removed him from the world.
but the gospel of Mark was not a law of forgiveness; and he requested with his dying breath, that none of the adherents of Rome might attend his obsequies, or pray for his soul.

The schism was not confined to the narrow limits of the Byzantine empire. Secure under the Mameluke sceptre, the three patriarchs of Alexandria, Antioch, and Jerusalem, assembled a numerous synod; disowned their representatives at Ferrara and Florence; condemned the creed and council of the Latins; and threatened the emperor of Constantinople with the cuesures of the Eastern church. Of the sectaries of the Greek communion, the Russians were the most powerful, ignorant, and suppliant. Their primate, the cardinal Isidore, hastened from Florence to Moscow, to reduce the independent nation under the Russian yoke. But the Russian bishops had been educated at mount Athos; and the prince and people embraced the theology of their priests. They were scandalized by the title, the pomp, the Latin cross, of the legate, the friend of those impious men who shaved their beards, and performed the divine office with gloves on their hands, and rings on their fingers: Isidore was condemned by a synod; his person was imprisoned in a monastery; and it was with extreme difficulty

* Isidore was metropolitan of Kiev; but the Greeks subject to Poland have removed that see from the ruins of Kiev to Lemberg, or Leopold (Herbert's in Romania, tom. ii, p. 137). On the other hand, the Russians transferred their spiritual obedience to the archbishop, who became, in 1580, the patriarch of Moscow (La Rose, Hist. de Russie, tom. ii, p. 198, 199. from a Greek manuscript at Turin, شي de lami, Archb. Joseph Arnaldi).
that the cardinal could escape from the hands of a fierce and fanatic people.\(^8\) The Russians refused a passage to the missionaries of Rome who aspired to convert the pagans beyond the Tanais,\(^7\) and their refusal was justified by the maxim, that the guilt of idolatry is less damnable than that of schism. The errors of the Bohemians were excused by their adherence for the pope; and a deputation of the Greek clergy solicited the friendship of those sanguinary enthusiasts.\(^7\) While Eugenius triumphed in the union and orthodoxy of the Greeks, his party was contracted to the walls, or rather to the palace, of Constantinople. The zeal of Patriologus had been excited by interest; it was soon cooled by opposition: an attempt to violate the national belief might endanger his life and crown; nor could the pious rebels be destitute of foreign and do-

\(^7\) The various narrative of Lactantius (Hist. Rom., tom. i., p. 242 -247) is extracted from the patriarchal archives. The names of Pleasants and Pleasants are described by ignorance and passion, but the Russians are available in the amount of their own prejudices.

\(^8\) The schismatics, the ancient religion of the Seminarians and Gnostics, has been revived by the more popular sects, from Italy into the domain of the seminaries; whereas the modern philosophers were accustomed to wrap themselves in garb that they occasionally took into society and physicians. The Maronites and Orthodoxians, in the European Russia, adhere to this religion, which is formed on the exact model of one king or God, his number of angels, and the religious spirits who assist his government. As these tribes of the Volga have no images, they might more truly return to the Latin missionaries the name of schismatics (Lactantius, Hist. van Persians, sect. i. in Domitian of Rome, tom. i. p. 190-207; 225-240).

mestic aid. The sword of his brother Demetrius, who in Italy had maintained a prudent and popular silence, was half unsheathed in the cause of religion; and Amurath, the Turkish sultan, was displeased and alarmed by the seeming friendship of the Greeks and Latins.

“Sultan Murad, or Amurath, lived forty-nine, and reigned thirty years, six months, and eight days. He was a just and valiant prince, of a great soul, patient of labours, learned, merciful, religious, charitable; a lover and encourager of the studious, and of all who excelled in any art or science; a good emperor, and a great general. No man obtained more, or greater, victories than Amurath; Belgrade alone withstood his attacks. Under his reign, the soldier was ever victorious, the citizen rich and secure. If he subdued any country, his first care was to build mosques and caravanseras, hospitals and colleges. Every year he gave a thousand pieces of gold to the sons of the prophet; and sent two thousand five hundred to the religious persons of Mecca, Medina, and Jerusalem.” This portrait is transcribed from the historian of the Ottoman empire: but the applause of a servile and superstitious people has been lavished on the worst of tyrants, and the virtues of a sultan are, often the vices most useful to himself, or most agreeable to his sub-

See Caumer, History of the Ottoman Empire, p. 94. Murad, or Murat, may be more correct, but I have preserved the popular name, to that obscure diligence which is rarely successful in translating an Oriental into the Roman alphabet.
jects. A nation ignorant of the equal benefits of liberty and law, must be awed by the flashes of arbitrary power: the cruelty of a despot will assume the character of justice; his profusion, of liberality; his obstinacy, of firmness. If the most reasonable excuse be rejected, few acts of obedience will be found impossible; and guilt must tremble, where innocence cannot always be secure. The tranquillity of the people, and the discipline of the troops, were best maintained by perpetual action in the field; war was the trade of the janizaries; and those who survived the peril, and divided the spoil, applauded the generous ambition of their sovereign. To propagate the true religion, was the duty of a faithful Mussulman: the unbelievers were his enemies, and those of the prophet; and, in the lands of the Turks, the scymetar was the only instrument of conversion. Under these circumstances, however, the justice and moderation of Amurath are attested by his conduct, and acknowledged by the christians themselves; who consider a prosperous reign and a peaceful death as the reward of his singular merits. In the vigour of his age and military power, he seldom engaged in a war till he was justified by a previous and adequate provocation; the victorious sultan was disarmed by submission; and in the observance of treaties, his word was inviolate and sacred.  

The Hungarians were commonly the aggressors; he was provoked by

7. See Chalcedonius (1. iv., p. 195, 199), Ducre (p. 20), and Minimus Bagrians (in Vit. Semler, loc. cit. 149, 146). In his good faith towards the garrison of Sreigrade, he was a lesson and example to his son Mahmont.
the revolt of Scanderbeg; and the pernicious Caramanian was twice vanquished, and twice pardoned, by the Ottoman monarch. Before he invaded the Morea, Thebes had been surprised by the despot; in the conquest of Thessalonica, the grandson of Lajazet might dispute the recent purchase of the Venetians; and after the first siege of Constantinople, the sultan was never tempted, by the distress, the absence, or the injuries of Palaeologus, to extinguish the dying light of the Byzantine empire.

But the most striking feature in the life and character of Amurath is the double abdication of the Turkish throne; and, were not his motives debased by an alloy of superstition, we must praise the royal philosopher, who, at the age of forty, could discern the vanity of human greatness. Resigning the sceptre to his son, he retired to the pleasant residence of Magnesia; but he retired to the society of saints and hermits. It was not till the fourth century of the Hegira, that the religion of Mahomet had been corrupted by an institution so adverse to his genius; but in the age of the crusades, the various orders of dervishes were multiplied by the example of the christian, and even the Latin, monks. The lord of nations submitted to fast, and pray, and turn round in

* Voltaire ( Essai sur les moeurs des Grecs et des Romains, p. 29, p. 226, 334) admires le philosophe Persé; would he have bestowed the same praise on a christian priest or retinue to a monastery? In his way, Voltaire was a bigot, an intolerant bigot.

** See the articles Persepolis, Tabir, Narin, Bablosia, in the Herati’s Bibliothèque Grecque. Yet the subject is superficially treated from the Persian and Arabic writers. It is among the Turks that these orders have principally flourished.
endless rotation with the fanatics, who mistook the giddiness of the head for the illumination of the spirit. But he was soon awakened from this dream of enthusiasm, by the Hungarian invasion; and his obedient son was the foremost to urge the public danger and wishes of the people. Under the banner of their veteran leader, the janizaries fought and conquered; but he withdrew from the field of Varna, again to pray, to fast, and to turn round to his Magnesian brethren. These pious occupations were again interrupted by the danger of the state. A victorious army disclosed the inexperience of their youthful ruler; the city of Adrianople was abandoned to rapine and slaughter; and the unanimous divan implored his presence to appease the tumult, and prevent the rebellion, of the janizaries. At the well-known voice of their master, they trembled and obeyed; and the reluctant sultan was compelled to support his splendid servitude, till, at the end of four years, he was relieved by the angel of death. Age or disease, misfortune or caprice, have tempted several princes to descend from the throne; and they have had leisure to repent of their irreversible step. But Amurath alone, in the full liberty of choice, after the trial of empire and solitude, has repeated his preference of a private life.

\* Realms of the present State of the Ottoman Empire, p. 297-298, affords much information, which he drew from his personal acquaintance with the hands of the scribes, most of whom carried their origin to the time of Orhan. He does not mention the Sildis of Chersonesos (I. vi. p. 186), among whom Amurath counted the Seed of that nation are the descendants of Mahommet.
After the departure of his Greek brethren, Eugenius had not been unmindful of their temporal interest; and his tender regard for the Byzantine empire was animated by a just apprehension of the Turks, who approached, and might soon invade, the borders of Italy. But the spirit of the crusades had expired; and the coldness of the Franks was not less unreasonable than their headlong passion. In the eleventh century, a fanatic monk could precipitate Europe on Asia for the recovery of the holy sepulchre; but in the fifteenth, the most pressing motives of religion and policy were insufficient to unite the Latins in the defence of Christendom. Germany was an inexhaustible store-house of men and arms; but that complex and languid body required the impulse of a vigorous hand; and Frederic the third was alike impotent in his personal character and his imperial dignity. A long war had impaired the strength, without satiating the animosity, of France and England; but Philip, duke of Burgundy, was a vain and magnificent prince; and he enjoyed,

* In the year 1401, Germany raised 40,000 horse, men at arms, against the Habsburgs of Bohemia (Landin, Hist. de Concile de Basle, tom. i. p. 319). At the siege of Neys on the Rhine, in 1479, the princes, princelets, and cities, sent their respective quotas; and the bishop of Munich (qui est un des plus grands) furnished 1400 horses, 6000 foot, all in arms, with 1200 wagons. The united armies of the king of England, and the duke of Burgundy, nearly equaled one third of this German host (Chronicles of Philippe de Comines, i. iv. p. 2). At present, six or seven hundred thousand men are maintained in constant pay and admirable discipline, by the powers of Germany.

* It was not till the year 1444, that France and England could agree on a term of six months. (See Rymer's Foedera, and the Chronicles of both nations.)
without danger or expense, the adventurous piety of his subjects, who sailed, in a gallant fleet, from the coast of Flanders to the Hellespont. The maritime republics of Venice and Genoa were less remote from the scene of action; and their hostile fleets were associated under the standard of St. Peter. The kingdoms of Hungary and Poland, which covered as it were the interior pale of the Latin church, were the most nearly concerned to oppose the progress of the Turks. Arms were the patrimony of the Scythians and Sarmatians, and these nations might appear equal to the contest; could they point against the common foe those swords that were so wantonly drawn in bloody and domestic quarrels. But the same spirit was adverse to concord and obedience: a poor country and a limited monarch are incapable of maintaining a standing force; and the loose bodies of Polish and Hungarian horse were not armed with the sentiments and weapons which, on some occasions, have given irresistible weight to the French chivalry. Yet, on this side, the design of the Roman pontiff, and the eloquence of cardinal Julian, his legate, were promoted by the circumstances of the times;* by the union of the two crowns on the head of Ladislaus,† a young

---

* In the Hungarian crusade, Spalatinus (Annal. Eccl. a. 1453, 1454) has been my leading guide. He has diligently read, and critically compared, the Greek and Turkish materials, the historians of Hungary, Poland, and the West. His narrative is masterly, and where he can he has from a religious bias, the judgment of Spalding is not contemptible.

† I have consulted the harvest letter (Wladislaus) which most writers cite, in his name, either in compliance with the Polish pronunciation, or
and ambitious soldier; by the valor of an hero, whose name, the name of John Huniades, was already popular among the christians, and formidable to the Turks. An endless treasure of pardons and indulgences was scattered by the legate; many private warriors of France and Germany enlisted under the holy banner; and the crusade derived some strength, or at least some reputation, from the new allies both of Europe and Asia. A fugitive despot of Servia exaggerated the distress and ardour of the christians beyond the Danube, who would unanimously rise to vindicate their religion and liberty. The Greek emperor, with a spirit unknown to his fathers, engaged to guard the Bosphorus, and to sally from Constantinople at the head of his national and mercenary troops. The sultan of Caramania announced the retreat of Amurath, and a powerful diversion in the heart of Anatolia; and if the fleets of the West could occupy at the same moment the straits of the Hellespont, the Ottoman monarchy would be discovered and destroyed. Heaven and earth must rejoice in the perdition of the insurgents; and

or to distinguish him from his rival, the infant Ladislaus of Austria. Their competition for the crown of Hungary is described by Callimachi, loc. cit. p. 447, 486. Bradaneus (Deud. ii. 1. 3r.), Spondeanus, and Lanzani.

* The Greek historians, Thracian, Chalcemylus, and Ducass, do not mention to those princes a very active part in this crusade, which he seems to have promised by his wishes, and injured by his fears.

* Constanz (p. 58) ascribes to his policy the original plan, and transcribes his animating epistle to the king of Hungary. But the mahometan powers are seldom informed of the state of Christians, and the situation and correspondence of the knights of Illyria must connect them with the sultan of Caramania.
the legate, with prudent ambiguity, instilled the opinion of the invisible, perhaps the visible, aid of the Son of God, and his divine mother.

Of the Polish and Hungarian diets, a religious war was the unanimous cry; and Ladislaus, after passing the Danube, led an army of his confederate subjects as far as Sophia, the capital of the Bulgarian kingdom. In this expedition they obtained two signal victories, which were justly ascribed to the valour and conduct of Huniaed. In the first, with a vanguard of ten thousand men, he surprised the Turkish camp; in the second, he vanquished and made prisoners the most renowned of their generals, who possessed the double advantage of ground and numbers. The approach of winter, and the natural and artificial obstacles of mount Hæmus, arrested the progress of the hero, who measured a narrow interval of six days' march from the foot of the mountains to the hostile towers of Adrianople, and the friendly capital of the Greek empire. The retreat was undisturbed; and the entrance into Buda was at once a military and religious triumph. An ecclesiastical procession was followed by the king and his warriors on foot: he nicely balanced the merits and rewards of the two nations; and the pride of conquest was blended with the humble temper of christianity. Thirteen bashaws, nine standards, and four thousand captives, were unquestionable trophies; and as all were willing to believe, and none were present to contradict, the crusaders multiplied, with unabashed confidence, the myriads of Turks whom they had left on the field of
THE DECLINE AND FALL

battle. The most solid proof, and the most salutary consequence, of victory was a deputation from the divan to solicit peace, to restore Servia, to ransom the prisoners, and to evacuate the Hungarian frontier. By this treaty, the rational objects of the war were obtained: the king, the despot, and Humides himself, in the diet of Segedin, were satisfied with public and private emolument: a truce of ten years was concluded; and the followers of Jesus and Mahomet, who swore on the gospel and the korn, attested the word of God as the guardian of truth and the avenger of perfidy. In the place of the gospel, the Turkish ministers had proposed to substitute the eucharist, the real presence of the catholic deity; but the christians refused to profane their holy mysteries; and a superstitious conscience is less forcibly bound by the spiritual energy, than by the outward and visible symbols, of an oath.

During the whole transaction, the cardinal legate had observed a sullen silence, unwilling to approve, and unable to oppose, the consent of the king and people. But the diet was not dissolved before Julian was fortified by the welcome intelligence, that Anatolia was invaded by the Carmanian, and Thrace by the Greek, emperor; that

* In their letter to the emperor Frederick, the Hungarians say 300,000 Turks in one battle; but the modern Julian reduces the slaughter to 6000, or even 2000, infidels (Responsoria in Europ. c. 5, and epist. 44, 81, apud Freudenthal.

* See the origin of the Turkish war, and the first expedition of Las pliades, in the fifth and sixth Books of the third Decad of Bonfante, who, in his division and style, copies Livy, with tolerable success. Callimachus (3. ii. p. 487-499) is still more purer and authentic.
the fleets of Gama, Venice, and Burgundy, were masters of the Hellespont; and that the allies, informed of the victory, and ignorant of the treaty, of Ladislaus, impatiently waited for the return of his victorious army. "And is it thus," exclaimed the cardinal, "that you will desert their expectations and your own fortune? It is to them, to your God, and your fellow-christians, that you have pledged your faith; and that prior obligation annihilates a rash and sacrilegious oath to the enemies of Christ. His vicar on earth is the Roman pontiff, without whose sanction you can neither promise nor perform. In his name, I absolve your perjury and sanctify your arms: follow my footsteps in the paths of glory and salvation; and if still ye have scruples, devolve on my head the punishment and the sin." This mischievous casuistry was seconded by his respectable character, and the levity of popular assemblies; war was resolved on the same spot where peace had so lately been sworn; and, in the execution of the treaty, the Turks were assaulted by the christians, to whom, with some reason, they might apply the epithet of infidels. The falsehood of Ladislaus to his word and oath was palliated by the religion of the times: the most perfect, or at least the most po-

*I do not pretend to warrant the literal accuracy of Julian's speech, which is variously worded by Calvisius (p. 308-309), Bemdtus (De Conc. I. 9, p. 487-489), and other historians, who might indulge their own eloquence, while they represent me of the men of the age. But they all agree in the advice and arguments for perjury, which in the field of controversy are sternly attacked by the protestants, and hardly defended by the catholics. The latter are discouraged by the murmur of Warna.
popular, excuse would have been the success of his arms and the deliverance of the Eastern church. But the same treaty which should have bound his conscience, had diminished his strength. On the proclamation of the peace, the French and German volunteers departed with indignant murmurs: the Poles were exhausted by distant warfare, and perhaps disgusted with foreign commands; and their palatines accepted the first licence, and hastily retired to their provinces and castles. Even Hungary was divided by faction, or restrained by a laudable scruple; and the relics of the crusade that marched in the second expedition were reduced to an inadequate force of twenty thousand men. A Wallachian chief, who joined the royal standard with his vassals, presumed to remark that their numbers did not exceed the hunting retinue that sometimes attended the sultan; and the gift of two horses of matchless speed might admonish Ladislaus of his secret foresight of the event. But the despot of Servia, after the restoration of his country and children, was tempted by the promise of new realms; and the inexperience of the king, the enthusiasm of the legate, and the martial presumption of Huniades himself; were persuaded that every obstacle must yield to the invincible virtue of the sword and the cross. After the passage of the Danube, two roads might lead to Constantinople and the Hellespont; the one direct, abrupt, and difficult, through the mountains of Hasmus; the other, more tedious and secure, over a level country, and along the shores of the Euxine, in which their flanks, according
to the Scythian discipline, might always be covered by a moveable fortification of waggons. The latter was judiciously preferred; the catholics marched through the plains of Bulgaria, burning, with wanton cruelty, the churches and villages of the Christian natives; and their last station was at Warna, near the sea-shore; on which the defeat and death of Ladišfons have bestowed a memorable name.

It was on this fatal spot, that, instead of finding a confederate fleet to second their operations, they were alarmed by the approach of Amurath himself, who had issued from his Magnesian solitude, and transported the forces of Asia to the defence of Europe. According to some writers, the Greek emperor had been awed, or seduced, to grant the passage of the Bosphorus, and an indelible stain of corruption is fixed on the Genoese, or the pope's nephew, the catholic admiral, whose mercenary connivance betrayed the guard of the Hellespont. From Adrianople, the sultan advanced by hasty marches, at the head of sixty thousand men; and when the cardinal, and Haydals, had taken a nearer survey of the numbers and order of the Turks, these ardent warriors proposed the tardy and impracticable measure of a retreat. The

* Warna, under the Greek name of Odessa, was a colony of the Milesians, which, they detrminated from the town Lyons (Caesarius, tom. I. p. 214, d'Anville, tom. IV. p. 512). According to Arno's version of the Justin. p. 13, 25, in the first volume of Hinden's Geography, it was about 1740 miles, or 135 leagues, from the mouth of the Donau, 2140 from Byantium, and 1560 to the north of a ridge or promontory, of Mount Haéna, which advances into the sea.
king alone was resolved to conquer or die; and his resolution had almost been crowned with a glorious and salutary victory. The princes were opposite to each other in the centre; and the beglerbiegs, or generals of Anatolia and Romania, commanded on the right and left against the adverse divisions of the despot and Huniades. The Turkish wings were broken on the first onset, but the advantage was fatal; and the rash victors, in the heat of the pursuit, were carried away far from the annoyance of the enemy or the support of their friends. When Amurath beheld the flight of his squadrons, he despaired of his fortune and that of the empire; a veteran janizary seized his horse's bridle; and he had magnanimity to pardon and reward the soldier who dared to perceive the terror, and arrest the flight of his sovereign. A copy of the treaty, the monument of Christian perfidy, had been displayed in the front of battle; and it is said, that the sultan, in his distress, lifting his eyes and his hands to heaven, implored the protection of the God of truth; and called on the prophet Jesus himself to avenge the impious mockery of his name and religion. With inferior numbers and disordered ranks, the king of Hungary rushed forwards in the confidence of victory, till his career was stopped by the impenetrable phalanx of the janizaries. If we may credit the Ottoman

* Some Christian writers affirm, that he drew from his bosom the hilt or scabbard on which the treaty had not been sworn. The Moslems suppose, with more simplicity, an appeal to God and his prophet Jesus, which is literally indicated by Callimachus (ib. iii. p. 418. Sponden, ii. p. 1444, No. 8).
annals, his horse was pierced by the javelin of Amurath: he fell among the spears of the infantry; and a Turkish soldier proclaimed with a loud voice, "Hungarians, behold the head of your king." The death of Ladislaus was the signal of their defeat. On his return from an intemperate pursuit, Honiades deplored his error and the public loss: he strove to rescue the royal body, till he was overwhelmed by the tumultuous crowd of the victors and vanquished; and the last efforts of his courage and conduct were exerted to save the remnant of his Wallachian cavalry. Ten thousand Christians were slain in the disastrous battle of Warna: the loss of the Turks, more considerable in numbers, bore a smaller proportion to their total strength; yet the philosophic sultan was not ashamed to confess, that his ruin must be the consequence of a second and similar victory. At his command a column was erected on the spot where Ladislaus had fallen; but the modest inscription, instead of accusing the rashness, recorded the valour, and bewailed the misfortune, of the Hungarian youth.

* A critic will always discover those subtle errors of a victorious general, so difficult for authors to admit, so easy for dummies to invent (Cantimur, p. 30, 31). Callimachus (c. 6, p. 317) more simply and probably affirms, superstitiosus Januarius, turnam multitudinem, non tam confossam ei, quam eritam.

* Besides more valuable hints from Beno Ghirius, which are diligently collected by Spalding, our best authorities are three historians of the fourteenth century, Philippus Callimachus (De Rame a Vladislaus Poloniae atque Hungarico Rege gestis, lib. iv., in Bel. Script. Rerum Hungaricarum, tom. i., p. 433-434), Baudouin (d. 128, c. 12, p. 650-657), and Calcium Conde (c. 128, p. 665-679). The two first were Italians, but they passed their lives in Poland and Hungary (Fabri, Bibliot. Lat. med. iv. Inl. lib. i. Elia, tom. i.)
Before I lose sight of the field of Warna, I am tempted to pause on the character and story of two principal actors, the cardinal Julian and John Huniades. Julian Casarini was born of a noble family of Rome; his studies had embraced both the Latin and Greek learning, both the sciences of divinity and law; and his versatile genius was equally adapted to the schools, the camp, and the court. No sooner had he been invested with the Roman purple, than he was sent into Germany to arm the empire against the rebels and heretics of Bohemia. The spirit of persecution is unworthy of a Christian; the military profession ill becomes a priest; but the former is excused by the times, and the latter was ennobled by the courage of Julian, who stood dauntless and alone in the disgraceful flight of the German host. As the pope's legate, he opened the council of Basil; but the president soon appeared the most strenuous champion of ecclesiastical freedom: and an opposition of seven years was conducted by his ability and zeal. After promoting the strongest measures against the authority and person of Eugenius, some secret motive of interest or conscience engaged him to desert on a sudden the popular party.


* St. Leclerc has traced the origin (Hist. de France de Stade, tom. 3, p. 137, 164) of Bohemian campaign (p. 215, &c.), of cardinal Julian. His services at Basil and Fenitra, and his unfortunate end, are occasionally noticed by Spalding, and the continuator of Pamy.
The cardinal withdrew himself from Basil to Ferrara; and, in the debates of the Greeks and Latins, the two nations admired the dexterity of his arguments and the depth of his theological erudition. In his Hungarian embassy we have already seen the mischievous effects of his sophistry and eloquence, of which Julian himself was the first victim. The cardinal, who performed the duties of a priest and a soldier, was lost in the defeat of Warnia. The circumstances of his death are variously related; but it is believed, that a weighty incumbrance of gold impeded his flight, and tempted the cruel avarice of some Christian fugitives.

From an humble, or at least a doubtful, origin, the merit of John Huniades promoted him to the command of the Hungarian armies. His father was a Wallachian, his mother a Greek; her unknown race might possibly ascend to the emperors of Constantinople; and the claims of the Wallachians, with the surname of Corvinus, from the place of his nativity, might suggest a thin pretence for mingling his blood with the patricians of ancient Rome. In his youth he served in the wars of Italy, and was retained, with twelve horsemen, by the bishop of Zagral; the valour of

---

* Symposium: See also the obituary of an enemy (p. 137); t.s. reference was made (Johannes waldensii eugenius, et fidei, in Exquem, see.)

* See Ruellius, decret. 68, 140, p. 112. Could the Italian bishopric possess, or the king of Hungary have, without a blunder the eloquent historical reference? which confirms the notice of a Wallachian college with the name, though gloriously, epithet of a single branch of the Vlassian family &c. &c.
the white knight was soon conspicuous: he en-
creased his fortunes by a noble and wealthy mar-
riage; and in the defence of the Hungarian
borders, he won in the same year three battles
against the Turks. By his influence, Ladislaus
of Poland obtained the crown of Hungary; and
the important service was rewarded by the title
and office of vaivod of Transylvania. The first of
Julian's crusades added two Turkish laurels on his
brow; and in the public distress the fatal errors
of Warmén were forgotten. During the absence
and minority of Ladislaus of Austria, the titular
king, Huniades was elected supreme captain and
governor of Hungary; and if envy at first was
silenced by terror, a reign of twelve years supposes
the arts of policy as well as of war. Yet the idea
of a consummate general is not delineated in his
campaigns: the white knight fought with the
hand rather than the head, as the chief of desultory
barbarians, who attack without fear, and fly with-
out shame; and his military life is composed of a
romantic alternative of victories and escapes. By
the Turks, who employed his name to frighten
their perverse children, he was corruptly denomi-
nated Janus Lata, or the wicked: their hatred is
the proof of their esteem; the kingdom which
he guarded was inaccessible to their arms; and
they felt him most daring and formidable, when
they fondly believed the captain of his country

\footnote{Philip de Comines (Memoirs, I. vii. p. 13), from the tradition of
the times, mentions him with high encomiums, but under the
whitened name of the Chevalier Blanc de Valaissé (Valmisa). The Greek
Chalcedonians, and the Turkish Annals of Lemnos, presume to
assume his fidelity or valour.}
irrecoverably lost. Instead of confining himself to a defensive war, four years after the defeat of Warna he again penetrated into the heart of Bulgaria; and in the plain of Cossava sustained, till the third day, the shock of the Ottoman army, four times more numerous than his own. As he fled alone through the woods of Wallachia, the hero was surprised by two robbers; but while they disputed a gold chain that hung at his neck, he recovered his sword, slew the one, terrified the other, and, after new perils of captivity or death, consoled by his presence an afflicted kingdom. But the last and most glorious action of his life was the defence of Belgrade against the powers of Mahomet the second in person. After a siege of forty days, the Turks, who had already entered the town, were compelled to retreat; and the joyful nations celebrated Huniades and Belgrade as the bulwarks of Christendom. About a month after this great deliverance, the champion expired; and his most splendid epitaph is the regret of the Ottoman prince, who sighed that he could no longer hope for revenge against the single antagonist who had triumphed over his arms. On the first vacancy of the throne, Matthias Corvinus, a youth of eighteen years of age, was elected and crowned by the grateful Hungarians. His reign was prosperous and long: Matthias aspired to the glory of a conqueror and

\footnote{See Burnelius (de Pract. ill. 7. viii. p. 402) and Spenzadio (e. a. 1450, No. 1, 47). Huniades shared the glory of the defence of Belgrade with Captorin, a Franciscan friar; and in their respective narratives, neither the saint nor the hero condescended to take notice of his rival's merit.}
n saint; but his purest merit is the encouragement of learning: and the Latin orators and historians, who were invited from Italy by the son, have shed the lustre of their eloquence on the father's character.  

In the lists of heroes, John Huniades and Scanderbeg are commonly associated, and they are both entitled to our notice, since their occupation of the Ottoman arms delayed the ruin of the Greek empire. John Castriot, the father of Scanderbeg, was the hereditary prince of a small district of Epirus or Albania, between the mountains and the Adriatic sea. Unable to contend with the sultan's power, Castriot submitted to the hard conditions of peace and tribute; he deli-

---

* See Foucault, sec. iii. ii., vol. iv. L viii. The observations of Flamsteed on the life and character of Marino Marini are curious and critical (p. p. 1404, No. 1, 1523, No. 5, 1574, No. 14-16, 1493, No. 1. The Italian name was the object of his vanity. His actions are celebrated in the Epitome Heroum Hungarciarum (p. 322-323) of Peter Ramusius, a Stilianus. His wise and generous sayings are registered by Gallus Martinus of Norm. (158-159); and we have a particular narrative of his wedding and coronation. These three books are all contained in the first vol. of Her's Scriptores Heroum Hungarciarum.

* They are ranked by Sir William Temple in his pleasing Essay on Heroic Virtue (Works, vol. iii. p. 225), among the seven states who have desired, without receiving, a royal crown: Bolivar, Nebra, Bernardo de Carvajal, William the first prince of Orange, Alexander duke of Parma, John Huniades, and George Castriot, or Scanderbeg.
vered his four sons as the pledges of his fidelity; and the Christian youths, after receiving the mark of circumcision, were instructed in the Mahometan religion, and trained in the arms and arts of Turkish policy. The three elder brothers were confounded in the crowd of slaves; and the poison to which their deaths are ascribed cannot be verified or disproved by any positive evidence. Yet the suspicion is in a great measure removed by the kind and paternal treatment of George Castriot, the fourth brother, who, from his tender youth, displayed the strength and spirit of a soldier. The successive overthrow of a Tartar and two Persians, who carried a proud defiance to the Turkish court, recommended him to the favour of Amurath; and his Turkish appellation of Scanderbeg (Iskender beg), or the lord Alexander, is an indelible memorial of his glory and servitude. His father's principality was reduced into a province; but the loss was compensated by the rank and title of sanjak, a command of five thousand horse, and the prospect of the first dignities of the empire. He served with honour in the wars of Europe and Asia; and we may smile at the art or credulity of the historian, who supposes, that in every encounter he spared the Christians, while he fell with a thundering arm on his Mussulman foes. The glory of Huniades is without reproach; he fought in the defence of his religion and country; but the enemies who applaud the patriot have branded his rival with the name of

*His circumcision, education, &c. are marked by Marius with severity and reluctance (1, p. 6, 7).
traitor and apostate. In the eyes of the christians, the rebellion of Scanderbeg is justified by his father's wrongs, the ambiguous death of his three brothers, his own degradation, and the slavery of his country; and they adore the generous, though tardy, zeal, with which he asserted the faith and independence of his ancestors. But he had imbibed from his ninth year the doctrines of the koran; he was ignorant of the gospel; the religion of a soldier is determined by authority and habit; nor is it easy to conceive what new illumination, at the age of forty, 6 could be poured into his soul. His motives would be less exposed to the suspicion of interest or revenge, had he broken his chain from the moment that he was sensible of its weight; but a long oblivion had surely impaired his original right: and every year of obedience and reward had cemented the mutual bond of the sultan and his subject. If Scanderbeg had long harboured the belief of christianity and the intention of revolt, a worthy mind must condemn the base dissimulation, that could serve only to betray, that could promise only to be forsworn, that could actively join in the temporal and spiritual perdition of so many thousands of his unhappy brethren. Shall we praise a secret correspondence with Huntades, while he

---

6 Since Scanderbeg died in 1468, in the 43d year of his age (Maximus, I. 555, p. 310), he was born in 1425: since he was born from his parents by the Turks, when he was seven years old (Maximus, I. 6, p. 1, 6), that event must have happened in 1432, nine years before the accession of Amurat II, who must have inherited, not acquired, the Albanian slave. Spandaran has remarked this inconsistency, p. 24, 1431, No. 31, 1433, No. 14,
commanded the vanguard of the Turkish army? shall we excuse the desertion of his standard; a treacherous desertion, which abandoned the victory to the enemies of his benefactor? In the confusion of a defeat, the eye of Scanderbeg was fixed on the reis effendi or principal secretary: with a dagger at his breast, he extorted a firman or patent for the government of Albania; and the murder of the guiltless scribe and his train prevented the consequences of an immediate discovery. With some bold companions, to whom he had revealed his design, he escaped in the night, by rapid marches, from the field of battle to his paternal mountains. The gates of Croya were opened to the royal mandate: and no sooner did he command the fortress, than George Castriot dropt the mask of dissimulation; abjured the prophet and the sultan, and proclaimed himself the avenger of his family and country. The names of religion and liberty provoked a general revolt: the Albanians, a martial race, were unanimous to live and die with their hereditary prince; and the Ottoman garrisons were indulged in the choice of martyrdom or baptism. In the assembly of the states of Epirus, Scanderbeg was elected general of the Turkish war; and each of the allies engaged to furnish his respective proportion of men and money. From these contributions, from his patrimonial estate, and from the valuable salt-pits of Selina, he drew an annual revenue of two hundred thousand ducats; and the entire sum,
exempt from the demands of luxury, was strictly appropriated to the public use. His manners were popular; but his discipline was severe: and every superfluous vice was banished from his camp: his example strengthened his command; and under his conduct, the Albanians were invincible in their own opinion and that of their enemies. The bravest adventurers of France and Germany were allure by his fame and retained in his service; his standing militia consisted of eight thousand horse and seven thousand foot; the horses were small, the men were active: but he viewed with a discerning eye the difficulties and resources of the mountains; and, at the blaze of the beacons, the whole nation was distributed in the strongest posts. With such unequal arms, Scanderbeg resisted twenty-three years the powers of the Ottoman empire; and two conquerors, Amurath the second, and his greater son, were repeatedly baffled by a rebel, whom they pursued with seeming contempt and implacable resentment. At the head of sixty thousand horse and forty thousand janizaries, Amurath entered Albania: he might ravage the open country, occupy the defenceless towns, convert the churches into mosques, circumcise the christian youths, and punish with death his adult and obstinate captives; but the conquests of the sultan were confined to the petty fortress of Silegrade; and the garrison, invincible to his arms, was oppressed by a paltry artifice and a superstitious scruple.

* There were two Dobres, the upper and lower, the Bulgarian and Albanian: the former, 70 miles from Creva 0, l, p. 179, was consi-
Amurath retired with shame and loss from the walls of Croya, the castle and residence of the Castriots: the march, the siege, the retreat, were harassed by a vexatious, and almost invisible, adversary; and the disappointment might tend to embitter, perhaps to shorten, the last days of the sultan. In the fulness of conquest, Mahomet the second still felt at his bosom this domestic thorn: his lieutenants were permitted to negotiate a truce; and the Albanian prince may justly be praised as a firm and able champion of his national independence. The enthusiasm of chivalry and religion has ranked him with the names of Alexander and Pyrrhus: nor would they blush to acknowledge their intrepid countryman: but his narrow dominion, and slender powers, must leave him at an humble distance below the heroes of antiquity, who triumphed over the East and the Roman legions. His splendid achievements, the bushaws whom he encountered, the armies that he discomfited, and the three thousand Turks who were slain by his single hand, must be weighed in the scales of suspicious criticism. Against an illiterate enemy, and in the dark solitude of

— grace to the fortress of Belgrade, whose inhabitants refused to drink from a well into which a dead dog had transported itself (v. p. 139, 140). We want a good map of Sphrin.

— Compare the Turkish narrative of Castriotic (p. 92) with the pompous and prolix declaration in the fourth, fifth, and sixth books of the Albanian priest, who has been copied by the tribe of strangling and middens.

— In honour of his hero, Barzibis (l. 3, p. 192-193), king the sultan, by illness indeed, under the walls of Croya. But this malicious faction is dispersed by the Greeks and Turks, who agree in the time and manner of Amurath's death at Adrianople.
Epirus, his partial biographers may safely indulge the latitude of romance: but their fictions are exposed by the light of Italian history; and they afford a strong presumption against their own truth, by a fabulous tale of his exploits, when he passed the Adriatic with eight hundred horse to the succour of the king of Naples.* Without disparagement to his fame, they might have owned that he was finally oppressed by the Ottoman powers: in his extreme danger, he applied to pope Pius the second for a refuge in the ecclesiastical state; and his resources were almost exhausted, since Scanderbeg died a fugitive at Lissus on the Venetian territory.† His sepulchre was soon violated by the Turkish conquerors; but the janizaries, who wore his bones enchased in a bracelet, declared, by this superstitious amulet, their involuntary reverence for his valour. The instant ruin of his country may redound to the hero's glory; yet, had he balanced the consequences of submission and resistance, a patriot

* See the narrative of his Calabrian expedition in the ninth and tenth books of Marzio's Bartello, which may be verified by the testimony or silence of Muratori (Annali d'Italia, tom. xiii, p. 291), and his original authors (John Simonetta & Reino Francisco Martin, in Monatari, Script. Rerum Ital. tom. ivi, p. 726, et alibi. The Albanian country, under the name of Scindia, soon became famous in the wars of Italy, (Memorie di Contino, t. xxi, p. 9.)

† Speculations from the best evidence and the most rational criticism, has reduced the giant Scanderbeg to the human size (a. d. 1461, No. 20, 1462, No. 9, 1463, No. 11, 15, 1467, No. 1). His own letter to the pope, and the testimony of Forza (t. iii, p. 20), a refugee in the neighbouring isle of Corfu, demonstrates his real distress, which is not hardly concealed by Marzio's Bartello (i. 1).
perhaps would have declined the unequal contest, which must depend on the life and genius of one man. Scanderbeg might indeed be supported by the rational, though fallacious hope, that the pope, the king of Naples, and the Venetian republic, would join in the defence of a free and Christian people, who guarded the sea coast of the Adriatic, and the narrow passage from Greece to Italy. His infant son was saved from the national shipwreck; the Castriots were invested with a Neapolitan dukedom, and their blood continues to flow in the noblest families of the realm. A colony of Albanian fugitives obtained a settlement in Calabria, and they preserve at this day the language and manners of their ancestors.

In the long career of the decline and fall of the Roman empire, I have reached at length the last reign of the princes of Constantinople, who so feebly sustained the name and majesty of the Caesars. On the decease of John Paleologus, who survived about four years the Hungarian crusade, the royal family, by the death of Andronicus, and the monastic profession of Isidore, was reduced to three princes, Constantine, Demetrius, and Thomas, the surviving sons of the

---

1 See the family of the Castriots, in Dornage (Fam. Dalmatiae, No. xxvii. p. 348-350).
2 This colony of Albanians is mentioned by Mr. Swinburne (Trans. into the two Sicilies, vol. 1. p. 339-344).
3 The chronology of Pharamus is clear and authentic; but instead of four years and seven months, Spondeus (c. n. 1445, No. 3) assigns seven or eight years to the reign of the last Constantin, which he deduces from a spurious epistle of Eugenius IV. to the king of Thessalia.
Of these the first and the last were far distant in the Morea; but Demetrius, who possessed the domain of Selybrin, was in the suburbs, at the head of a party: his ambition was not chilled by the public distress; and his conspiracy with the Turks and the schismatics had already disturbed the peace of his country. The funeral of the late emperor was accelerated with singular and even suspicious haste; the claim of Demetrius to the vacant throne was justified by a trite and dimly sophism, that he was born in the purple, the eldest son of his father’s reign. But the empress-mother, the senate and soldiers, the clergy and people, were unanimous in the cause of the lawful successor; and the despot Thomas, who, ignorant of the change, accidentally returned to the capital, asserted with becoming zeal the interest of his absent brother. An ambassador, the historian Phanisa, was immediately dispatched to the court of Adrianople. Amurath received him with honour, and dismissed him with gifts; but the gracious approbation of the Turkish sultan announced his supremacy, and the approaching downfall of the eastern empire. By the hands of two illustrious deputies, the imperial crown was placed at Sparta on the head of Constantine. In the spring he sailed from the Morea, escaped the encounter of a Turkish squadron, enjoyed the acclamations of his subjects, celebrated the festival of a new reign, and exhausted by his donations the treasure, or rather the indigence, of the state. The emperor immediately resigned to his brothers the possession of
the Morea; and the brittle friendship of the two princes, Demetrius and Thomas, was confirmed in their mother's presence by the frail security of oaths and embraces. His next occupation was the choice of a consort. A daughter of the doge of Venice had been proposed; but the Byzantine nobles objected the distance between an hereditary monarch and an elective magistrate; and in their subsequent distress, the chief of that powerful republic was not unmindful of the affront. Constantine afterwards hesitated between the royal families of Trebizond and Georgia; and the embassy of Phranza represents in his public and private life the last days of the Byzantine empire.  

The protoevstiarch, or great chamberlain, Phranza, sailed from Constantinople as minister of a bridegroom; and the relics of wealth and luxury were applied to his pompous appearance. His numerous retinue consisted of nobles and guards, of physicians and monks; he was attended by a band of music; and the term of his costly embassy was protracted above two years. On his arrival in Georgia or Iberia, the natives from the towns and villages flocked around the strangers; and such was their simplicity, that they were delighted with the effects, without understanding the cause, of musical harmony. Among the crowd was an old man, above an hundred years of age, who had formerly been carried away a captive.

*Phranza (I. III. c. 1.6) deserves credit and esteem.

VOL. XII.
by the barbarians, and who amused his hearers with a tale of the wonders of India, from whence he had returned to Portugal by an unknown sea. From this hospitable land Phranza proceeded to the court of Trebizond, where he was informed by the Greek prince of the recent decease of Amurath. Instead of rejoicing in the deliverance, the experienced statesman expressed his apprehension that an ambitious youth would not long adhere to the sage and pacific system of his father. After the sultan’s decease, his Christian wife Maria, the daughter of the Servian despot, had been honourably restored to her parents: on the fame of her beauty and merit, she was recommended by the ambassador as the most worthy object of the royal choice; and Phranza

* Suppose him to have been captured in 1294, in Timon’s first war in Georgia (Shaw, ii. 301). He might follow his Tatar master into Bokhara in 1298, and from thence sail to the spice islands.

* The happy and peaceful Indians lived an hundred and fifty years, and enjoyed the most perfect productions of the vegetable and mineral kingdoms. The animals were on a large scale: dragons seventy cubits, ants the forme, Indica, nine inches long, sheep like elephants, elephants like sheep. Quiddiher amhindi, &c.

* He sailed in a country round from the spice islands to one of the parts of the exterior India; inventam navem grandiorem Horicam, quam in Portugalliae situlta. This passage, composed in 1477 (Prasada, i. 20), twenty years before the discovery of the Cape of Good Hope, is curious as wonderful. But this new geography is sufficed by the old and inconvertible error, which places the sources of the Nile in India.

* Catenaria (p. 33), who styles her the daughter of Lazars Ogli, and the Helen of the Servians, places her marriage with Amurath in the year 1424. It will not easily be believed, that in six-and-twenty years cohabitation, the sultan corpse slept next night. After the taking of Constantinople, she fled to Mahometa (Phranza, i. 105 c. 28).
recapitulates and refutes the specious objections that might be raised against the proposal. The majesty of the purple would ennable an unequal alliance; the bar of affinity might be removed by liberal alms and the dispensation of the church; the disgrace of Turkish nuptials had been repeatedly overlooked; and, though the fair Maria was near fifty years of age, she might yet hope to give an heir to the empire. Constantine listened to the advice, which was transmitted in the first ship that sailed from Trebizond; but the factions of the court opposed his marriage; and it was finally prevented by the pious vow of the sultana, who ended her days in the monastic profession. Reduced to the first alternative, the choice of Phranza was decided in favour of a Georgian princess; and the vanity of her father was dazzled by the glorious alliance. Instead of demanding, according to the primitive and national custom, a price for his daughter, he offered a portion of fifty-six thousand, with an annual pension of five thousand, ducats; and the services of the ambassador were repaid by an assurance, that as his son had been adopted in baptism by the emperor, the establishment of his daughter should be the peculiar care of the empress of Constantinople. On the return of Phranza, the treaty was ratified by the Greek monarch, who with his own hand impressed three vermilion crosses on the golden bull, and assured the Georgian envoy, that in the

* The classical reader will recollect the offers of Agramon (Hist. i. v. 144), and the general practice of antiquity.
spring his galleys should conduct the bride to her imperial palace. But Constantine embraced his faithful servant, not with the cold approbation of a sovereign, but with the warm confidence of a friend, who, after a long absence, is impatient to pour his secrets into the bosom of his friend.

Since the death of my mother and of Cantacuzene, who alone advised me without interest or passion, "I am surrounded," said the emperor, by men whom I can neither love, nor trust, nor esteem. You are not a stranger to Lucas Notares, the great admiral; obstinately attached to his own sentiments, he declares, both in private and public, that his sentiments are the absolute measure of my thoughts and actions.

The rest of the courtiers are swayed by their personal or factional views; and how can I consult the monks on questions of policy and marriage? I have yet much employment for your diligence and fidelity. In the spring you shall engage one of my brothers to solicit the succour of the Western powers; from the Morea you shall sail to Cyprus on a particular commission; and from thence proceed to Georgia, to receive and conduct the future empress."

"Your commands," replied Phranza, "are irresistible; but deign, great sir," he added, with a serious smile, "to consider, that if I am thus perpetually absent from my family, my

* Cantacuzene (I am ignorant of his relation to the emperor of that name) was great domestic, a kinsman of the Greek court, and a brother of the queen of Serbia, whom he visited with the character of ambassador (Syropilus, p. 37, 38, 43).
"A woman may be tempted either to seek another husband, or to throw herself into a monastery." After laughing at his apprehensions, the emperor more gravely consoled him, by the pleasing assurance that this should be his last service abroad, and that he destined for his son a wealthy and noble heiress; for himself, the important office of great logothete, or principal minister of state. The marriage was immediately stipulated; but the office, however incompatible with his own, had been usurped by the ambition of the admiral. Some delay was requisite to negotiate a consent and an equivalent; and the nomination of Phranza was half declared, and half suppressed, lest it might be displeasing to an insolent and powerful favourite. The winter was spent in the preparations of his embassy, and Phranza had resolved that the youth his son should embrace this opportunity of foreign travel, and be left, on the appearance of danger, with his maternal kindred of the Morea. Such were the private and public designs, which were interrupted by a Turkish war, and finally buried in the ruins of the empire.
CHAP. LXVIII.

Reign and character of Mahomet the second.—Siege, assault, and final conquest, of Constantinople by the Turks.—Death of Constantine Palaeologus.—Scarcity of the Greeks.—Extinction of the Roman empire in the East.—Consternation of Europe.—Conquests and death of Mahomet the second.

The siege of Constantinople by the Turks attracts our first attention to the person and character of the great destroyer. Mahomet the second* was the son of the second Amurath; and though his mother has been decorated with the titles of Christian and princess, she is more probably confounded with the numerous concubines who peopled from every climate the harem of the sultan. His first education and sentiments were those of a devout Mussulman; and as often as he conversed with an infidel, he purified his hands and face by the legal rites of ablution. Age and empire appear to have relaxed this narrow bigotry; his aspiring genius disdained to acknowledge a power above his own; and in his looser hours he

* For the character of Mahomet u., it is dangerous to trust either the Turks or the Christians. The most moderate picture appears to be drawn by Pammu [i. c. 34], whose resentment had cooled in age and solitude; seelikewise Spalatinus (n. 8, 1451, No. 11), and the continuator of Flurey (ib. xxxii. p. 559), the Sigill of Paulus Jovinus [i. 11. p. 164-165], and the Dictionnaire de Bayle (ib. ii. p. 373-379).
presumed (it is said) to brand the prophet of Mecca as a robber and impostor. Yet the sultan persevered in a decent reverence for the doctrine and discipline of the Koran; his private indiscretion must have been sacred from the vulgar ear; and we should suspect the credulity of strangers and sectaries, so prone to believe that a mind which is hardened against truth must be armed with superior contempt for absurdity and error. Under the tuition of the most skilful masters, Mahomet advanced with an early and rapid progress in the paths of knowledge; and besides his native tongue, it is affirmed that he spoke or understood five languages, the Arabic, the Persian, the Chaldean or Hebrew, the Latin, and the Greek. The Persian might indeed contribute to his amusement, and the Arabic to his edification; and such studies are familiar to the Oriental youth. In the intercourse of the Greeks and Turks, a conqueror might wish to converse with the people over whom he was ambitious to reign; his own praise in Latin poetry or

*Contente (p. 110), and the more he implored. Great was his public regard for religion. Mahomet freely associated with the patriarch Gennadius in the two religions (Spont. x. i. 152, No. 72). Quinque linguae praecepit sine numero: Graecum, Latinum, Chaldaenum, Persicam. The Latin translator of Phalaris has doubted the Arabic, which the Koran must recommend to every musician.*

*Philippus, by a Latin edict, requested and obtained the liberty of his wife's mother and sisters from the conqueror of Constantinople. It was delivered into the sultan's hands by the senators of Salon. Philippus himself was suspected of a design of retiring to Constantinople; yet the sultan often rewarded the munificence of his craft by his life by M. Lantacor, in the Memoires de l'Academie des Inscriptions, tom. x. p. 116, 114, &c.*
prose,* might find a passage to the royal ear; but what use or merit could recommend to the statesman or the scholar the uncouth dialect of his Hebrew slaves? The history and geography of the world were familiar to his memory: the lives of the heroes of the East, perhaps of the West,* excited his emulation; his skill in astrology is excused by the folly of the times, and supposes some rudiments of mathematical science; and a profane taste for the arts is betrayed in his liberal invitation and reward of the painters of Italy.* But the influence of religion and learning were employed without effect on his savage and licentious nature. I will not transcribe, nor do I firmly believe, the stories of his fourteen pages, whose hellies were ripped open in search of a stolen melon; or of the beautiful slave, whose head he severed from her body, to convince the janizaries that their master was not the votary of love. His sobriety is attested by the silence of the Turkish animals, which accuse three, and three only, of the

* Robert Valario published at Verona, #1483, his twelve books de Re Miliaria, in which he first mentions the use of bombs. By his patron Sigismund Malatesta, prince of Rimini, it had been addressed with a Latin epistle to Mahomet II.

* According to Pizarra, he annually stylized the lives and actions of Alexander, Augustus, Constantine, and Theodosius. I have read somewhere, that Plutarch's Lives were translated by his order into the Turkish language. If the sultan himself understood Greek, it must have been for the benefit of his subjects. Yet these lives are a school of freedom as well as of turban.

* The famous Gentile Bellini, whom he had invited from Venice, was adorned with a chain and collar of gold, and a purse of 2000 ducats. With Voltaire I laugh at the foolish story of a slave purposely behaered, to instruct the painter in the action of the muscles.
Ottoman line of the vice of drunkenness? But it cannot be denied that his passions were at once furious and inexorable; that in the palace, as in the field, a torrent of blood was spilt on the slightest provocation; and that the noblest of the captive youth were often dishonoured by his unnatural lust. In the Albanian war, he studied the lessons, and soon surpassed the example, of his father; and the conquest of two empires, twelve kingdoms, and two hundred cities, a vain and flattering account, is ascribed to his invincible sword. He was doubtless a soldier, and possibly a general; Constantinople has sealed his glory; but if we compare the means, the obstacles, and the achievements, Mahomet the second must blush to sustain a parallel with Alexander or Timour. Under his command, the Ottoman forces were always more numerous than their enemies; yet their progress was bounded by the Euphrates and the Adriatic; and his arms were checked by Huniades and Scanderbeg, by the Rhodian knights, and by the Persian king.

In the reign of Amurath, he twice tasted of royalty, and twice descended from the throne; his tender age was incapable of opposing his father's restoration, but never could he forgive the vizirs who had recommended that salutary measure. His nuptials were celebrated with the daughter of a Turkman emir; and after a festival

---

*These imperial drunkards were Solomon I, Selim I, and Amurath II (Catenaio, p. 61). The opium of Turkey can produce a more regular insensibility; and in the last age, our European travellers were the pilferers and companions of their seers.*
of two months, he departed from Adrianople with his bride to reside in the government of Magnesia. Before the end of six weeks he was recalled by a sudden message from the divan, which announced the decease of Amurath, and the mutinous spirit of the janizaries. His speed and vigour commanded their obedience; he passed the Hellespont with a chosen guard; and at the distance of a mile from Adrianople, the vizirs and emirs, the imams and cadhis, the soldiers and the people, fell prostrate before the new sultan. They affected to weep, they affected to rejoice; he ascended the throne at the age of twenty-one years, and removed the cause of sedition by the death, the inevitable death, of his infant brothers. The ambassadors of Europe and Asia soon appeared to congratulate his accession and solicit his friendship; and to all he spoke the language of moderation and peace. The confidence of the Greek emperor was revived by the solemn oaths and fair assurances with which he sealed the ratification of the treaty; and a rich domain on the banks of the Strymon was assigned for the annual payment of three hundred thousand aspers, the pension of an Ottoman prince, who was detained at his request in the Byzantine court. Yet the neighbours of Mahomet might tremble at the severity with which a youthful monarch reformed the pomp of his father's house-

Calypso, one of these royal infants, was saved from his cruel brethren, and baptized at Rome under the name of Calixtus Othomannus. The emperor Frederick in presented him with an estate in Austria, where he ended his life; and Constantine, who in his youth conversed with the aged prince at Vienna, applauds his piety and wisdom (de Caesaribus, p. 872, 873).
hold: the expenses of luxury were applied to those of ambition, and a useless train of seven thousand falconers was either dismissed from his service, or enlisted in his troops. In the first summer of his reign, he visited with an army the Asiatic provinces; but after humbling the pride, Mahomet accepted the submission of the Carmanian, that he might not be diverted by the smallest obstacle from the execution of his great design.

The mahometan, and more especially the Turkish, casuists have pronounced that no promise can bind the faithful against the interest and duty of their religion; and that the sultan may abrogate his own treaties and those of his predecessors. The justice and magnanimity of Amurath had scorned this immoral privilege; but his son, though the proudest of men, could stoop from ambition to the basest arts of dissimulation and deceit. Peace was on his lips, while war was in his heart; he incessantly sighed for the possession of Constantinople, and the Greeks, by their own indiscretion, afforded the first pretence of the fatal rupture. Instead of labouring to be for:

---

8 See the accission of Mahomet in Dozin (p. 33), Phocas (p. 1, c. 39, l. iii. c. 3), Chalcedonides t. III, p. 100, and Constant. p. 96.
9 Before I enter on the siege of Constantinople I shall observe, that except the short hints of Constantine and Lulli, I have not been able to obtain any Turkish account of this conquest; such account as we possess of the siege of Rhodes by Salianus (Memorie de l’Académie des Inscriptions, tom. xxv, p. 441-459). I must, therefore, depend on the Greeks, whose prejudices, to some degree, are subdued by their distress. Our standard text is that of Deces (p. 34-42), Phocas (l. iii. c. 7-20), Chalcedonides t. xxi, p. 201-214.
gotten; their ambassadors pursued his camp, to demand the payment, and even the increase, of their annual stipend; the divan was importuned by their complaints, and the vizir, a secret friend of the christians, was constrained to deliver the sense of his brethren. "Ye foolish and miserable Romans," said Culli, "we know your devices, and ye are ignorant of your own danger! the scrupulous Ammuth is no more; his throne is occupied by a young conqueror, whom no laws can bind, and no obstacles can resist; and if you escape from his hands, give praise to the divine clemency, which yet delays the chastisement of your sins. Why do ye seek to affright us by vain and indirect menaces? Release the fugitive Orchan, crown him sultan of Romania; call the Hungarians from beyond the Danube; arm against us the nations of the West; and be assured that you will only provoke and precipitate your ruin." But if the fears of the ambassadors were alarmed by the stern language of the vizir, they were soothed by the courteous audience and friendly speeches of the Ottoman

214), and Leopoldus Chienius (Historia C. P. 2 Turc. exagregator. N. A. a. O. 1445, in quarto, twenty leaves). The text of these narratives is the earliest in date, since it was composed in the Isle of Crete, the 16th of August 1433; only seventy-nine days after the loss of the city, and in the first moments of ideas and passions. Some hints may be added from an epistle of cardinal Ludovico di Fabbrius Berenzi,Turcium, ad colorem Choscocondyl. Gramma, Basil, 1590) to pope Nicholas v., and a tract of Theodoros Zygiomnath, which he addressed in the year 1651 to Martin Grunau (Turco-Graecia, l. i. p. 74-98. Basill, 1584). The various facts and matters are briefly, though critically, reviewed by Spandami (n. s. 1433, No. 1-27). The narrative relations of Monstrelet and the distant Latin, I shall take leave to disregard.
prince; and Mahomet assured them that, on his return to Adrianople, he would redress the grievances, and consult the true interest, of the Greeks. No sooner had he repassed the Hellespont, than he issued a mandate to suppress their pension, and to expel their officers from the banks of the Strymon; in this measure he betrayed an hostile mind; and the second order announced, and in some degree commenced, the siege of Constantinople. In the narrow pass of the Bosphorus, an Asiatic fortress had formerly been raised by his grandfather; in the opposite situation, on the European side, he resolved to erect a more formidable castle; and a thousand masons were commanded to assemble in the spring on a spot named Acoma-ton, about five miles from the Greek metropolis. Persuasion is the resource of the feeble; and the feeble can seldom persuade: the ambassadors of the emperor attempted, without success, to divert Mahomet from the execution of his design. They represented that his grandfather had solicited the permission of Manuel to build a castle on his own territories; but that this double fortification, which would command the strait, could only tend to violate the alliance of the nations; to intercept the Latins who traded in the Black sea, and perhaps to annihilate the subsistence of the city. "I "form no enterprise," replied the perfidious sul-

---

*The situation of the fortress, and the topography of the Bosphorus, are best learnt from Peter Gyllius (de Bosphoro Thracio, 1-II, 8-13); Laun,ermetm (Pandect, p. 443), and Tournai (Voyage dans le Levant, tom. II, letter x, p. 442, 443); but I must regret the map, or plan, which Tournai sent to the French minister of the marines. The reader may turn back to vol. III, chp. 37, of this history.*
tan, against the city; but the empire of Con-
stantinople is measured by her walls. Have
you forgot the distress to which my father was
reduced, when you formed a league with the
Hungarians; when they invaded our country
by land, and the Hellespont was occupied by
the French galleys? Amurath was compelled
to force the passage of the Bosphorus; and
your strength was not equal to your malevo-
ence. I was then a child at Adrianople; the
Moslems trembled; and, for a while, the gu-
bours insulted our disgrace. But when my
father had triumphed in the field of Warna, he
vowed to erect a fort on the western shore, and
that vow it is my duty to accomplish. Have
ye the right, have ye the power, to control
my actions on my own ground? For that
ground is my own; as far as the shores of the
Bosphorus, Asia is inhabited by the Turks, and
Europe is deserted by the Romans. Return,
and inform your king, that the present Otto-
man is far different from his predecessors; that
his resolutions surpass their wishes; and that
he performs more than they could resolve. Re-
turn in safety—but the next who delivers a
similar message may expect to be slain alive." After this declaration, Constantine, the first of

* The opprobrious name which the Turks bestow on the infidel is expressed by<br>dom by</gsub; and in its Gaelic and modern. The former term is derived from Leinster, or the<br>Leinster, as the word is formed in the Greek, a turbe, as denoting a retrades or motions to the left. "But, alas! gahour is no more than<br>gahour, which was transferred from the Persian to the Turkish lan-
language, from the worshipers of the deities of the crusade (of Her-<br>belot, Biblio. Orient. p. 375).
the Greeks in spirit as in rank,* had determined to unsheath the sword, and to resist the approach and establishment of the Turks on the Bosphorus. He was disarmed by the advice of his civil and ecclesiastical ministers, who recommended a system less generous, and even less prudent, than his own, to approve their patience and long-suffering, to brand the Ottoman with the name and guilt of an aggressor, and to depend on chance and time for their own safety, and the destruction of a fort, which could not long be maintained in the neighborhood of a great and populous city. Amidst hope and fear, the fears of the wise and the hopes of the credulous, the winter rolled away; the proper business of each man, and each hour, was postponed; and the Greeks shut their eyes against the impending danger, till the arrival of the spring, and the sultan decided the assurance of their ruin.

Of a master who never forgives, the orders are seldom disobeyed. On the twenty-sixth of March, the appointed spot of Asomston was covered with an active swarm of Turkish artificers; and the materials by sea and land were diligently transported from Europe and Asia. The time had

* Phrasae datas juxtae in his master’s arm and courage. Calebitatem nominis non opus est imperat in armis movere constantiam, et stigmatizare fulci of the sum sum pro- profanum potestas, which he had heard, quoniam ergo voe parat. Deus was not a pray-

* In this close and consistent account, the Turkish Annals (Cammel, p. 97) revived the foolish tale of the ox’s hide, and Dido’s strategem in the foundation of Carthage. These annals (unless we are swayed by an antichristian prejudice) are far less valuable than the Greek historians.
been burnt in Cataphrygia; the timber was cut down in the woods of Heraclea and Nicomedia; and the stones were dug from the Anatolian quarries. Each of the thousand masons was assisted by two workmen; and a measure of two cubits was marked for their daily task. The fortress was built in a triangular form; each angle was flanked by a strong and massy tower; one on the declivity of the hill, two along the sea-shore; a thickness of twenty-two feet was assigned for the walls, thirty for the towers; and the whole building was covered with a solid platform of lead. Mahomet himself pressed and directed the work with indefatigable ardour: his three vizirs claimed the honour of finishing their respective towers; the zeal of the cadhis emulated that of the janizaries; the meanest labour was ennobled by the service of God and the sultan; and the diligence of the multitude was quickened by the eye of a despot, whose smile was the hope of fortune, and whose frown was the messenger of death. The Greek emperor beheld, with terror, the irresistible progress of the work; and vainly strove, by flattery and gifts, to assuage an implacable foe, who sought, and secretly fomented, the slightest occasion of a quarrel. Such occasions must soon and inevitably be found. The ruins of stately churches, and even the marble columns which had been consecrated to St. Michael the archangel,
were employed without scruple by the profane and rapacious Moslems; and some Christians, who presumed to oppose the removal, received from their hands the crown of martyrdom. Constantine had solicited a Turkish guard to protect the fields and harvests of his subjects; the guard was fixed; but their first order was to allow free pasture to the mules and horses of the camp, and to defend their brethren if they should be molested by the natives. The retinue of an Ottoman chief had left their horses to pass the night among the ripe corn; the damage was felt; the insult was resented; and several of both nations were slain in a tumultuous conflict. Mahomet listened with joy to the complaint; and a detachment was commanded to exterminate the guilty village; the guilty had fled; but forty innocent and unsuspecting reapers were massacred by the soldiers. Till this provocation, Constantinople had been open to the visits of commerce and curiosity; on the first alarm, the gates were shut; but the emperor, still anxious for peace, released on the third day his Turkish captives; and expressed, in a last message, the firm resignation of a Christian and a soldier: *Since neither oath, nor treaty, nor submission, can secure peace, pursue,* said he to Mahomet, *your impious warfare. My trust is in God alone; if it should please him to mollify your heart, I shall rejoice in the happy change; if he delivers*

*Among these were some pages of Mahomet, so conscious of his inescapable rigour, that they begged to lose their heads in the city unless they could return before sunset.*

Vol. XII.
the city into your hands, I submit without a
murmur to his holy will. But until the Judge
of the earth shall pronounce between us, it is
my duty to live and die in the defence of my
people." The sultan's answer was hostile and
decisive: his fortifications were completed; and
before his departure for Adrianople, he stationed
a vigilant Aga and four hundred janizaries to
levy a tribute of the ships of every nation that
should pass within the reach of their cannon. A
Venetian vessel, refusing obedience to the new
lords of the Bosphorus, was sunk with a single
bullet. The master and thirty sailors escaped in
the boat; but they were dropped in chains to the
porte: the chief was impaled; his companions
were beheaded; and the historian Ducis beheld,
at Demotica, their bodies exposed to the wild
beasts. The siege of Constantinople was deferred
till the coming spring; but an Ottoman army
marched into the Morea to divert the force of the
brothers of Constantine. At this era of calamity,
one of these princes, the despot Thomas, was
blessed or afflicted with the birth of a son; "the
last heir," says the plaintive Phraeza, "of the
last spark of the Roman empire."

The Greeks and the Turks passed an anxious
and sleepless winter; the former were kept awake
by their fears, the latter by their hopes; both by

1 Ducaz. c. 25. Phraeza p. 16, c. 8, who but smiled in his seat,
commemorates the Venetian poet as a martyr.

2 Anacreon et Palamogora propria, or special successor, particular.
Dumaurier et Bellone vera nimit, andante, &c. (Phraeza. c. 16, c. 7.)
The strong expression was inspired by his feelings.
the preparations of defence and attack; and the two emperors, who had the most to lose or to gain, were the most deeply affected by the national sentiment. In Mahomet, that sentiment was inflamed by the ambition of his youth and temper; he amased his leisure with building at Adrianople, the lofty palace of Jehan Numa (the watchtower of the world); but his serious thoughts were irresistibly bent on the conquest of the city of Caesar. At the dead of night, about the second watch, he started from his bed, and commanded the instant attendance of his prime vizir. The message, the hour, the prince, and his own situation, alarmed the guilty conscience of Calil Basha; who had possessed the confidence, and advised the restoration, of Amurath. On the accession of the son, the vizir was confirmed in his office and the appearances of favour; but the veteran statesman was not insensible that he trode on a thin and slippery ice, which might break under his footsteps, and plunge him in the abyss. His friendship for the christians, which might be innocent under the late reign, had stigmatised him with the name of Gahour Ortachi, or foster-brother of the infidels; and his avarice entertained a venal and treasonable correspondence, which was detected and punished after the con-

* Comment. p. 31, 32. The sultan was either doubtful of his conquest, or ignorant of the superior merits of Constantine — A city or kingdom may sometimes be ruined by the imperial furies of their monarch.

* Tschacher, by the president Costini, is translated from the Latin version; but in his notes, he has acknowledged the error by which Isaac Bolland and Ducrée, p. 35, acknowledges and rectifies his own error.
clusion of the war. On receiving the royal mandate, he embraced, perhaps for the last time, his wife and children; filled a cup with pieces of gold, hastened to the palace, adored the sultan, and offered, according to the Oriental custom, the slight tribute of his duty and gratitude. "It is not my wish," said Mahomet, "to resume my gifts, but rather to heap and multiply them on thy head. In my turn I ask a present far more valuable and important.—Constantinople." As soon as the vizir had recovered from his surprise, "the same God," said he, "who has already given thee so large a portion of the Roman empire, will not deny the remnant, and the capital. His providence, and thy power, assure thy success; and myself, with the rest of thy faithful slaves, will sacrifice our lives and fortunes." "Lalla," (or perceptor), continued the sultan, "do you see this pillow? all the night, in my agitation, I have pulled it on one side and on the other; I have risen from my bed, again have lain down; yet sleep has not visited these weary eyes. Beware of the gold and silver of the Romans: in arms we

2 The Oriental custom of never appearing without gifts before a sovereign or a superior is of high antiquity, and seems analogous with the idea of sacrifice, still more ancient and universal. See the examples of such Persian gifts, Elitter. Hist. Var. i. i. c. 31, 32, 33.

3 The Lala of the Turk (Camaier, p. 34), and the Tale of the Greeks (Dema, c. 35), are derived from the natural language of children; and it may be observed, that all such primitive words which denote their parents, are the simple repetition of one syllable, composed of a lateral or dorsal consonant and an open vowel (the Brothers Mec- chanisme des Langues, tom. i, p. 211-247).
are superior; and with the aid of God, and the prayers of the prophet, we shall speedily become masters of Constantinople." To sound the disposition of his soldiers, he often wandered through the streets alone, and in disguise; and it was fatal to discover the sultan, when he wished to escape from the vulgar eye. His hours were spent in delineating the plan of the hostile city; in debating with his generals and engineers on what spot he should erect his batteries: on which side he should assault the walls: where he should spring his mines: to what place he should apply his scaling-ladders: and the exercises of the day repeated and proved the incubulations of the night.

Among the implements of destruction, he studied with peculiar care the recent and tremendous discovery of the Latins: and his artillery surpassed whatever had yet appeared in the world. A founder of cannon, a Dane or Hungarian, who had been almost starved in the Greek service, deserted to the Moslems, and was liberally entertained by the Turkish sultan. Mahomet was satisfied with the answer to his first question, which he eagerly pressed on the artist. "Am I able to cast a cannon capable of throwing a ball or stone of sufficient size to batter the walls of Constantinople?" "I am not ignorant of their strength; but were they more solid than those of Babylon, I could oppose an engine of superior power: the position and management of that engine must be left to your engineers." On this assurance, a foundry was established at Adrianople: the metal was prepared; and at the
end of three months, Urban produced a piece of brass ordnance of stupendous, and almost incredible, magnitude: a measure of twelve palms is assigned to the bore; and the stone bullet weighed above six hundred pounds. A vacant place before the new palace was chosen for the first experiment; but to prevent the sudden and mischievous effects of astonishment and fear, a proclamation was issued, that the cannon would be discharged the ensuing day. The explosion was felt or heard in a circuit of an hundred furlongs; the ball, by the force of gunpowder, was driven above a mile; and on the spot where it fell, it buried itself a fathom deep in the ground. For the conveyance of this destructive engine, a frame or carriage of thirty waggons was linked together, and drawn along by a team of sixty oxen: two hundred men on both sides were stationed to pulse or support the rolling weight; two hundred and fifty workmen marched before to smooth the way and repair the bridges; and near two months were employed in a laborious journey of one hundred and fifty miles. A lively philosopher declares on this occasion the credulity of the Greeks, and observes, with much reason,
that we should always distrust the exaggerations of a vanquished people. He calculates, that a ball, even of two hundred pounds, would require a charge of one hundred and fifty pounds of powder; and that the stroke would be feeble and impotent, since not a fiftieth part of the mass could be inflamed at the same moment. A stranger as I am to the art of destruction, I can discern that the modern improvements of artillery prefer the number of pieces to the weight of metal; the quickness of the fire to the sound; or even the consequence of a single explosion. Yet I dare not reject the positive and unanimous evidence of contemporary writers; nor can it seem improbable, that the first artists, in their rude and ambitious efforts, should have transgressed the standard of moderation. A Turkish cannon, more enormous than that of Mahomet, still guards the entrance of the Dardanelles; and if the use be inconvenient, it has been found on a late trial that the effect was far from contemptible. A stone bullet of eleven hundred pounds weight was once discharged with three hundred and thirty pounds of powder; at the distance of six hundred yards, it shivered into three rocky fragments, traversed the strait, and leaving the waters in a foam, again rose and bounded against the opposite hill.  

* The Baron de Tott (tom. iii. p. 83-69), who fortified the Dardanelles against the Russians, describes in a lively, and affectionate strain, his own presence, and the consternation of the Turks. But this enthusiastic traveller does not possess the art of gaining our confidence.
While Mahomet threatened the capital of the East, the Greek emperor implored with fervent prayers the assistance of earth and heaven. But the invisible powers were deaf to his supplications; and Christendom beheld with indifference the fall of Constantinople, while she derived at least some promise of supply from the jealous and temporal policy of the sultan of Egypt. Some states were too weak, and others too remote; by some the danger was considered as imaginary, by others as inevitable; the Western princes were involved in their endless and domestic quarrels; and the Roman pontiff was exasperated by the falsehood or obstinacy of the Greeks. Instead of employing in their favour the arms and treasures of Italy, Nicholas the fifth had foretold their approaching ruin; and his honour was engaged in the accomplishment of his prophecy. Perhaps he was softened by the last extremity of their distress; but his compassion was tardy; his efforts were faint and unavailing; and Constantinople had fallen, before the squadrons of Genoa and Venice could sail from their harbours. Even the princes of the Morea and of the Greek islands affected a cold neutrality; the Genoese colony of Galatia negotiated a private treaty; and the sultan indulged them in the delusive hope, that by his clemency they might survive the ruin of the em-

---

4 Non ulterius, indignum duxit, says the Pope Alexander; but as the Roman court was afterwards grieved and ashamed, we find the more earnest expression of Piatina, in mimo-fuimus postibi jusse Graecos, et domino nostrum sytema, stratum, a ev (Spond. L. a. 1465, No. 3).
plire. A plebeian crowd, and some Byzantine nobles, basely withdrew from the danger of their country; and the avarice of the rich denied the emperor, and reserved for the Turks, the secret treasures which might have raised in their defence whole armies of mercenaries. The indigent and solitary prince prepared however to sustain his formidable adversary; but, if his courage were equal to the peril, his strength was inadequate to the contest. In the beginning of the spring, the Turkish vanguard swept the towns and villages as far as the gates of Constantinople; submission was spared and protected: whatever presumed to resist was exterminated with fire and sword. The Greek places on the Black sea, Mesembria, Acheloum, and Bizon, surrendered on the first summons; Selybria alone deserved the honours of a siege or blockade; and the bold inhabitants, while they were invested by land, launched their boats, pillaged the opposite coast of Cyzicus, and sold their captives in the public market. But on the approach of Mahomet himself all was silent and prostrate: he first halted at the distance of five miles; and from thence advancing in battle array, planted before the gate of St. Romanus the imperial standard; and, on the sixth

---

Line 28: "and the avarice of the rich denied the emperor, and reserved for the Turks, the secret treasures which might have raised in their defence whole armies of mercenaries." This line is a direct quotation from Tacitus' "Germania." The passage describes the Roman emperor's reluctance to share his wealth with his subjects, which contributed to the eventual defeat of the empire.

---

Line 69: "The pious Greeks dig up the golden extermes," This line is a reference to the Greek tradition of building ships with gold and jewels, which was believed to bring them good fortune in battle.

---

Line 71: "The accumulated wealth of hoarding ages;" This line refers to the vast wealth that the Greeks had accumulated over generations, which was used to create ships and fortifications.

---

Line 72: "That wealth which, granted to their warring galleys, Had ranged untainted nations at their gates." This line describes how the accumulated wealth of the Greeks was used to create ships that could withstand attack, protecting them from invading nations.
day of April, formed the memorable siege of Constantinople.

The troops of Asia and Europe extended on the right and left from the Propontis to the harbour; the janizaries in the front were stationed before the sultan's tent; the Ottoman line was covered by a deep entrenchment; and a subordinate army inclosed the suburb of Galata, and watched the doubtful faith of the Genoese. The inquisitive Philoppos, who resided in Greece about thirty years before the siege, is confident, that all the Turkish forces, of any name or value, could not exceed the number of sixty thousand horse and twenty thousand foot; and he upbraids the pusillanimity of the nations, who had tamely yielded to a handful of barbarians. Such indeed might be the regular establishment of the capica, the troops of the porto, who marched with the prince, and were paid from his royal treasury. But the bashaws, in their respective governments, maintained or levied a provincial militia; many lands were held by a military tenure; many volunteers were attracted by the hope of spoil; and the sound of the holy trumpet invited a swarm of hungry and fearless fanatics, who might contribute at least to multiply the terrors, and in a first attack to blunt the swords, of the christians. The whole mass of the Turkish powers is magnified by

*The Clinton troops are styled Capica, the provincial, Jerazzal; and most of the names and institutions of the Turkish militia existed before the Catsu Noual of Suliman II. from which and his own experience, Musta Marigh has composed his military state of the Ottoman empire.*
Of the Roman Empire.

Ducas, Charlecodynamics, and Leonard of Chios, to the amount of three or four hundred thousand men; but Phranza was a more remote and more accurate judge; and his precise definition of two hundred and fifty-eight thousand does not exceed the measure of experience and probability. The navy of the besiegers was less formidable; the Proponent was overspread with three hundred and twenty sail; but of these no more than eighteen could be rated as galleys of war; and the far greater part must be degraded to the condition of store-ships and transports, which poured into the camp fresh supplies of men, ammunition, and provisions. In her last decay, Constantinople was still peopled with more than an hundred thousand inhabitants; but these numbers are found in the accounts, not of war, but of captivity; and they mostly consisted of mechanics, of priests, of women, and of men devoid of that spirit which even women have sometimes exerted for the common safety. I can suppose, I could almost excuse, the reluctance of subjects to serve on a distant frontier, at the will of a tyrant; but the man who dares not expose his life in the defence of his children and his property has lost in society the first and most active energies of nature. By the emperor's command, a particular inquiry had been made through the streets and houses, how...

*The observation of Philopon is approved by Chrestien in the year 1896 in Canardia, in Epilog. de Matt. Turkey, p. 287. Moret has shown that the effective number of the Turks are much less numerous than they appear. In the army that besieged Constantinople, Leonardus Chiosianus reckons not more than 18,000 janissaries,
many of the citizens, or even of the monks, were able and willing to bear arms for their country. The lists were intrusted to Phranza; and, after a diligent addition, he informed his master, with grief and surprise, that the national defence was reduced to four thousand nine hundred and seventy Romans. Between Constantine and his faithful minister, this comfortless secret was preserved; and a sufficient proportion of shields, cross-bows, and muskets, was distributed from the arsenal to the city bands. They derived some accession from a body of two thousand strangers, under the command of John Justiniani, a noble Genoese: a liberal donation was advanced to these auxiliaries; and a princely recompence, the isle of Lemnos, was promised to the valour and victory of their chief. A strong chain was drawn across the mouth of the harbour: it was supported by some Greek and Italian vessels of war and merchandise; and the ships of every Christian nation, that successively arrived from Candia and the Black sea, were detained for the public service. Against the powers of the Ottoman empire, a city of the extent of thirteen, perhaps of sixteen, miles was defended by a scanty garrison of seven or eight thousand soldiers. Europe and Asia were open to the besiegers; but the strength and provisions of the
Greeks must sustain a daily decrease; nor could they indulge the expectation of any foreign succour or supply.

The primitive Romans would have drawn their swords in the resolution of death or conquest. The primitive Christians might have embraced each other, and awaited in patience and charity the stroke of martyrdom; but the Greeks of Constantinople were animated only by the spirit of religion, and that spirit was productive only of animosity and discord. Before his death, the emperor John Palæologus had renounced the unpopular measure of an union with the Latins; nor was the idea revived, till the distress of his brother Constantine imposed a last trial of flattery and dissimulation. With the demand of temporal aid, his ambassadors were instructed to mingle the assurance of spiritual obedience: his neglect of the church was excused by the urgent cares of the state; and his orthodox wishes solicited the presence of a Roman legate. The Vatican had been too often deluded; yet the signs of repentance could not decently be overlooked; a legate was more easily granted than an army; and about six months before the final destruction, the cardinal Isidore of Russia appeared in that character with a retinue of priests and soldiers. The emperor saluted him as a friend and father; respectfully listened to his public and private ser-
mons; and with the most obsequious of the clergy and laymen subscribed the act of union, as it had been ratified in the council of Florence. On the twelfth of December, the two nations, in the church of St. Sophia, joined in the communion of sacrifice and prayer; and the names of the two pontiffs were solemnly commemorated; the names of Nicholas the fifth, the vicar of Christ, and of the patriarch Gregory, who had been driven into exile by a rebellious people.

But the dress and language of the Latin priest who officiated at the altar were an object of scandal; and it was observed with horror, that he consecrated a cake or wafer of unleavened bread, and poured cold water into the cup of the sacrament. A national historian acknowledges with a blush, that none of his countrymen, not the emperor himself, were sincere in this occasional conformity. Their hasty and unconditional submission was palliated by a promise of future revival; but the best, or the worst, of their excuses was the confession of their own perjury. When they were pressed by the reproaches of their honest brethren, "Have patience," they whispered, "have patience till God shall have delivered the city from the great dragon who seeks to devour us. You shall then perceive whether we are truly reconciled with the Ayzmites." But patience is not the attribute of

*Pharrus, one of the conforming Greeks, acknowledges that the measure was adopted only under imperious necessity. He adheres with pleasure, that those who refused to perform their devotions in St. Sophia, were expelled to the place annexed 0. iii. c. 20.*
real; nor can the arts of a court be adapted to the freedom and violence of popular enthusiasm. From the dome of St. Sophia the inhabitants of either sex, and of every degree, rushed in crowds to the cell of the monk Gennadius, to consult the oracle of the church. The holy man was invisible; entranced, as it should seem, in deep meditation or divine rapture; but he had exposed on the door of his cell a speaking tablet; and they successively withdrew, after reading these tremendous words: "O miserable Romans, why will ye abandon the truth; and why, instead of confiding in God, will ye put your trust in the Italians? In losing your faith, you will lose your city. Have mercy on me, O Lord! I protest in thy presence, that I am innocent of the crime. O miserable Romans; consider, pause, and repent. At the same moment that you renounce the religion of your fathers, by embracing impiety, you submit to a foreign servitude." According to the advice of Gennadius, the religious virgin, as pure as angels, and as proud as the sons, rejected the act of union, and abjured all communion with the present and future associates of the Latins; and their example was applauded and imitated by the greatest part...
of the clergy and people. From the monastery, the devout Greeks dispersed themselves in the taverns; drank confusion to the slaves of the Pope; emptied their glasses in honour of the image of the holy Virgin; and besought her to defend against Mahomet, the city which she had formerly saved from Chosroes and the Chagan. In the double intoxication of zeal and wine, they valiantly exclaimed, "What occasion have we for succour, or union, or Latins? far from us be the worship of the Azymites!" During the winter that preceded the Turkish conquest, the nation was distracted by this epidemical frenzy; and the season of Lent, the approach of Easter, instead of breathing charity and love, served only to fortify the obstinacy and influence of the zealots. The confessors scrutinized and alarmed the conscience of their votaries, and a rigorous penance was imposed on those who had received the communion from a priest, who had given an express or tacit consent to the union. His service at the altar propagated the infection to the multitude and simple spectators of the ceremony; they forsook it, by the impure spectacle, the virtue of the sacerdotal character; nor was it lawful, even in danger of sudden death, to invoke the assistance of their prayers or absolution. No sooner had the church of St. Sophia been polluted by the Latin sacrifice, than it was deserted as a Jewish synagogue, or an heathen temple, by the clergy and people; and a vast and gloomy silence prevailed in that venerable dome, which had so often smoked with a cloud of incense, blazed with in-
numerable lights, and resounded with the voice of prayer and thanksgiving. The Latins were the most odious of heretics and infidels; and the first minister of the empire, the great duke, was heard to declare, that he had rather behold in Constantinople the turban of Mahomet, than the pope's tiara or a cardinal's hat. A sentiment so unworthy of christians and patriots, was familiar and fatal to the Greeks: the emperor was deprived of the affection and support of his subjects; and their native cowardice was sanctified by resignation to the divine decree, or the visionary hope of a miraculous deliverance.

Of the triangle which composed the figure of Constantinople, the two sides along the sea were made inaccessible to an enemy; the Propontis by nature, and the harbour by art. Between the two waters, the basis of the triangle, the land side was protected by a double wall, and a deep ditch of the depth of one hundred feet. Against this line of fortification, which Phraunza, an eye-witness, prolongs to the measure of six miles, the Ottomans directed their principal attack; and the emperor, after distributing the service and command of the most perilous stations, undertook the defence of the external wall. In the first days of the siege, the Greek soldiers descended into the

---

*passato, afterwards, may be fairly translated, a cardinal's hat. The difference of the Greek and Latin habits embellished the oration.

* We are obliged to reduce the Greek miles to the smallest measure which is preserved in the works of Russia, of 317 French hours, and of 104 three-dviths to a degree. The six miles of Phraunza do not exceed four English miles (d'Anville, Mesures Itinéraires, p. 81-125, 40).

VOL. XII.
ditch, or called into the field; but they soon discovered that, in the proportion of their numbers, one Christian was of more value than twenty Turks; and, after these bold preludes, they were prudently content to maintain the rampart with their missile weapons. Nor should this prudence be accused of pusillanimity. The nation was indeed pusillanimous and base; but the last Constantine deserves the name of a hero: his noble band of volunteers was inspired with Roman virtue; and the foreign auxiliaries supported the honour of the Western chivalry. The incessant volleys of lances and arrows were accompanied with the smoke, the sound, and the fire of their musketry and cannon. Their small arms discharged at the same time either five, or even ten, balls of lead, of the size of a walnut; and, according to the closeness of the ranks and the force of the powder, several breastplates and bodies were transfixed by the same shot. But the Turkish approaches were soon sunk in trenches, or covered with ruins. Each day added to the science of the Christians; but their inadequate stock of gunpowder was wasted in the operations of each day. Their ordnance was not powerful, either in size or number; and if they possessed some heavy cannon, they feared to plant them on the walls, lest the aged structure should be shaken and overthrown by the explosion. The same destructive...
secret had been revealed to the Moslems; by whom it was employed with the superiorenery of zeal, riches, and despotism. The great cannon of Mahomet has been separately noticed; an important and visible object in the history of the times; but that enormous engine was flanked by two fellows almost of equal magnitude; the long order of the Turkish artillery was pointed against the walls: fourteen batteries thundered at once on the most accessible places; and of one of these it is ambiguously expressed, that it was mounted with one hundred and thirty guns, or that it discharged one hundred and thirty bullets. Yet, in the power and activity of the sultan, we may discern the infancy of the new science. Under a master who counted the moments, the great cannon could be loaded and fired no more than seven times in one day. The heated metal unfortunately burst; several workmen were destroyed; and the skill of an artist was admired who thought himself of preventing the danger and the accident, by pouring oil, after each explosion, into the mouth of the cannon.
The first random shots were productive of more sound than effect; and it was by the advice of a christian, that the engineers were taught to level their aim against the two opposite sides of the salient angles of a bastion. However imperfect, the weight and repetition of the fire made some impression on the walls; and the Turks, pushing their approaches to the edge of the ditch, attempted to fill the enormous chasm, and to build a road, to the assault. Innumerable fascines, and hogsheads, and trunks of trees, were heaped on each other; and such was the impetuosity of the throng, that the foremost and the weakest were pushed headlong down the precipice, and instantly buried under the accumulated mass. To fill the ditch was the toil of the besiegers; to clear away the rubbish was the safety of the besieged; and, after a long and bloody conflict, the web that had been woven in the day was still unravelled in the night. The next resource of Muhamet was the practice of mines; but the soil was rocky; in every attempt, he was stopped and undermined by the christian engineers; nor had the art been yet invented of replenishing those subterraneous passages with gunpowder, and blowing whole towers and cities into the air. A circumstance that dis-
tinguishes the siege of Constantinople, is the reunion of the ancient and modern artillery. The cannon were intermingled with the mechanical engines for casting stones and darts; the bullet and the battering-ram were directed against the same walls; nor had the discovery of gunpowder superseded the use of the liquid and unextinguishable fire. A wooden turret of the largest size was advanced on rollers; this portable magazine of ammunition and fascines was protected by a three-fold covering of bull's hides; incessant volleys were securely discharged from the loop-holes; in the front, three doors were contrived for the alternate sally and retreat of the soldiers and workmen. They ascended by a stair-case to the upper platform, and as high as the level of that platform, a scaling-ladder could be raised by pulleys to form a bridge, and grapple with the adverse rampart. By these various arts of annoyance, some as new as they were pernicious to the Greeks; the tower of St. Romanus was at length overthrown: after a severe struggle, the Turks were repulsed from the breach, and interrupted by darkness; but they trusted, that with the return of light they should renew the attack with fresh vigour and decisive success. Of this pause of action, this interval of hope, each moment was improved by the activity of the emperor and Justinian, who passed the night on the spot, and

were first practiced at Saranzella, in 1187; but the humane and improvements, in 1609, is ascribed to Pierre de Navarre, who used them with success in the wars of Italy (Hist. de la Ligue de Cambrai, tom. ii. p. 53-57).
urged the labours which involved the safety of the church and city. At the dawn of day, the impatient sultan perceived, with astonishment and grief, that his wooden turret had been reduced to ashes; the ditch was cleared and restored; and the tower of St. Romanus was again strong and entire. He deplored the failure of his design, and uttered a profane exclamation, that the word of the thirty-seven thousand prophets should not have compelled him to believe that such a work, in so short a time, could have been accomplished by the infidels.

The generosity of the Christian princes was cold and tardy; but in the first apprehension of a siege, Constantine had negotiated, in the isles of the Archipelago, the Morea, and Sicily, the most indispensable supplies. As early as the beginning of April, five great ships, equipped for merchandise and war, would have sailed from the harbour of Chios, had not the wind blown obstinately from the north. One of these ships bore the imperial flag; the remaining four belonged to the Genoese; and they were laden with wheat and barley, with wine, oil, and vegetables, and, above all, with soldiers and mariners, for the service of

1. It is singular that the Greeks should not agree in the number of three illustrious vessels, the sea of Darius, the sea of Phoebus and Leonidas, and the sea of Chrysostomus, must be extended to the smaller, or confined to larger, also. Voltaire, in giving one of these ships to Frederick II., confounds the emperors of the East and West.

2. In bold defiance, or rather in gross ignorance, of languages and geography, the presiding Council detained them at Chios with a south, and sails them to Constantinople with a north wind.
the capital. After a tedious delay, a gentle breeze, and, on the second day, a strong gale from the south, carried them through the Hellespont and the Propontis; but the city was already invested by sea and land; and the Turkish fleet, at the entrance of the Bosphorus, was stretched from shore to shore, in the form of a crescent, to intercept, or at least to repel, these bold auxiliaries. The reader, who has present to his mind the geographical picture of Constantinople, will conceive and admire the greatness of the spectacle. The five Christian ships continued to advance with joyful shouts, and a full press both of sails and oars, against the hostile fleet of three hundred vessels; and the rampart, the camp, the coasts of Europe and Asia, were lined with innumerable spectators, who anxiously awaited the event of this momentous succour. At the first view that event could not appear doubtful: the superiority of the Moslems was beyond all measure or account; and, in a calm, their numbers and valor must inevitably have prevailed. But their hasty and imperfect move had been created, not by the genius of the people, but by the will of the sultan; in the height of their prosperity, the Turks have acknowledged, that if God had given them the earth, he had left the sea to the infidels; and a series of defeats, a rapid progress of decay, has established the truth

* The perpetual decay and weakness of the Turkish army, may be observed in Byron (State of the Ottoman Empire, p. 313-318) and Thucydides (Olympia, p. 4, p. 229-242); and Tocque (Mémoires, tom. iii.) the last of whom is always ready to accuse and expose his readers,
of their modest confession. Except eighteen galleys of some force, the rest of their fleet consisted of open boats, rudely constructed and awkwardly managed, crowded with troops, and destitute of cannon; and since courage arises in a great measure from the consciousness of strength, the bravest of the janizaries might tremble on a new element. In the Christian squadron, five stout and lofty ships were guided by skilful pilots, and manned with the veterans of Italy and Greece, long practised in the arts and perils of the sea. Their weight was directed to sink or scatter the weak obstacles that impeded their passage: their artillery swept the waters: their liquid fire was poured on the heads of their adversaries, who, with the design of boarding, presumed to approach them; and the winds and waves are always on the side of the ablest navigators. In this conflict, the imperial vessel, which had been almost overpowered, was rescued by the Genoese; but the Turks, in a distant and closer attack, were twice repulsed with considerable loss. Mahomet himself sat on horseback on the beach, to encourage their valour by his voice and presence, by the promise of reward, and by fear, more potent than the fear of the enemy. The passions of his soul, and even the gestures of his body, seemed to imitate the actions of the combatants; and, as if he had been the lord of nature, he spurred his horse with a fearless and impotent effort into

7 I must confess, that I have before my eyes the living picture which Thurydides (l. vii. & 71) has drawn of the passions and gestures of the Athenians in a naval engagement in the great harbour of Syracuse.
the sea. His loud reproaches, and the clamours of the camp, urged the Ottomans to a third attack, more fatal and bloody than the two former; and I must repeat, though I cannot credit, the evidence of Phranza, who affirms from their own mouth, that they lost above twelve thousand men in the slaughter of the day. They fled in disorder to the shores of Europe and Asia, while the Christian squadron, triumphant and unhurt, steered along the Bosporus, and securely anchored within the chain of the harbour. In the confidence of victory, they boasted that the whole Turkish power must have yielded to their arms; but the admiral, or captain bashaw, found some consolation for a painful wound in his eye, by representing that accident as the cause of his defeat. Baltina Ogli was a renegade of the race of the Bulgarian princes; his military character was tainted with the unpopular vice of avarice; and under the despotism of the prince or people, misfortune is a sufficient evidence of guilt. His rank and services were annihilated by the displeasure of Mahomet. In the royal presence, the captain bashaw was extended on the ground by four slaves, and received one hundred strokes with a golden rod: his death had been pronounced; and he adored the clemency of the sultan, who was satisfied with the milder punishment of confiscation and exile. The introduction of this supply revived the hopes of

*According to the exaggerated or corrupt text of Dume (c. 38), this golden rod was of the enormous and inestimable weight of 300 libras, or six pounds. Boulainvill's reading of 300 ducatins, or five pounds, is sufficient to exercise the arm of Mahomet, and bruise the back of his admiral.*
the Greeks, and accused the supineness of their Western allies. Amidst the deserts of Anatolia and the rocks of Palestine, the millions of the crusades had buried themselves in a voluntary and inevitable grave; but the situation of the imperial city was strong against her enemies, and accessible to her friends; and a rational and moderate armament of the maritime states might have saved the relics of the Roman name, and maintained a Christian fortress in the heart of the Ottoman empire. Yet this was the sole and feeble attempt for the deliverance of Constantinople; the more distant powers were insensible of its danger; and the ambassador of Hungary, or at least of Huniades, resided in the Turkish camp, to remove the fears, and to direct the operations of the sultan.*

It was difficult for the Greeks to penetrate the secret of the divan; yet the Greeks are persuaded, that a resistance, so obstinate and surprising, had fatigued the perseverance of Mahomet. He began to meditate a retreat, and the siege would have been speedily raised, if the ambition and jealousy of the second vizir had not opposed the perfidious advice of Calil Bashaw, who still maintained a secret correspondence with the Byzantine court. The reduction of the city appeared to be hopeless, unless a double attack could be made from the harbour as well as from the land; but the harbour

* "Duret, who concludes himself (informed of the affairs of Hungary, against a motive of superstition, a fatal belief that Constantinople would be the term of the Turkish conquests. See Pococke (i. ii., c. 70) and Spedanus,"
was inaccessible; an impregnable chain was now defended by eight large ships, more than twenty of a smaller size, with several galleys and sloops; and, instead of forcing this barrier, the Turks might approach a naval sally, and a second encounter in the open sea. In this perplexity, the genius of Mahomet conceived and executed a plan of a bold and marvellous cast, of transporting by land his lighter vessels and military stores from the Bosphorus into the higher part of the harbour. The distance is about ten miles; the ground is uneven, and was overspread with thickets; and, as the road must be opened behind the suburb of Galata, their free passage or total destruction must depend on the option of the Genoese. But these selfish merchants were ambitious of the favour of being the last devoured: and the deficiency of art was supplied by the strength of obedient myriads. A level way was covered with a broad platform of strong and solid planks; and to render them more slippery and smooth, they were anointed with the fat of sheep and oxen. Fourscore light galleys and brigantines of fifty and thirty oars, were disembarked on the Bosphorus shore; arranged successively on rollers; and drawn forwards by the force of men and pulleys. Two guides or pilots were stationed at the helm, and the prow, of each vessel; the sails were unfurled to the winds; and the labour was cheered by song and acclamation. In the course of a single night, this Turkish fleet painfully climbed the hill, steered over the plain, and was launched from the declivity into the shallow waters of the
harbour, far above the molestation of the deeper vessels of the Greeks. The real importance of this operation was magnified by the consternation and confidence which it inspired: but the notorious, unquestionable fact was displayed before the eyes, and is recorded by the pens of the two nations. A similar stratagem had been repeatedly practised by the ancients: the Ottoman galleys (I most again repeat) should be considered as large boats; and, if we compare the magnitude and the distance, the obstacles and the means, the boasted miracle has perhaps been equalled by the industry of our own times. As soon as Mahomet had occupied the upper harbour with a fleet and army, he constructed, in the narrowest part, a bridge, or rather mole, of fifty cubits in breadth, and one hundred in length: it was formed of casks and hogsheads, joined with rafters linked with iron, and covered with a solid floor. On this floating battery, he planted one of his largest cannon, while the fourscore galleys, with troops

---

* The unanimous testimony of the four Greeks is confirmed by Constantine, *De turc.,* book the Turkish annals; but I could wish to contrast the distance of six miles, and in proving the term of one night.

* Plutarch relates two examples of a similar transportation over the six miles of the column of Corinth: the one fabulous; or Augustus after the battle of Actium; the other true. of Naussa, a Greek general in the tenth century. To these he might have added a bold enterprise of Hamachal, to introduce his soldiers into the harbour of Tarentum (Polyb., i. 85, p. 740. ed. Gr. C.)

* A Greek of Campania, who had served the Venetians in a similar undertaking (Sped., a. a. 1476, No. 37), might possibly be the advice and agent of Mahomet.

* I particularly allude to our own embarkations on the lakes of Canada in the years 1776 and 1777, so great in the labour, so fructuous in the event.
and scaling-ladders, approached the most accessible side, which had formerly been storm'd by the Latin conquerors. The indolence of the christians has been accused for not destroying these unfinished works; but their fire, by a superior fire, was controlled and silenced; nor were they wanting in a nocturnal attempt to burn the vessels as well as the bridge of the sultan. His vigilance prevented their approach; the foremost galloirs were sunk or taken: forty youths, the bravest of Italy and Greece, were inhumanly massacred at his command; nor could the emperor's grief be assuaged by the just though cruel retaliation, of exposing from the walls the heads of two hundred and sixty mussulman captives. After a siege of forty days, the fate of Constantinople could no longer be averted. The diminutive garrison was exhausted by a double attack; the fortifications, which had stood for ages against hostile violence, were dismantled on all sides by the Ottoman cannon; many breaches were opened; and near the gate of St. Romanus, four towers had been levelled with the ground. For the payment of his feeble and mutinous troops, Constantine was compelled to despoil the churches, with the promise of a fourfold restitution; and his sacrilege offered a new reproach to the enemies of the union. A spirit of discord impaired the remnant of the christian strength; the Genoese and Venetian auxiliaries asserted the pre-eminence of their respective service; and Justinian, the great duke, whose ambition was not extinguished by the common danger, accused each other of treachery and cowardice.
During the siege of Constantinople, the words of peace and capitulation had been sometimes pronounced; and several embassies had passed between the camp and the city. The Greek emperor was humbled by adversity; and would have yielded to any terms compatible with religion and royalty. The Turkish sultan was desirous of sparing the blood of his soldiers; still more desirous of securing for his own use the Byzantine treasures; and he accomplished a sacred duty in presenting to the galleons, the choice of circumcision, of tribute, or of death. The avarice of Mahomet might have been satisfied with an annual sum of one hundred thousand ducats; but his ambition grasped the capital of the East: to the prince he offered a rich equivalent, to the people a free toleration, or a safe departure; but after some fruitless treaty, he declared his resolution of finding either a throne, or a grave, under the walls of Constantinople. A sense of honour, and the fear of universal reproach, forbade Palæologus to resign the city into the hands of the Ottomans; and he determined to abide the last extremities of war. Several days were employed by the sultan in the preparations of the assault; and a respite was granted by his favourite science of astrology, which had fixed on the twenty-ninth of May, as the fortunate and fatal hour. On the evening of the twenty-seventh, he issued his final orders; assembled in his presence the military

7 Chalcocyclina and Duns differ in the time and circumstances of the negotiations; and as it was neither glorious nor salutary, the faithful Pharamaz spared his prince even the thought of a surrender.
chiefs; and dispersed his heralds through the camp to proclaim the duty, and the motives, of the perilous enterprise. Fear is the first principle of a despotic government; and his menaces were expressed in the Oriental style, that the fugitives and deserters, had they the wings of a bird, should not escape from his inexorable justice. The greatest part of his bashaws and janizaries were the offspring of Christian parents; but the glories of the Turkish name were perpetuated by successive adoption; and in the gradual change of individuals, the spirit of a legion, a regiment, or an oda, is kept alive by imitation and discipline. In this holy warfare, the Moslems were exhorted to purify their minds with prayer, their bodies with seven ablutions; and to abstain from food till the close of the ensuing day. A crowd of dervishes visited the tents,

*These wings (Charoncondyles, l. iii. p. 208) are no more than an Oriental figure; but in the tragedy of Ione, Mahomet's passion seems above sense and reason:

Should the fierce north, upon his frozen wings,
Bear him aloft above the wandering clouds,
And seat him in the Pisan godlike chariot—
Then should our Jove string him down to tombs.

Besides the extravagance of the last, I must observe, 1. That the operation of the wind must be confined to the lower regions of the air. 2. That the name, etymology, and the title of the Phaethon are purely Greek. Chaldaean ad Homer, 3. 800. Ennius in Junius, p. 200. Apollodorus, i. ii. c. 10. Heusner, p. 229, Not. 924), and had no affinity with the ceremony of the East (Hydas ad Uluibeg, Tabal. in Syene- ma Desert, tom. 1, p. 46, 47. Gegen, Origines des Arts, &c. tom. 1, p. 75-76. Gesellin, Hist. des Calendriers, p. 73), which Mahomet had studied. 3. The golden chariot does not exist either in science or fiction; but I much fear that Dr. Johnson has confounded the Phaethon with the great bear or waggon, the zodiac with a northern constellation;
to instil the desire of martyrdom; and the assurance of spending an immortal youth amidst the rivers and gardens of paradise, and in the embraces of the black-eyed virgins. Yet Mahomet principally trusted to the efficacy of temporal and visible rewards. A double pay was promised to the victorious troops: "The city and the buildings," said Mahomet, "are mine; but I resign to your valour the captives and the spoil; the treasures of gold and beauty; be rich and be happy. Many are the provinces of my empire: the intrepid soldier who first ascends the walls of Constantinople, shall be rewarded with the government of the fairest and most wealthy; and my gratitude shall accumulate his honours and fortunes above the measure of his own hopes." Such various and potent motives diffused among the Turks a general ardour, regardless of life, and impatient for action: the camp re-echoed with the Moslem shouts of "God is God, there is but one God, and Mahomet is the apostle of God;" and the sea and land, from Galata to the seven towers, were illuminated by the blaze of their nocturnal fires.

Far different was the state of the christians; who, with loud and impotent complaints, deplored the guilt, or the punishment, of their sins. The celestial image of the virgin had been exposed in solemn procession; but their divine patroness was deaf to their intreaties: they accused the obstinacy of the emperor for refusing a

* Firmin quarrils with those Moslem acclamations, not for the name of God, but for that of the prophet: the phrase and of Voltaire’s excessive and even ridiculous.
timely surrender; anticipated the horrors of their fate; and sighed for the repose and security of Turkish servitude. The noblest of the Greeks, and the bravest of the allies, were summoned to the palace, to prepare them, on the evening of the twenty-eighth, for the duties and dangers of the general assault. The last speech of Palæologus was the funeral oration of the Roman empire; he promised, he conjured, and he vainly attempted to infuse the hope which was extinguished in his own mind. In this world all was comfortless and gloomy; and neither the gospel nor the church have proposed any conspicuous recompense to the heroes who fall in the service of their country. But the example of their prince, and the confinement of a siege, had armed these warriors with the courage of despair; and the pathetic scene is described by the feelings of the historian Phranza, who was himself present at this mournful assembly. They wept, they embraced; regardless of their families and fortunes, they devoted their lives; and each commander, departing to his station, maintained all night a vigilant and anxious watch on the rampart. The emperor, and some faithful companions, entered the dome of St. Sophia, which in a few hours was to be converted into a mosch, and devoutly received, with tears and prayers, the sacrament of the holy communion. He reposed some moments in the palace.

I am afraid that this discourse was composed by Phranza himself; and it seems so grandly of the sermon and the oration, that I almost doubt whether it was pronounced by Constantine. Lascaris assigns him another speech, in which he addresses himself more respectfully to the Latin auxiliaries.

VOL. XII.
which resounded with cries and lamentations; solicited the pardon of all whom he might have injured; and mounted on horseback to visit the guards, and explore the motions of the enemy. The distress and fall of the last Constantine are more glorious than the long prosperity of the Byzantine Caesars.

In the confusion of darkness, an assailant may sometimes succeed; but in this great and general attack, the military judgment and astrological knowledge of Mahomet advised him to expect the morning, the memorable twenty-ninth of May, in the fourteen hundred and fifty-third year of the Christian era. The preceding night had been strenuously employed: the troops, the cannon, and the fascines, were advanced to the edge of the ditch, which in many parts presented a smooth and level passage to the breach; and his fourscore galleys almost touched with the prows and their scaling ladders the less defensible walls of the harbour. Under pain of death, silence was enjoined; but the physical laws of motion and sound are not obedient to discipline or fear; each individual might suppress his voice and measure his footsteps; but the march and labour of thousands must inevitably produce a strange confusion of dissolvent clamours, which reached the ears of the watchmen of the towers. At day-break, without the customary signal of the morning gun, the Turks assaulted the city by sea and land; and

---

*This admonition, which devotion has sometimes extorted from a dying prince, is an improvement of the gospel doctrine of the forgiveness of injuries: it is more easy to forgive 400 times, than once to ask pardon of an inferior.*
the similitude of a twined or twisted thread has been applied to the closeness and continuity of their line of attack. The foremost ranks consisted of the refuse of the host, a voluntary crowd, who fought without order or command: of the feebleness of age or childhood, of peasants and vagrants, and of all who had joined the camp in the blind hope of plunder and martyrdom. The common impulse drove them onwards to the wall: the most audacious to climb were instantly precipitated; and not a dart, not a bullet, of the Christians was idly wasted on the accumulated throng. But their strength and ammunition were exhausted in this laborious defence: the ditch was filled with the bodies of the slain: they supported the footsteps of their companions: and of this devoted vanguard, the death was more servicable than the life. Under their respective bashaws and sanjaks, the troops of Asia and Illyria were successively led to the charge; their progress was various and doubtful: but, after a conflict of two hours, the Greeks still maintained and improved their advantage: and the voice of the emperor was heard, encouraging his soldiers to achieve, by a last effort, the deliverance of their country. In that fatal moment, the janizaries arose, fresh, vigorous, and invincible. The sultan himself on horseback, with an iron mace in his hand, was the spectator and judge of their valour: he was surrounded by ten thousand of his domestic troops, whom he reserved for the

1 Besides the 10,000 guards, and the palouk and the marines, Ducas numbers in this general assault 250,000 Turks, both bare and foot.
decisive occasions; and the tide of battle was
directed and impelled by his voice and eye. His
numerous ministers of justice were posted behind
the line, to urge, to restrain, and to punish; and
if danger was in the front, shame and inevitable
death were in the rear, of the fugitives. The
cries of fear and of pain were drowned in the
martial music of drums, trumpets, and attaballs;
and experience has proved, that the mechanical
operation of sounds, by quickening the circulation
of the blood and spirits, will act on the human
machine more forcibly than the eloquence of
reason and honour. From the lines, the gallies,
and the bridge, the Ottoman artillery thundered
on all sides; and the camp and city, the Greeks
and the Turks, were involved in a cloud of smoke,
which could only be dispelled by the final deli-
verance or destruction of the Roman empire.
The single combats of the heroes of history or
fable amuse our fancy and engage our affections;
the skilful evolutions of war may inform the
mind, and improve a necessary, though perni-
cious, science; but in the uniform and odious
pictures of a general assault, all is blood, and
horror, and confusion: nor shall I strive, at the
distance of three centuries and a thousand miles,
to delineate a scene of which there could be no
spectators, and of which the actors themselves
were incapable of forming any just or adequate
idea.

The immediate loss of Constantinople may be
ascribed to the bullet, or arrow, which pierced
the gauntlet of John Justiniani. The sight of his
blood, and the exquisite pain, appalled the courage of the chief, whose arms and counsels were the firmest rampart of the city. As he withdrew from his station in quest of a surgeon, his flight was perceived and stopped by the indefatigable emperor. 

"Your wound," exclaimed Paleologus, "is slight; the danger is passing; your presence is necessary; and whither will you retire?" 

"I will retire," said the trembling Genoese, by the same road which God has opened to the Turks; and at these words he hastily passed through one of the breaches of the inner wall. By this pusillanimous act, he stained the honours of a military life; and the few days which he survived in Galata, or the isle of Chios, were embittered by his own and the public reproach. 

His example was imitated by the greatest part of the Latin auxiliaries; and the defence began to slacken when the attack was pressed with redoubled vigour. The number of the Ottomans was fifty, perhaps an hundred, times superior to that of the Christians; the double walls were reduced by the cannon to an heap of ruins: in a circuit of several miles, some places must be found more easy of access, or more feebly guarded; and if the besiegers could penetrate in a single point, the whole city was irrecoverably lost. 

*In the seventh century of the flight of Justinian, Primo nas expressed his own feelings, and those of the public. For some private reason, he is treated with more beauty and respect by Duca; but the words of Leonarius Chirnus express his strong and recent indignation, gloria satis est unis eflentia. In the whole series of their Eastern policy, his countrymen, the Genoese, were always suspect ed, and often guilty.
who deserved the sultan's reward was Hassan the janizary, of gigantic stature and strength. With his scimitar in one hand and his buckler in the other, he ascended the outward fortification of the thirty janizaries, who were emulous of his valour, eighteen perished in the bold adventure. Hassan and his twelve companions had reached the summit; the giant was precipitated from the rampart; he rose on one knee, and was again oppressed by a shower of darts and stones. But his success had proved that the achievement was possible: the walls and towers were instantly covered with a swarm of Turks; and the Greeks, now driven from the vantage ground, were overwhelmed by increasing multitudes. Amidst these multitudes, the emperor, who accomplished all the duties of a general and a soldier, was long seen, and finally lost. The nobles, who fought round his person, sustained, till their last breath, the honourable names of Palaeologus and Cantacuzene; his mournful exclamation was heard, "Cannot there be found a Christian to cut off my head?" and his last fear was that of falling.

Duces fulis him with two blows of Turkish soldiers: Chalcedon styles wound him in the shoulder, and their tramples him in the gate. The poet of Parthenia carrying him among the enemy, escapes from the precipice image of his death: but we may, withoutbattery, apply those noble lines of Dryden:

As to Salamis, let them search the field,
And where they find a fragment of the sail,
Seek one to clutch, and breaking-steel branch,
There they will find him at his mercy lofty,
With his face up to heaven, in that red mountain
Which his good sword had digged.

Sporranus (p. 9. 1458, No. 18), who has hopes of his salvation, wishes to absolve this action from the guilt of suicide.
ing alive into the hands of the infidels. The prudent despair of Constantine cast away the purple: amidst the tumult he fell by an unknown hand, and his body was buried under a mountain of the slain. After his death, resistance and order were no more: the Greeks fled towards the city; and many were pressed and stifled in the narrow pass of the gate of St. Romans. The victorious Turks rushed through the breaches of the inner wall; and as they advanced into the streets, they were soon joined by their brethren, who had forced the gate Phenar on the side of the harbour. In the first heat of their pursuit, about two thousand christians were put to the sword; but avarice soon prevailed over cruelty; and the victors acknowledged, that they should immediately have given quarter, if the valour of the emperor and his chosen bands had not prepared them for a similar opposition in every part of the capital. It was thus, after a siege of fifty-three days, that Constantinople, which had defied the power of Chosroes, the Chagran, and the caliphs, was irretrievably subdued by the arms of Mahomet the second. Her empire only had been unverted by the Latins; her religion was trampled in the dust by the Moslem conquerors.

* Leonardus Chismus very properly observes, that the Turks, had they known the conquerors, would have submitted to ease and spare a religion so acceptable to the sultan.

* Cont. pp. 96. The Christian ships in the mouth of the harbour had dashed and recorded this naval attack.

* Chalcographus most absurdly supposes that Constantinople was sacked by the Asiatics, in revenge for the ancient calamities of Troy; and the generals of the thirteenth century are happy to make down the marauding appétite of Turks, into the mere ravishing zeal of Trojans.
The tidings of misfortune fly with a rapid wing; yet such was the extent of Constantinople, that the more distant quarters might prolong some moments the happy ignorance of their ruin. But in the general consternation, in the feelings of selfish or social anxiety, in the tumult and thunder of the assault, a sleepless night and morning must have elapsed: nor can I believe that many Grecian ladies were awakened by the janizaries from a sound and tranquil slumber. On the assurance of the public calamity, the houses and convents were instantly deserted; and the trembling inhabitants flocked together in the streets, like an herd of timid animals, as if accumulated weakness could be productive of strength, or in the vain hope, that amid the crowd, each individual might be safe and invisible. From every part of the capital they flowed into the church of St. Sophin; in the space of an hour, the sanctuary, the choir, the nave, the upper and lower galleries, were filled with the multitude of fathers and husbands, of women and children, of priests, monks, and religious virgins: the doors were barred on the inside, and they sought protection from the sacred dome, which they had so lately abhorred as a profane and polluted edifice. Their confidence was founded on the prophecy of an enthusiast or impostor, that one day the Turks would enter Con-

* When Cyrus surprised Babylon during the celebration of a festival, so vast was the city, and so dense were the inhabitants, that much time elapsed before the distant quarters knew that they were captured (Herodotus, i. 1, 2. 191), and Usher (Annal. p. 18), who has quoted from the prophet Jeremiah a passage of similar import.
stantinople, and pursue the Romans as far as the column of Constantine in the square before St. Sophia; but that this would be the term of their calamities; that an angel would descend from heaven, with a sword in his hand, and would deliver the empire, with that celestial weapon, to a poor man seated at the foot of the column. "Take this sword," would he say, "and avenge the people of the Lord." At these animating words, the Turks would instantly fly, and the victorious Romans would drive them from the West, and from all Anatolia, as far as the frontiers of Persia. It is on this occasion, that Ducas, with some fancy and much truth, upbraids the discord and obstinacy of the Greeks. "Had that angel appeared," exclaims the historian, "had he offered to exterminate your foes if you would consent to the union of the church, even then, in that fatal moment, you would have rejected your safety, or have deceived your God."

While they expected the descent of the tardy angel, the doors were broken with axes; and as the Turks encountered no resistance, their bloodless hands were employed in selecting and securing the multitude of their prisoners. Youth, beauty, and the appearance of wealth, attracted their choice; and the right of property was de-

This lively description is extracted from Ducas (p. 39), who, two years afterwards, was sent as ambassador from the prince of Lascia to the sultan (p. 44). The Lascia was subdued in 1406 (Ilium, L. III, p. 97), that island must have been full of the fugitives of Constantinople, who delighted to repeat, perhaps to recite, the tale of their misery.
Chapter LXVIII.

Ceded among themselves by a prior seizure, by personal strength, and by the authority of command. In the space of an hour, the male captives were bound with cords, the females with their veils and girdles. The senators were linked with their slaves; the prelates, with the porters of the church; and young men of a plebeian class, with noble maids, whose faces had been invisible to the sun and their nearest kindred. In this common captivity, the ranks of society were confounded; the ties of nature were cut asunder; and the inexorable soldier was careless of the father's groans, the tears of the mother, and the lamentations of the children. The loudest in their wailings were the nuns, who were torn from the altar with naked bosoms, outstretched limbs, and dishevelled hair; and we should piously believe, that few could be tempted to pray for the vigil of the haram to those of the monastery. Of these unfortunate Greeks, of these domestic animals, whole strings were rudely driven through the streets; and as the conquerors were eager to return for more prey, their trembling pace was quickened with menaces and blows. At the same hour, a similar rapine was exercised in all the churches and monasteries, in all the palaces and habitations of the capital; nor could any palace, however sacred or sequestered, protect the persons or the property of the Greeks. Above sixty thousand of this devoted people were transported from the city to the camp and fleet; exchanged or sold, according to the caprice or interest of their masters, and dispersed in remote servitude through the provinces of the Ottoman
empire. Among these we may notice some remarkable characters. The historian Phranza, first chamberlain and principal secretary, was involved, with his family, in the common lot. After suffering, four months, the hardships of slavery, he recovered his freedom; in the ensuing winter he ventured to Adrianople, and ransomed his wife from the mir-bashi, or master of horse; but his two children, in the flower of youth and beauty, had been seized for the use of Mahomet himself. The daughter of Phranza died in the prison, perhaps a virgin; his son, in the fifteenth year of his age, preferred death to infamy, and was stabbed by the hand of the royal lover. A deed thus inhuman cannot surely be expiated by the taste and liberality with which he released a Grecian matron and her two daughters, on receiving a Latin ode from Philotheus, who had chosen a wife in that noble family. The pride or cruelty of Mahomet would have been most sensibly gratified by the capture of a Roman legate; but the dexterity of cardinal Isidore eluded the search, and he escaped from Galata in a plebeian habit.

* See Phranza, l. iii. c. 20, 11. His expression are politissim Antarres mea sunt, magni principis, ... velletem eum in terram et ubique host. Me miserum et intolerant. Yet he could only learn from report, the bloody or impious scenes that were acted in the dark recesses of the seraglio.

1 See Tiraboschi (tom. 4. p. 1, p. 200) and Lasseres (Mem. de l'Académie des Inscriptions, tom. x. p. 719. I should be curious to know how he could please the public enemy, whom he so often styled as the most corrupt and inhuman of tyrants.

* The Commentators of Pius ii suppose that he rudely placed his cardinal's hat on the head of a corpse, which was cut off and exposed in triumph, while the legate himself was sought and delivered.
The chain and entrance of the outward harbour was still occupied by the Italian ships of merchandise and war. They had signalised their valour in the siege: they embraced the moment of retreat, while the Turkish mariners were dissipated in the pillage of the city. When they hoisted sail, the beach was covered with a suppliant and lamentable crowd; but the means of transportation were scanty: the Venetians and Genoese selected their countrymen; and, notwithstanding the fairest promises of the sultan, the inhabitants of Galata evacuated their houses, and embarked with their most precious effects.

In the fall and the sack of great cities, an historian is condemned to repeat the tale of uniform calamity: the same effects must be produced by the same passions; and when those passions may be indulged without controll, small, alas! is the difference between civilized and savage man. Amidst the vague exclamations of bigotry and hatred, the Turks are not accused of a wanton or immoderate effusion of christian blood; but, according to their maxims (the maxims of antiquity), the lives of the vanquished were forfeited; and the legitimate reward of the conqueror was derived from the service, the sale, or the ransom, of his captives of both sexes. The

as a captive of no value. The great Belgc Chronicler informs his reader with new adventures, which he suppressed flagrante Spontanea, s. a. 1433, No. 13; in his own letters, lest he should lose the merit and reward of aiding the cause.

* Bushequins expatiates, with pleasure and applause, on the rights of war, and the use of slavery, among the ancients and the Turks; see Logch. Turrici, spist. iii, p. 161.
wealth of Constantinople had been granted by the sultan to his victorious troops; and the rape of an hour is more productive than the industry of years. But as no regular division was attempted of the spoil, the respective shares were not determined by merit; and the rewards of valour were stolen away by the followers of the camp, who had declined the toil and danger of the battle. The narrative of their depredations could not afford either amusement or instruction; the total amount, in the last poverty of the empire, has been valued at four millions of ducats;* and of this sum a small part was the property of the Venetians, the Genoese, the Florentines, and the merchants of Ancona. Of these foreigners, the stock was improved in quick and perpetual circulation; but the riches of the Greeks were displayed in the idle ostentation of palaces and wardrobes, or deeply buried in treasures of ingots and old coin, lest it should be demanded at their hands for the defence of their country. The profanation and plunder of the monasteries and churches excited the most tragic complaints. The dome of St. Sophia itself, the earthly heaven, the second firmament, the vehicle of the cherubim, the throne of the glory of God,† was despoiled of the oblations of ages; and the gold and silver, the

* This sum is specified in a marginal note of Laurenziius (Chirocratiae, Lxii, p. 211); but, in the distribution to Venice, Genoa, Pisa, and Ancona, of 30, 30, 20, and 15,000 ducats, I suspect that a figure has been dropped. Even with the restitution, the foreign property would scarcely exceed one-fourth.

† See the enthusiastic praises and lamentations of Pius IV. (L. I., p. 17).
pears and jewels, the vases and sacerdotal ornaments, were most wickedly converted to the service of mankind. After the divine images had been stripped of all that could be valuable to a profane eye, the canvas, or the wood, was torn, or broken, or burnt, or trod underfoot, or applied, in the stables, or the kitchen, to the vilest uses. The example of sacrilege was imitated, however, from the Latin conquerors of Constantinople; and the treatment which Christ, the virgin, and the saints, had sustained from the guilty catholic might be inflicted by the zealous Mussulman on the monuments of idolatry. Perhaps, instead of joining the public clamour, a philosopher will observe, that in the decline of the arts, the workmanship could not be more valuable than the work, and that a fresh supply of visions and miracles would speedily be renewed by the craft of the priest and the credulity of the people. He will more seriously deplore the loss of the Byzantine libraries, which were destroyed or scattered in the general confusion; one hundred and twenty thousand manuscripts are said to have disappeared; ten volumes might be purchased for a single ducat; and the same ignominious price, too high perhaps for a shelf of theology, included the whole works of Aristotle and Homer, the noblest productions of the science and literature of ancient Greece. We may reflect, with pleasure, that an inestimable portion...
of our classic treasures was safely deposited in Italy; and that the mechanics of a German town had invented an art which derides the havoc of time and barbarism.

From the first hour of the memorable twenty-ninth of May, disorder and rapine prevailed in Constantinople, till the eighth hour of the same day; when the sultan himself passed in triumph through the gate of St. Romanus. He was attended by his vizirs, bashaws, and guards, each of whom (says a Byzantine historian) was robust as Hercules, dextrous as Apollo, and equal in battle to any ten of the race of ordinary mortals. The conqueror gazed with satisfaction and wonder on the strange, though splendid, appearance of the domes and palaces, so dissimilar from the style of Oriental architecture. In the hippodrome, or atmaidan, his eye was attracted by the twisted column of the three serpents; and, as a trial of his strength, he shattered with his iron mace, or battle-axe, the under-jaw of one of these monsters, which, in the eye of the Turks, were the idols or talismans of the city. At the principal door of St. Sophia, he alighted from his horse, and entered the dome; and such was his jealous regard for that monument of his glory, that on observing a zealous mussulman

* The Julian calendar, which reckons the days and hours from midnight, was used at Constantinople. But Ducas seems to understand the natural hours from sun-rise.

* See the Turkish Annals, p. 326, and the Panteler of Lauda, p. 445.

* I have had occasion (vol. i., p. 23) to mention this curious relic of Grecian antiquity.
in the act of breaking the marble pavement, he admonished him with his scymetar, that, if the spoil and captives were granted to the soldiers, the public and private buildings had been reserved for the prince. By his command the metropolis of the Eastern church was transformed into a mosch; the rich and portable instruments of superstition had been removed; the crosses were thrown down; and the walls, which were covered with images and mosaics, were washed and purified, and restored to a state of naked simplicity. On the same day, or on the ensuing Friday, the mezuan, or crier, ascended the most lofty turret, and proclaimed the ezan, or public invitation in the name of God and his prophet; the imam preached; and Mahomet the second performed the namaz of prayer and thanksgiving on the great altar, where the christian mysteries had so lately been celebrated before the last of the Caesars. From St. Sophia he proceeded to the august, but desolate, mansion of an hundred successors of the great Constantine, but which, in a few hours, had been stripped of the pomp of royalty. A melancholy reflection on the vicissitudes of human greatness forced itself on his mind; and he repeated an elegant distich of Persian poetry: "The spider has woven his web in the imperial palace; and the

---

1. We are obliged to Constantine (p. 102) for the Turkish account of the conversion of St. Sophia, so bitterly deplored by Phocas and David. It is amusing enough to observe, in what opposite lights the same object appears to a Mussulman and a Christian eye.
"Owl hath sung her watch-song on the towers of Afrasiab.""

Yet his mind was not satisfied, nor did the victory seem complete, till he was informed of the fate of Constantine; whether he had escaped, or been made prisoner, or had fallen in the battle. Two janizaries claimed the honour and reward of his death; the body, under an heap of slain, was discovered by the golden eagles embroidered on his shoes; the Greeks acknowledged with tears the head of their late emperor; and, after exposing the bloody trophy, Mahomet bestowed on his rival the honours of a decent funeral. After his decease, Lucas Notaras, great duke, and first minister of the empire, was the most important prisoner. When he offered his person and his treasures at the foot of the throne, "And why," said the indignant sultan, "did you not employ these treasures in the defence of your prince and country?" "They were yours," answered the slave, "God had reserved them for your hands." "If he reserved them for me," replied the despot, "how have you presumed to

* This distich, which Catamnius gives in the original, derives new beauties from the application. It was true that Scipio repeated, in the sack of Carthage, the famous prophecy of Homer. The same generous feeling carried the mind of the conqueror to the poet of the future.

* I cannot believe with Ducas (see Sponianus, * a. d. 1413, No. 13) that Mahomet sent round Persia, Arabia, &c. the head of the Greek emperor: he would surely content himself with a trophy less inhuman.

* Phra Our was the personal enemy of the great duke; nor could time, or death, or his own retreat to a monastery, extort a feeling of sympathy or forgiveness. Ducas is inclined to praise and pity the martyr: Chalcedonians is murther, but we are indebted to him for the hint of the Greek conspiracy.
cally named by the Italians) appears to reign over Europe and Asia; but his person on the shores of the Bosphorus may not always be secure from the insults of an hostile navy. In the new character of a mosch, the cathedral of St. Sophia was endowed with an ample revenue, crowned with lofty minarets, and surrounded with groves and fountains, for the devotion and refreshment of the Moslems. The same model was imitated in the *fami* or royal moschas; and the first of these was built by Mahomet himself, on the ruins of the church of the holy apostles and the tombs of the Greek emperors. On the third day after the conquest, the grave of Abu Ayub, or Job, who had fallen in the first siege of the Arabs, was revealed in a vision; and it is before the sepulchre of the martyr that the new sultans are girded with the sword of empire.\(^\text{7}\) Constantinople no longer appertains to the Roman historian; nor shall I enumerate the civil and religious edifices that were profaned or erected by its Turkish masters: the population was speedily renewed; and before the end of September, five thousand families of Anatolia and Romania had obeyed the royal mandate, which enjoined them, under pain of death, to occupy their new habitations in the capital. The throne of Mahomet was guarded by the numbers and fidelity of his Moslem subjects; but his rational policy aspired to collect

\(^\text{7}\) The *Tabor*, or sepulchral monument of Abu-Ayub, is described and engraved in the *Tables Général de l'Empire Ottoman* (Paris, 1787, in large folio), a work of less use, perhaps, than magnificence (vol. 1, p. 305, 306).
the remnant of the Greeks; and they returned in
crowds as soon as they were assured of their lives,
their liberties, and the free exercise of their reli-
gion. In the election and investiture of a patri-
arch, the ceremonial of the Byzantine court was
revived and imitated. With a mixture of satis-
faction and horror, they beheld the sultan on his
throne; who delivered into the hands of Gen-
nadius the crosier or pastoral staff, the symbol of
his ecclesiastical office; who conducted the patri-
arch to the gate of the seraglio, presented him
with an horse richly caparisoned, and directed
the vizirs and bashaws to lead him to the palace
which had been allotted for his residence.* The
churches of Constantinople were shared between
the two religions: their limits were marked; and,
till it was infringed by Selim, the grandson of
Mahomet, the Greeks enjoyed above sixty years
the benefit of this equal partition. Encouraged
by the ministers of the divan, who wished to
elude the fanaticism of the sultan, the christian
advocates presumed to allege that this division
had been an act, not of generosity, but of justice;

* Plancius (i. iii., c. 19) relates the ceremony, which has possibly
been adopted in the Greek reports to each other, and to the Latin.
The fact is confirmed by Emanuel Melaenus, who wrote, in vulgar
Greek, the history of the patriarchs after the taking of Constantinople,
inserted in the Turco-Grece of Cruxius (I. v., p. 106-186). But the
most patient reader will not believe that Mahomet adopted the Catho-
lic form, "SANTA TRINITAS quis mini donavit insipientis in pra-
"triaecham novo Romae deligit."

* From the Turco-Grece of Cruxius, &c. Spondanus (t. x., 1453,
No. 21, 1458, No. 16) describes the slavery and domestic quarrels of
the Greek churches. The patriarch who succeeded Gennadius threw
himself in despair into a well.
not a concession, but a compact; and that if one half of the city had been taken by storm, the other moiety had surrendered on the faith of a sacred capitulation. The original grant had indeed been consumed by fire; but the loss was supplied by the testimony of three aged janizaries who remembered the transaction; and their venal oaths are of more weight in the opinion of Cantemir, than the positive and unanimous consent of the history of the times.  

The remaining fragments of the Greek kingdom in Europe and Asia I shall abandon to the Turkish arms; but the final extinction of the two last dynasties which have reigned in Constantinople, should terminate the decline and fall of the Roman empire in the East. The despots of the Morea, Demetrius and Thomas, the two surviving brothers of the name of Palæologus,

* Cantemir (p. 104-105) insists on the unanimous consent of the Turkish historians, ancient as well as modern, and argues, that they would not have violated the truth to diminish their national glory, since it is esteemed more honourable to take a city by force than by composition. But, 1. I doubt this consent, since he quotes no particular historian, and the Turkish annals of Leo Clavus afirm, without exception, that Mahomet took Constantinople per se (p. 229). 2. The same argument may be turned in favour of the Greeks of the times, who would not have forgotten this honourable and calamitous treaty. Voltaire, as usual, prefers the Turks to the Christians.

* For the genealogy and fall of the Comnenus see Du Cange (Paris, Bynner, p. 195); for the late Palæologi, the same accurate antiquarian (p. 244, 247, 248). The Palæologi of Montferrand were not extinct till the next century; but they had forgotten their Greek origin and kindred.

* In the worthless story of the disputes and misfortunes of the two brothers, Phiranza (t. iii. c. 21-39) is too partial on the side of Thomas; Duran (t. 44, 45) is too brief, and Chalcedonies (L. vii. ix., x) too diffuse and digressive.
were astonished by the death of the emperor Constantine, and the ruin of the monarchy. Hopeless of defence, they prepared, with the noble Greeks who adhered to their fortune, to seek a refuge in Italy, beyond the reach of the Ottoman thunder. Their first apprehensions were dispelled by the victorious sultan, who contented himself with a tribute of twelve thousand ducats; and while his ambition explored the continent and the islands in search of prey, he indulged the Marca in a respite of seven years. But this respite was a period of grief, discord, and misery. The hexamilion, the rampart of the isthmus, so often raised and so often subverted, could not long be defended by three hundred Italian archers; the keys of Corinth were seized by the Turks; they returned from their summer excursions with a train of captives and spoil; and the complaints of the injured Greeks were heard with indifference and disdain. The Albanians, a vagrant tribe of shepherds and robbers, filled the peninsula with rapine and murder; the two despots implored the dangerous and humiliating aid of a neighbouring bashaw; and when he had quelled the revolt, his lessons inculcated the rule of their future conduct. Neither the ties of blood, nor the oaths which they repeatedly pledged in the communion and before the altar, nor the stronger pressure of necessity, could reconcile or suspend their domestic quarrels. They ravaged each other's patrimony with fire and sword; the alms and succours of the West were consumed in civil hostility; and their power was only exerted in savage and arbitrary execu-
CHAP. tions. The distress and revenge of the weaker rival invoked their supreme lord; and, in the season of maturity and revenge, Mahomet declared himself the friend of Demetrius, and marched into the Morea with an irresistible force. When he had taken possession of Sparta, "You are too weak," said the sultan, "to control this turbulent province; I will take your daughter to my bed; and you shall pass the remainder of your life in security and honour." Demetrius sighed and obeyed; surrendered his daughter and his castles; followed to Adrianople his sovereign and son; and received for his own maintenance, and that of his followers, a city in Thrace, and the adjacent isles of Imbros, Lemnos, and Samothrace. He was joined the next year by a companion of misfortune, the last of the Comnenian race, who, after the taking of Constantinople by the Latins, had founded a new empire on the coast of the Black sea. In the progress of his Anatolian conquests, Mahomet invested with a fleet and army the capital of David, who presumed to style himself emperor of Trebizond; and the negociation was comprised in a short and peremptory question, "Will you secure your life?

1 See the loss or conquest of Trebizond in Chalcedon, (t. 11, p. 252-260); Duces (t. 80), Pharonas (t. iii, c. 27), and Constantin (p. 107).

1 Though Tournetr (l. 41, book xvi, p. 170) speaks of Trebizond as real people, Payssonet, the latest and most accurate observer, can find 100,000 inhabitants (Communes de la Mer Noire, tom. i, p. 72, and for the province, p. 82-86). Its prosperity and trade are perpetually disturbed by the furious quarrels of two race of janissaries, in one of which 20,000 Last are commonly enrolled (Memoirs de Tott, tom. iii, p. 16, 17).
"and treasures by resigning your kingdom? or
had you rather forfeit your kingdom, your
"treasures, and your life?" The feeble Conne-
nus was subdued by his own fears, and the ex-
ample of a Musulman neighbour, the prince of
Sinope, who, on a similar summons, had yielded
a fortified city with four hundred cannon
and ten or twelve thousand soldiers. The capi-
tulation of Trebizond was faithfully performed;
and the emperor, with his family, was transported
to a castle in Romania; but on a slight suspicion
of corresponding with the Persian king, David,
and the whole Comnenian race, were sacrificed to
the jealousy or avarice of the conqueror. Nor
could the name of father long protect the unfor-
tunate Demetrius from exile and confiscation;
his abject submission moved the pity and con-
tempt of the sultan; his followers were trans-
planted to Constantinople; and his poverty was
alleviated by a pension of fifty thousand aspers,
till a monastic habit and a tardy death released
Palaeologus from an earthly master. It is not
easy to pronounce whether the servitude of De-
metrius, or the exile of his brother Thomas,*
be the most inglorious. On the conquest of the

* Ismael Beg, prince of Sinope or Sinople, was possessed (chiefly from his copper mines) of the revenue of 200,000 ducats (Chaloner, L ii. p. 258, 260). Peyresur (Commerces de la Mer Noire, tom. ii, p. 180) speaks of the modern city 60,000 inhabitants. This account seems enormous, yet it is by trading with a people that we become acquainted with their wealth and numbers.

* Spornado (from Golobic Comment. Pli. ii. 1. v) relates the ar-
ival and reception of the despot Thomas at Rome (a. 1161, No. 3.)
Morea, the despot escaped to Corfu, and from thence to Italy, with some naked adherents: his name, his sufferings, and the head of the apostle St. Andrew, entitled him to the hospitality of the Vatican; and his misery was prolonged by a pension of six thousand ducats from the pope and cardinals. His two sons, Andrew and Manuel, were educated in Italy; but the eldest, contemptible to his enemies and burthensome to his friends, was degraded by the baseness of his life and marriage. A title was his sole inheritance; and that inheritance he successively sold to the kings of France and Arragon. During this transient prosperity, Charles the eighth was ambitious of joining the empire of the East with the kingdom of Naples; in a public festival, he assumed the appellation and the purple of Augustus: the Greeks rejoiced, and the Ottoman already trembled at the approach of the French chivalry. Manuel Palæologus, the second son, was tempted to revisit his native country: his return might be grateful, and could not be dangerous, to the porte: he was maintained at Con-

3. By an act, dated 25. Nov. 1494, Sept. 6, and lately transmitted from the archives of the Capitole to the royal library of Paris, the despot Andrew Palæologus, receiving the Morea, and stipulating some private advantages, conveyed to Charles viii, king of France, the empire of Constantinople and Trebizond (Spandianus, i. n. 1495, No. 1; M. de Fossemauge (Mem. de l'Académie des Inscriptions, tom. xvii, p. 338-378) has bestowed a Dissertation on this national title, of which he had obtained a copy from Rome.

4. See Philippe de Comines (ii. 14), who reckons with pleasure the number of Greeks who were prepared to rise, 60 miles of an easy navigation, eighteen days' journey from Valona to Constantinople, &c. On this occasion the Turkish empire was saved by the policy of Venice.
constantinople in safety and ease; and an honourable train of christians and Moslems attended him to the grave. If there be some animals of so generous a nature that they refuse to propagate in a domestic state, the last of the imperial race must be ascribed to an inferior kind; he accepted from the sultan’s liberality two beautiful females; and his surviving son was lost in the habit and religion of a Turkish slave.

The importance of Constantinople was felt and magnified in its loss: the pontificate of Nicholas the fifth, however peaceful and prosperous, was dishonoured by the fall of the Eastern empire; and the grief and terror of the Latins revived, or seemed to revive, the old enthusiasm of the crusades. In one of the most distant countries of the West, Philip duke of Burgundy entertained, at Lisle in Flanders, an assembly of his nobles; and the pompous pageants of the feast were skilfully, adapted to their fancy and feelings.* In the midst of the banquet, a gigantic Saracen entered the hall, leading a fictitious elephant, with a castle on his back; a matron in a mourning robe, the symbol of religion, was seen to issue from the castle; she deplored her oppression, and accused the slowness of her champions; the principal herald of the golden fleece advanced, hear-

* See the original feast in Oliver de la Marche (Mémoires, t. i., p. 29, 30), with the abstract and observations of M. de St. Palaye (Mémoires sur la Chemiserie, tom. i., p. ii., p. 192-194). The peacock and the peahen were distinguished as royal birds.
ing on his fist a live pheasant, which, according to the rites of chivalry, he presented to the duke. At this extraordinary summons, Philip, a wise and aged prince, engaged his person and powers in the holy war against the Turks: his example was imitated by the barons and knights of the assembly: they swore to God, the virgin, the ladies, and the pheasant; and their particular vows were not less extravagant than the general sanction of their oath. But the performance was made to depend on some future and foreign contingency; and, during twelve years, till the last hour of his life, the duke of Burgundy might be scrupulously, and perhaps sincerely, on the eve of his departure. Had every breast glowed with the same ardour; had the union of the christians corresponded with their bravery; had every country, from Sweden to Naples, supplied a just proportion of cavalry and infantry, of men and money, it is indeed probable that Constantinople would have been delivered, and that the Turks might have been chased beyond the Hellespont or the Euphrates. But the secretary of the emperor, who composed every epistle, and attended every meeting, Eneas Sylvius, a statesman and

* It was found by an actual enumeration, that Sweden, Gotland, and Finland, contained 1,800,000 fighting men, and consequently were far more populous than at present.

* In the year 1454 Spondeus has given, from Eneas Sylvius, a view of the state of Europe, marbled with his own observations, that valuable annalist, and the Italian Muratori, will continue the series of events from the year 1455 to 1461, the end of Mahomet's life, and of this chapter.
orator, describes from his own experience the repugnant state and spirit of Christendom. "It is a body," says he, "without an head; a republic without laws or magistrates. The pope and the emperor may shine as lofty titles, as splendid images: but they are unable to command, and none are willing to obey: every state has a separate prince, and every prince has a separate interest. What eloquence could unite so many discordant and hostile powers under the same standard? Could they be assembled in arms, who would dare to assume the office of general? What order could be maintained?—what military discipline? Who would undertake to feed such an enormous multitude? Who would understand their various languages, or direct their stranger and incompatible manners? What mortal could reconcile the English with the French, Genoa with Aragon, the Germans with the natives of Hungary and Bohemia? If a small number enlisted in the holy war, they must be overthrown by the infidels; if many, by their own weight and confusion." Yet the same Eneas, when he was raised to the papal throne, under the name of Pius the second, devoted his life to the prosecution of the Turkish war. In the council of Mantua he excited some sparks of a false or feeble enthusiasm; but when the pontiff appeared at Ancona, to embark in person with the troops, engagements vanished in excuses; a pre-
ch day was adjourned to an indefinite term; and his effective army consisted of some German pilgrims, whom he was obliged to disband with indulgences and alms. Regardless of futurity, his successors and the powers of Italy were involved in the schemes of present and domestic ambition; and the distance or proximity of each object determined, in their eyes, its apparent magnitude. A more enlarged view of their interest would have taught them to maintain a defensive and naval war against the common enemy; and the support of Scanderbeg and his brave Albanians might have prevented the subsequent invasion of the kingdom of Naples. The siege and sack of Otranto by the Turks diffused a general consternation; and pope Sixtus was preparing to fly beyond the Alps, when the storm was instantly dispelled by the death of Mahomet the second, in the fifty-first year of his age. His lofty genius aspired to the conquest of Italy; he was possessed of a strong city and a capacious harbour; and the same

4 Besides the two annalists, the reader, may consult Gianazzo (Lettera Civile, torn. iii, p. 449-453) for the Turkish invasion of the kingdom of Naples. For the reign and conquests of Mahomet ii, I have occasionally used the Memorie Istoriche de Monarchi Ottomani di Giovanni Sagredo (Venezia, 1677, in 4to). In peace and war, the Turks have ever engaged the attention of the republic of Venice. All her dispatches and archives were open to a procurator of St. Mark, and Sagredo is not contemptible either in sense or style. Yet he too bitterly loves the invidius; he is ignorant of their language and manners; and his narrative, which allows only seventy pages to Mahomet ii. (p. 60-140), becomes more copious and authentic as he approaches the years 1640 and 1644, the term of the historic labour of John Sagredo.
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

Chap. LXXVIII.

Reign might have been decorated with the trophies of the New and the Ancient Rome.*

* As I am now taking an everlasting farewell of the Greek empire, I shall briefly mention the great collection of Byzantine writers, whose names and testimonies have been successively reported in this work. The Greek press, of Aldus and the Italians were confined to the classics of a better age; and the first rude editions of Photius, Agathias, Cedrenus, Zonaras, &c. were published by the learned diligence of the Germans. The whole Byzantine series (36 volumes in folio) has gradually issued in 1643, &c.) from the royal press of the Louvre, with some collateral aid from Rome and Leipzig; but the Venetian edition (a. d. 1729), though cheaper and more copious, is not less inferior in correctness than in magnificence to that of Paris. The merits of the French editors are various; but the value of Anna Comnena, Clemens, Villhardouin, &c. is enhanced by the historical taste of Charles de France du Cange. His supplemental works, the Greek Grammar, the Constantinople Christians, the Family Byzantium, diffuse a steady light over the darkness of the Lower Empire.
In the first ages of the decline and fall of the Roman empire, our eye is invariably fixed on the royal city, which had given laws to the fairest portion of the globe. We contemplate her fortunes, at first with admiration, at length with pity, always with attention; and when that attention is diverted from the capitol to the provinces, they are considered as so many branches which have been successively severed from the imperial trunk. The foundation of a second Rome on the shores of the Bosphorus has compelled the historian to follow the successors of Constantine; and our curiosity has been tempted to visit the most remote countries of Europe and Asia, to explore the causes and the authors of the long decay of the Byzantine monarchy. By the conquest of Justinian, we have been recalled to the banks of the Tiber, to the deliverance of the ancient metropolis; but that deliverance was a change, or perhaps an aggravation, of servitude. Rome had
been already stripped of her trophies, her gods, and her Caesars; nor was the Gothic dominion more inglorious and oppressive than the tyranny of the Greeks. In the eighth century of the Christian era, a religious quarrel, the worship of images, provoked the Romans to assert their independence; their bishop became the temporal, as well as the spiritual, father of a free people; and of the western empire, which was restored by Charlemagne, the title and image still decorate the singular constitution of modern Germany. The name of Rome must yet command our involuntary respect: the climate (whatsoever may be its influence) was no longer the same: the purity of blood had been contaminated through a thousand channels; but the venerable aspect of her ruins, and the memory of past greatness, rekindled a spark of the national character. The darkness of the middle ages exhibits some scenes not unworthy of our notice. Nor shall I dismiss the present work till I have reviewed the state and revolutions of the Roman city, which acquiesced under the absolute dominion of the popes, about the same time that Constantinople was enslaved by the Turkish arms.

* The Abbe Dobson, who, with less genius than his successor Montesquieu, has asserted and magnified the influence of climate, objects to himself the degeneracy of the Romans and Batavians. To the first of these examples he replies, 1. That the change is less real than apparent, and that the modern Romans prudently conceal to themselves the virtues of their ancestors. 2. That the air, the soil, and the climate, of Rome have suffered a great and visible alteration ( Observations sur la Poésie et sur la Peinture, part ii, sec. 16).
In the beginning of the twelfth century, the era of the first crusade, Rome was revered by the Latins, as the metropolis of the world, as the throne of the pope and the emperor; who, from the eternal city, derived their title, their honours, and the right or exercise of temporal dominion. After so long an interruption, it may not be useless to repeat that the successors of Charlemagne and the Othos were chosen beyond the Rhine in a national diet; but that these princes were content with the humble names of kings of Germany and Italy, till they had passed the Alps and the Apennine, to seek their imperial crown on the banks of the Tyber. At some distance from the city, their approach was saluted by a long procession of the clergy and people with palms and crosses; and the terrific emblems of wolves and lions, of dragons and eagles, that floated in the military banners, represented the departed legions and cohorts of the republic. The royal oath to maintain the liberties of Rome was thrice reiterated, at the bridge, the gate, and on the stairs of the Vatican; and the distribution of a customary donative feebly imitated the magnificence of the first Caesars. In the church of St. Peter, the

* The reader has been so long absent from Rome, that I would advise him to recollect or review the forty-ninth chapter, in the ninth volume of this history.

* The coronation of the German emperors at Rome, more especially in the eleventh century, is best represented from the original monuments by Muratori (Antiquitae Italicae medii Aevo, tom. iii, dissertatione ii, p. 89, &c.) and Conni (Monumentum Dami de Pontiff, tom. ii, dissertatione vi, p. 261), the latter of whom I only have from the copious extract of Schmidt (Hist. des Allemands, tom. iii, p. 253-266).
coronation was performed by his successor: the voice of God was confounded with that of the people; and the public consent was declared in the acclamations of, "Long life and victory to our lord the pope! Long life and victory to our lord the emperor! Long life and victory to the Roman and Teutonic armies!" The names of Caesar and Augustus, the laws of Constantine and Justinian, the example of Charlemagne and Otto, established the supreme dominion of the emperors; their title and image was engraved on the papal coins; and their jurisdiction was marked by the sword of justice, which they delivered to the prefect of the city. But every Roman prejudice was awakened by the name, the language, and the manners, of a barbarian lord. The Caesars of Saxony or Franconia were the chiefs of a feudal aristocracy; nor could they exercise the discipline of civil and military power, which alone secures the obedience of a distant people, impatient of servitude, though perhaps incapable of freedom. Once, and once only, in his life, each emperor, with an army of Teutonic vassals, descended from the Alps. I have described the peaceful order of his entry and coronation; but that order was commonly dis-

* Exercitii Romano et Teutonico! The latter was both seen and felt; but the former was no more than magni nominis umbra.

* Morator! has given the name of the papal coins (Antiquitae, tom. ii, disp. xxvii, p. 348–344). He finds only two more early than the year 860: fifty are still extant from Leo xi to Leo xi; with addition of the reigning emperor: none remain of Gregory xi, or Urban xi; but in those of Pius xi, he seems to have renounced this badge of dependence.
turbed by the clamour and sedition of the Romans, who encountered their sovereign as a foreign invader; his departure was always speedy, and often shameful; and, in the absence of a long reign, his authority was insulted and his name was forgotten. The progress of independence in Germany and Italy undermined the foundations of the imperial sovereignty, and the triumph of the popes was the deliverance of Rome.

Of her two sovereigns, the emperor had precariously reigned by the right of conquest; but the authority of the popes was founded on the soft, though more solid, basis of opinion and habit. The removal of a foreign influence restored and endeared the shepherd to his flock. Instead of the arbitrary or venal nomination of a German court, the vicar of Christ was freely chosen by the college of cardinals, most of whom were either natives or inhabitants of the city. The applause of the magistrates and people confirmed his election; and the ecclesiastical power that was obeyed in Sweden and Britain had been ultimately derived from the suffrage of the Romans. The same suffrage gave a prince, as well as a pontiff, to the capital. It was universally believed, that Constantine had invested the popes with a temporal dominion of Rome; and the boldest civilians, the most profane sceptics, were satisfied with disputing the right of the emperor and the validity of his gift. The truth of the fact, the authenticity of his donation, was deeply rooted in the ignorance and tradition of four centuries; and the fabulous origin was lost in the real and permanent effects.
The name of dominus or lord was inscribed on the coin of the bishops; their title was acknowledged by acclamations and oaths of allegiance; and with the free, or reluctant consent of the German Caesars, they had long exercised a supreme or subordinate jurisdiction over the city and patrimony of St. Peter. The reign of the popes, which gratified the prejudices, was not incompatible with the liberties, of Rome; and a more critical enquiry would have revealed a still nobler source of their power; the gratitude of a nation, whom they had rescued from the heresy and oppression of the Greek tyrant. In an age of superstition, it should seem that the union of the royal and sacerdotal characters would mutually fortify each other; and that the keys of paradise would be the surest pledge of earthly obedience. The sanctity of the office might indeed be degraded by the personal vices of the man; but the scandals of the tenth century were obliterated by the austere and more dangerous virtues of Gregory the seventh and his successors; and in the ambitious contests which they maintained for the rights of the church, their sufferings or their success must equally tend to increase the popular veneration. They sometimes wandered in poverty and exile, the victims of persecution; and the apostolic zeal with which they offered themselves to martyrdom must engage the favour and sympathy of every catholic breast. And sometimes, thundering from the Vatican, they created, judged, and deposed the kings of the world; nor could the proudest Roman be disgraced by submitting to a
priest, whose feet were kissed, and whose stirrup was held by the successors of Charlemagne. Even the temporal interest of the city should have protected in peace and honour the residence of the popes; from whence a vain and lazy people derived the greatest part of their subsistence and riches. The fixed revenue of the popes was probably impaired: many of the old patrimonial estates, both in Italy and the provinces, had been invaded by sacrilegious hands; nor could the loss be compensated by the claim, rather than the possession, of the more ample gifts of Pepin and his descendants. But the Vatican and capitol were nourished by the incessant and increasing swarms of pilgrims and suppliants; the pale of christianity was enlarged, and the pope and cardinals were overwhelmed by the judgment of ecclesiastical and secular causes. A new jurisprudence had established in the Latin church the right and practice of appeals; and, from the north and west, the bishops and abbots were invited or summoned to solicit, to complain, to accuse, or to justify, before the threshold of

* See Ducange, Gloss. mediae et infimae Latinitatis, tom. vi, p. 364, 365. *Neffe.* This homage was paid by kings to archbishops, and by vassals to their lords (Schmidt, tom. iii, p. 262); and it was the wisest policy of Rome to confound the marks of filial and of feudal subjection.

* The appeals from all the churches to the Roman pontiff are displayed by the zeal of St. Bernard (de Consideratione, b. iii, tom. ii, p. 431-443, edit. Mahillon, Venet. 1750) and the judgment of Fleury (Discours sur l'Hist. Ecclesiastique, i and iv). But the sinit, who believed in the false decrees, condemns only the abuse of these appeals; the more enlightened historians investigate the origin, and reject the principles, of this new jurisprudence.
the apostles: A rare prodigy is once recorded, that two horses, belonging to the archbishops of Mentz and Cologne, repassed the Alps, yet laden with gold and silver; but it was soon understood, that the success, both of the pilgrims and clients, depended much less on the justice of their cause than on the value of their offering. The wealth and piety of these strangers were ostentatiously displayed: and their expenses, sacred or profane, circulated in various channels for the emolument of the Romans.

Such powerful motives should have firmly attached the voluntary and pious obedience of the Roman people to their spiritual and temporal father. But the operation of prejudice and interest is often disturbed by the sallies of ungovernmentable passion. The Indian who sells the tree, that he may gather the fruit, and the Arab who plunders the caravans of commerce, are actuated by the same impulse of savage nature, which overlooks the future in the present, and relinquishes for momentary rapine the long and secure possession of the most important blessings. And it was thus that the shrine of St. Peter was profaned by the thoughtless Romans; who pillaged the offerings, and wounded the pilgrims, without

---

3 Germanici ... summarii non lovisis sacrisius omnibus nihilominus repellant inviti. Nova res! quando hactenus autem Roma restitut? Et anec Romorornorum consilio et saecupaturn non credimus (Bernard de Considerationes, l. iii, c. 3, p. 437). The first words of the passage are obscure, and probably corrupt.

1 Quand les sauvages de la Louisiane vendent avoir du fruit, ils coupent l'arbre au pied et cultivent le fruit. Voila le gouvernement despoteique (Esprit des Loix, l. v, c. 15); and passion and ignorance are always despotic.
computing the number and value of similar visits, which they prevented by their inhospitable sacrilege. Even the influence of superstition is fluctuating and precarious; and the slave, whose reason is subdued, will often be delivered by his avarice or pride. A credulous devotion for the fables and oracles of the priesthood most powerfully acts on the mind of a barbarian; yet such a mind is the least capable of preferring imagination to sense, of sacrificing to a distant motive, to an invisible, perhaps an ideal, object, the appetites and interests of the present world. In the vigour of health and youth, his practice will perpetually contradict his belief; till the pressure of age, or sickness, or calamity, awakens his terrors, and compels him to satisfy the double debt of piety and remorse. I have already observed, that the modern times of religious indifference are the most favourable to the peace and security of the clergy. Under the reign of superstition, they had much to hope from the ignorance, and much to fear from the violence, of mankind. The wealth, whose constant increase must have rendered them the sole proprietors of the earth, was alternately bestowed by the repentant father, and plundered by the rapacious son; their persons were adored or violated; and the same idol, by the hands of the same votaries, was placed on the altar or trampled in the dust. In the feudal system of Europe, arms were the title of distinction and the measure of allegiance; and amidst their tumult, the still voice of law and reason was seldom heard or obeyed. The turbulent Romans dis-
dained the yoke, and insulted the impotence, of their bishop; nor would his education or character allow him to exercise, with decency or effect, the power of the sword. The motives of his election and the frailties of his life were exposed to their familiar observation; and proximity must diminish the reverence, which his name and his decrees impressed on a barbarous world. This difference has not escaped the notice of our philosophic historian: "Though the name and authority of the court of Rome were so terrible in the remote countries of Europe, which were sunk in profound ignorance, and were entirely unacquainted with its character and conduct, the pope was so little revered at home, that his inveterate enemies surrounded the gates of Rome itself, and even controlled his government in that city; and the ambassadors, who, from a distant extremity of Europe, carried to him the humble, or rather abject, submissions of the greatest potentate of the age, found the utmost difficulty to make their way to him, and to throw themselves at his feet."

1. In a free conversation with his countryman Adrian IV, John of Salisbury accuses the avarice of the pope and clergy: Provinciarum deripit spoilas, et in illis Crass studium repurserit. Sed recte cum exigite aliisquam, quantum et ipse satis et seipsum in hominibus dati est in discrepantem (de Nugis Carollianis, l. vi, c. 21, p. 387). In the next page, he blames the rashness and inutility of the Huns, whom their bishops vainly strove to conciliate by gifts, instead of virtues. It is a pity that this miscellaneous writer has not given us less inutility and meditation, and more pictures of himself and the times.

1 Hume's History of England, vol. i, p. 419. The same writer has given us, from Fitz-Stephen, a singular act of cruelty perpetrated...
Since the primitive times, the wealth of the popes was exposed to envy, their power to opposition, and their persons to violence. But the long hostility of the mitre and the crown increased the numbers, and inflamed the passions of their enemies. The deadly factions of the Guelphs and Ghibelines, so fatal to Italy, could never be embraced with truth or constancy by the Romans, the subjects and adversaries both of the bishop and emperor; but their support was solicited by both parties; and they alternately displayed in their banners the keys of St. Peter and the German eagle. Gregory the seventh, who may be adored or detested as the founder of the papal monarchy, was driven from Rome, and died in exile at Salerno. Six-and-thirty of his successors, till their retreat to Avignon, maintained an unequal contest with the Romans; their age and dignity were often violated; and the churches, in the solemn rites of religion, were polluted with sedition and murder. A repetition of such capricious brutality, with

on the clergy by Geoffrey, the father of Henry II. When he was
master of Normandy, the chapter of Sena prevailed, without his consent, to proceed to the election of a bishop, upon which he or all the priests, with the bishop elect, to be castrated, and made all their articles he brought him in a platter. Of the pain and danger they might justify complain; yet, since they had vowed chastity, he deprived them of a superfluous treasure.

* From Livi 12 and Gregory vii., an authentic and contemporary series of the lives of the popes by the cardinal of Aragon, Pandolphus Placentius, Bernard Guido, etc., is inserted in the Italian Historians of Muratori (tom. iii, p. 6, p. 271-683), and has been always before my eyes.

* The dates of years in the margin may throughout this chapter be understood as exact references to the Annals of Muratori; my ordinary
out connection or design, would be tedious and disgusting; and I shall content myself with some events of the twelfth century, which represent the state of the popes and the city. On Holy Thursday, while Paschal officiated before the altar, he was interrupted by the clamours of the multitude, who, imperiously demanded the confirmation of a favourite magistrate. His silence exasperated their fury; his pious refusal to mingle the affairs of earth and heaven was encountered with menaces and oaths, that he should be the cause and the witness of the public ruin. During the festival of Easter, while the bishop and the clergy, barefoot and in procession, visited the tombs of the martyrs, they were twice assaulted, at the bridge of St. Angelo, and before the capitol, with volleys of stones and darts. The houses of his adherents were levelled with the ground: Paschal escaped with difficulty and danger: he levied an army in the patrimony of St. Peter; and his last days were embittered by suffering and inflicting the calamities of civil war. The scenes that followed the election of his successor, Gelasius the second, were still more scandalous to the church and city. Cencio Frangipani, a potent and fractious baron, burst into the assembly, furious and in arms;
the cardinals were stripped, beaten, and trampled under foot; and he seized, without pity or respect, the vicar of Christ by the throat. Gelasius was dragged by his hair along the ground, buffeted with blows, wounded with spurs, and bound with an iron chain in the house of his brutal tyrant. An insurrection of the people delivered their bishop; the rival families opposed the violence of the Frangipani; and Cencio, who sued for pardon, repeated of the failure, rather than of the guilt, of his enterprise. Not many days had elapsed, when the pope was again assaulted at the altar. While his friends and enemies were engaged in a bloody contest, he escaped in his sacerdotal garments. In this unworthy flight, which excited the compassion of the Roman matrons, his attendants were scattered or unhorsed; and, in the fields behind the church of St. Peter, his successor was found alone and half-dead with fear and fatigue.—Shaking the dust from his feet, the apostle withdrew from a city in which his dignity was insulted and his person was endangered; and the vanity of sacerdotal ambition is revealed in the involuntary confession, that one emperor was more tolerable than twenty. These

* Ego enim Doro et ecclesia dico, et inquantum possibile est, malum unum imperatorem quam tot dominus (Vit. Gelso, 6, p. 398).
examples might suffice; but I cannot forget the sufferings of two pontiffs of the same age, the second and third of the name of Lucius. The former, as he ascended in battle-array to assault the capitol, was struck on the temple by a stone, and expired in a few days. The latter was severely wounded in the persons of his servants. In a civil commotion, several of his priests had been made prisoners; and the inhuman Romans, reserving one as a guide for his brethren, put out their eyes, crowned them with ludicrous mitres, mounted them on asses with their faces to the tail, and extorted an oath, that, in this wretched condition, they should offer themselves as a lesson to the head of the church. Hope or fear, lassitude or remorse, the characters of the men, and the circumstances of the times, might sometimes obtain an interval of peace and obedience; and the pope was restored with joyful acclamations to the Lateran or Vatican, from whence he had been driven with threats and violence. But the root of mischief was deep and perennial; and a momentary calm was preceded and followed by such tempests as had almost sunk the bark of St. Peter. Rome continually presented the aspect of war and discord; the churches and palaces were fortified and assaulted by the factions and families; and, after giving peace to Europe, Calistus the second alone had resolution and power to prohibit the use of private arms in the metropolis. Among the nations who revered the apostolic throne, the tumults of Rome provoked a general indignation; and, in a letter to his disciple Eugenius the third, St. Bernard, with the sharp-
ness of his wit and zeal, has stigmatised the vices of the rebellious people. "Who is ignorant," says the monk of Clairvaux, "of the vanity and arrogance of the Romans? a nation nursed in sedition, cruel, untractable, and scornful to obey, unless they are too weak to resist. When they promise to serve, they aspire to reign; if they swear allegiance, they watch the opportunity of revolt; yet they vent their discontent in loud clamours if your doors or your councils are shut against them. Dextrous in mischief, they have never learnt the science of doing good. Odious to earth and heaven, impious to God, seditious among themselves, jealous of their neighbours, inhuman to strangers, they love no one, by no one are they beloved; and while they wish to inspire fear, they live in base and continual apprehension. They will not submit; they know how to govern; faithless to their superiors, intolerable to their equals, ungrateful to their benefactors, and alike imprudent in their demands and their refusals. "Lofty in promise, poor in execution: adulation and calumny, perfidy, and treason, are the familiar arts of their policy." Surely this dark portrait is not coloured by the pencil of Christian charity; yet the features, however harsh and

---

1 Quid tam notum, scilicet quern protevis et serviamus Romanorum? Quum insignita poelo, tributum assensit, gessum inmittit et intractabiliique saeculo adhibe, subit memin, nisi cum non silet resistent (de Considerat. lib. iv. c. 2, p. 441). The saint takes breath, and then begins again: Hi, invisi terrae et celestis, utrique injure manus, &c., p. 440.

2 As a Roman citizen, Ferrebone takes leave to observe, that Bernard, though a saint, was a man: that he might be provoked by regiment,
ugly, express a lively resemblance of the Romans of the twelfth century.

The Jews had rejected the Christ when he appeared among them in a plebeian character; and the Romans might plead their ignorance of his viceroy when he assumed the pomp and pride of a temporal sovereign. In the busy age of the crusades, some sparks of curiosity and reason were rekindled in the western world: the heresy of Bulgaria, the panecilian sect, was successfully transplanted into the soil of Italy and France; the Gnostic visions were mingled with the simplicity of the gospel; and the enemies of the clergy reconciled their passions with their conscience, the desire of freedom with the profession of piety. The trumpet of Roman liberty was first sounded by Arnold of Brescia, whose promotion in the church was confined to the lowest rank, and who wore the monastic habit rather as a garb of poverty.
than as an uniform of obedience. His adversaries could not deny the wit and eloquence which they severely felt: they confess with reluctance the specious purity of his morals; and his errors were recommended to the public by a mixture of important and beneficial truths. In his theological studies, he had been the disciple of the famous and unfortunate Abelard, who was likewise involved in the suspicion of heresy: but the lover of Eloisa was of a soft and flexible nature; and his ecclesiastic judges were edified and disarmed by the humility of his repentance. From this master, Arnold most probably imbibed some metaphysical definitions of the trinity, repugnant to the taste of the times: his ideas of baptism and the eucharist are loosely censured; but a political heresy was the source of his fame and misfortunes. He presumed to quote the declaration of Christ, that his kingdom is not of this world: he boldly maintained, that the sword and the sceptre were entrusted to the civil magistrate; that temporal honours and possessions were lawfully vested in secular persons; that the abbots, the bishops, and the pope himself, must renounce either their state or their salvation; and that after the loss of their revenues, the voluntary tithes and oblations of the faithful would suffice, not indeed for luxury and avarice, but for a frugal life in the exercise of spiritual labours. During a short time, the

* The wicked wit of Bayle was amused in composing, with much levity and learning, the articles of Abelard, Foucher, Helias, in his Dictionnaire Critique. The dispute of Abelard and St. Bernard, of scholastic and positive divinity, is well understood by Musbein (Institut. Hist. Eccles. p. 412-413).
preacher was revered as a patriot; and the discontent, or revolt, of Brescia against her bishop was the first fruits of his dangerous lessons. But the favour of the people is less permanent than the resentment of the priest; and after the heresy of Arnold had been condemned by Innocent the second, in the general council of the Lateran, the magistrates themselves were urged by prejudice and fear to execute the sentence of the church. Italy could no longer afford a refuge, and the disciple of Abelard escaped beyond the Alps, till he found a safe and hospitable shelter in Zurich, now the first of the Swiss cantons. From a Roman station, a royal villa, a chapter of noble virgins, Zurich had gradually increased to a free and flourishing city; where the appeals of the Milanese were sometimes tried by the imperial commissaries. In an age less ripe for reformation, the precursor of Zuingleius was beard with applause: a brave and simple people imbibed and

---

Dumnatus ab filo
Precurse, qui numero veritatis cunctis notatur.
Nomen ab honore sunt: nullabile vit.

We may applaud the sincerity, and correctness of Lugmirius, who turns the unjustified name of Innocent vi into a compliment.

* A Roman inscription of Sallve Turciciana has been found at Zürich (d'Abbeville, Notice de Vaudains Guide, p. 642-644), but it is without sufficient warrant, that the city and canton have nuper, and even monopolized, the name of Turgium and Pagus Turginnus.

* Guilmin (de Rhenu Helvetica, i. iii. c. 5, p. 106) recapitulates the donation (a. p. 833) of the emperor Lewis the pious, to his daughter the abbess Hildegardus. Curtils moneanse Turgium be dominid Alamannic in pago Durgangradt, with villages, woods, meadow, waters, steam, churches, &c. a noble gift. Charles the bold gave the fort montany; the city was walled under Otton v, and the line of the bishop of Frisingen.

Nobile Turcium multenum et caelestem,
in repose, with piération, by the antiquaries of Zürich.

**VOL. XII.**
long retained the colour of his opinions; and his art, or merit, reduced the bishop of Constance, and even the pope's legate, who forgot, for his sake, the interest of their master and their order. Their tardy zeal was quickened by the fierce exhortations of St. Bernard; and the enemy of the church was driven, by persecution, to the desperate measure of erecting his standard in Rome itself, in the face of the successor of St. Peter.

Yet the courage of Arnold was not devoid of discretion: he was protected, and had perhaps been invited, by the nobles and people; and in the service of freedom, his eloquence thundered over the seven hills. Blending in the same discourse the texts of Livy and St. Paul, uniting the motives of gospel, and of classic, enthusiasm, he admonished the Romans, how strangely their patience and the vices of the clergy had degenerated from the primitive times of the church and the city. He exhorted them to assert the inalienable rights of men and Christians; to restore the laws and magistrates of the republic; to respect the name of the emperor; but to confine their shepherd to the spiritual government of his flock. Nor could his spiritual government escape the

He exhorts the Romans to restore the republic.

He advised the Romans,

Consilii arbitrioque sua moderantior summa
Arbitrio, vertenti sunt: all juris in hic re
Pomphili summa, medium aequat regi
Succitavit populo: Sic iuventus studiisque
Mapeitate, rursus germinans in sacros miles.

Nor is the poetry of Gunther different from the prose of Otho.
censure and control of the reformer; and the inferior clergy were taught, by his lessons, to resist the cardinals, who had usurped a despotic command over the twenty-eight regions or parishes of Rome. The revolution was not accomplished without rapine and violence, the effusion of blood, and the demolition of houses; the victorious faction was enriched with the spoils of the clergy and the adverse nobles. Arnold of Brescia enjoyed, or deplored, the effects of his mission: his reign continued above ten years, while two popes, Innocent the second and Anastasius the fourth, either trembled in the Vatican, or wandered as exiles in the adjacent cities. They were succeeded by a more vigorous and fortunate pontiff, Adrian the fourth, the only Englishman who has ascended the throne of St. Peter; and whose merit emerged from the mean condition of a monk, and almost a beggar, in the monastery of St. Albans. On the first provocation, of a cardinal killed or wounded in the streets, he cast an interdict on the guilty people; and, from Christmas to Easter, Rome was deprived of the real or imaginary comforts of religious worship. The Romans had despised their temporal prince: they submitted, with grief and terror, to the censures of their spiritual father: their guilt was expiated by penance, and the banishment of the

---

* See Baronius (a. a. 1148, No. 36, 39) from the Vatican acts. He loudly condemns Arnold (a. a. 1141, No. 9) as the father of the political heretics, whose influence they hast him in France.

* The English reader may consult the Biographia Britannica, Adrard iv.; but our own writers have added nothing to the fame or merits of their countryman.
seditious preacher was the price of their absolution. But the revenge of Adrian was yet unsatisfied, and the approaching coronation of Frederic Barbarossa was fatal to the bold reformer, who had offended, though not in an equal degree, the heads of the church and state. In their interview at Viterbo, the pope represented to the emperor the furious ungovernable spirit of the Romans; the insults, the injuries, the fears, to which his person and his clergy were continually exposed; and the pernicious tendency of the heresy of Arnold, which must subvert the principles of civil, as well as ecclesiastical, subordination. Frederic was convinced by these arguments, or tempted by the desire of the imperial crown; in the balance of ambition, the innocence or life of an individual is of small account; and their common enemy was sacrificed to a moment of political concord. After his retreat from Rome, Arnold had been protected by the viscounts of Campania, from whom he was extorted by the power of Caesar; the prefect of the city pronounced his sentence; the martyr of freedom was burnt alive in the presence of a careless and ungrateful people; and his ashes were cast into the Tyber, lest the heretics should collect and worship the relics of their master. The clergy triumphed in his death; with his ashes, his sect was dispersed; his memory still lived in the minds of the Romans. From his school they had probably derived a new article of

* Besides the historian and poet already quoted, the last adventures of Arnold are related by the biographer of Adrian, i.e. (Marzari, Script. Herum Ital., tom. iii., p. 4, p. 441, 442).
faith, that the metropolis of the catholic church is exempt from the penalties of excommunication and interdict. Their bishops might argue, that the supreme jurisdiction, which they exercised over kings and nations, more especially embraced the city and diocese of the prince of the apostles. But they preached to the winds, and the same principle that weakened the effect, must temper the abuse, of the thunders of the Vatican.

The love of ancient freedom has encouraged a belief, that as early as the tenth century, in their first struggles against the Saxon Otho, the commonwealth was vindicated and restored by the senate and people of Rome; that two consuls were annually elected among the nobles, and that ten or twelve plebeian magistrates revived the name and office of the tribunes of the commons. But this venerable structure disappears before the light of criticism. In the darkness of the middle ages, the appellations of senators, of consuls, of the sons of consuls, may sometimes be discovered.

* Domange (de Jure Latinitatis mediae et infimae, lib. III, cap. i. p. 346) gives us a quotation from Alcuin (Cant. 1. ii. 4) Deo consulis er nihil est quem deconsulet habet, qui non deconsulet consul, exempli graviora resoria permattat. See also Signaio, the Regius Italian. i. vi, cap. tom. ii. p. 100, I read of the consuls and tribunes of the tenth century. Both Mandonis, and even Signaio, too truly copied the classic method of supplying, from reason or fancy, the deficiency of record.*

* In the panegyric of Boemhardus (Muratori, Script. Rom. Italic. nova edition. ii. p. 1. p. 480) a Roman is mentioned as annulis natus in the beginning of the tenth century. Muratori, loc. cit. v. discovered, in the years 924 and 926, Guiternes in his munera consul et dux, Georgius consul et dux, and in 1013, Romanus, brother of Gregory, also, prudently, but equally, styles himself consul et dux et annum Romanorum senatus.

T. 3
They were bestowed by the emperors, or assumed by the most powerful citizens, to denote their rank, their honours, and perhaps the claim of a pure and patrician descent; but they float on the surface, without a series or a substance, the titles of men, not the orders of government; and it is only from the year of Christ one thousand one hundred and forty-four, that the establishment of the senate is dated, as a glorious era, in the acts of the city. A new constitution was hastily framed by private ambition, or popular enthusiasm; nor could Rome, in the twelfth century, produce an antiquary to explain, or a legislator to restore, the harmony and proportions of the ancient model. The assembly of a free, of an armed, people will ever speak in loud and weighty acclamations. But the regular distribution of the thirty-five tribes, the nice balance of the wealth and numbers of the centuries, the debates of the adverse orators, and the slow operation of votes and ballot, could not easily be adapted by a blind

As late as the tenth century, the Greek emperors conferred on the dukes of Vézénex, Naples, Amalfi, &c. the title of senator, or consiliarius (see Chron. Sagonini, passim); and the successors of Charlemagne would not abdicate any of their prerogatives. But, in general, the names of consul and senator, which may be found among the Frank and German, signify no more than count and lord (Sigwart, Durosse, Glaser). The modern writers are often ambitious of the classic words.

The most constitutional form is a diploma of Otto III. (G. A. 317), Constitutum secundae populorum Romanarum; but the act is probably spurious. At the coronation of Henry I. (a. D. 1014), the historian Ditmar (apud Muratori, dissert. xxxi.) describes him, a seminum, quattuor decem vallatium, quantum secus castellis, alti potior, sancta ecclesiæ cum saculis. The senate is mentioned in the genealogy of Bavonarius (p. 406).
multitude, ignorant of the arts, and insensible of the benefits, of legal government. It was proposed by Arnold to revive and discriminate the equestrian order; but what could be the motive or measure of such distinction? The pecuniary qualification of the knights must have been reduced to the poverty of the times: those times no longer required their civil functions of judges and farmers of the revenue; and their primitive duty, their military service on horseback, was more nobly supplied by feudal tenures and the spirit of chivalry. The jurisprudence of the republic was useless and unknown: the nations and families of Italy who lived under the Roman and barbaric laws were insensibly mingled in a common mass; and some faint tradition, some imperfect fragments, preserved the memory of the code and pandects of Justinian. With their liberty the Romans might doubtless have restored the appellation and office of consul; had they not disdained a title so promiscuously adopted in the Italian cities, that it has finally settled on the humble station of the agents of commerce in a foreign land. But the rights of the tribunes, the formidable word that arrested the public counsels, suppose or must produce a legitimate democracy. The old patricians were the subjects, the modern barons the tyrants, of the state; nor would the enemies of peace and order;

*In ancient Rome, the equestrian order was not ranked with the senators and people as a third branch of the republic till the establishment of Censor, who assumes the merit of the establishment (Plin. Hist. Natur. xxiii, 3. Rouault République Romaine, tom. i. p. 134-135).
who insulted the vicar of Christ, have long respected the unarmed sanctity of a plebeian magistrate."

The revolution of the twelfth century, which gave a new existence and era to Rome, we may observe the real and important events that marked or confirmed her political independence. 1. The Capitoline hill, one of her seven eminences, is about four hundred yards in length, and two hundred in breadth. A flight of an hundred steps led to the summit of the Tarpeian rock; and far steeper was the ascent before the declivities had been smoothed, and the precipices filled by the ruins of fallen edifices. From the earliest ages, the Capitol had been used as a temple in peace, a fortress in war; after the loss of the city, it maintained a siege against the victorious Gaul, and the sanctuary of empire was occupied, assaulted, and burnt, in the civil wars of Vitellius and Vespasian. The temples of Ju-

---

**The republican plan of Arnold of Brescia is thus stated by Gersdorff:**

> Quin stium studia tribus revere reparsur:  
> Nomen plebso sequere censere sestuca,  
> Juris tribunorum, sanctum reparer senatum,  
> Et signa trismu, autemque reparsus leges.  
> lapae ruinae, et udum pendentia muri  
> Reddare primum Capitolin priscus iuris.

But of these reformation, some were no more than ideas, others no more than words.

---

* After many disputes among the antiquaries of Rome, it seems determined, that the summit of the Capitoline hill next the river is strictly the Mona Tarpea, the Arx; and that on the other summit, the church and convent of Araveli, the barefoot friars of St. Francis, occupy the temple of Jupiter (Nardini, Roma Antica, I. v, c. 11-16).  
* Tacit. Hist. iii, 69, 70.
piter and his kindred deities had crumbled into
dust; their place was supplied by monasteries and
houses; and the solid walls, the long and shiel-
ing porticoes, were decayed or ruined by the
lapse of time. It was the first act of the Romans,
an act of freedom, to restore the strength, though
not the beauty, of the capital; to fortify the seat
of their arms and counsels; and as often as they
ascended the hill, the coldest minds must have
glowed with the remembrance of their ancestors.

The first Caesars had been invested with the
exclusive coinage of the gold and silver; to the
senate they abandoned the baser metal of bronze
or copper. The emblems and legends were in-
scribed on a more ample field by the genius of
flattery; and the prince was relieved from the
care of celebrating his own virtues. The successor
of Diocletian despised even the flattery of the se-
gate: their royal officers at Rome, and in the pro-
vinces, assumed the sole direction of the mint;
and the same prerogative was inherited by the
Gothic kings of Italy, and the long series of the
Greek, the French, and the German dynasties.
After an abdication of eight hundred years, the
Roman senate asserted this honourable and lucra-
tive privilege; which was tacitly renounced by
the popes, from Paschal the second to the estab-
ishment of their residence beyond the Alps.

* This partition of the noble and baser metals between the emperor
and senate must however be adopted, not as a positive fact, but as the
probable opinion of the best antiquaries (see the science des Médailles
of the Père Jouhery, tom. ii, p. 208-211, in the improved and correct
edition of the Baron de la Bastie).
Some of these republican coins of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries are shewn in the cabinets of the curious. On one of these, a gold medal, Christ is depicted holding in his left hand a book with this inscription: "The vow of the Roman senate and people: Rome the capital of the world." On the reverse, St. Peter delivering a banner to a kneeling senator in his cap and gown, with the name and arms of his family impressed on his shield. With the empire, the prefect of the city had declined to a municipal officer; yet he still exercised in his last appeal the civil and criminal jurisdiction: and a drawn sword, which he received from the successors of Otho, was the mode of his investiture and the emblems of his functions. The dignity was confined to the noble families of Rome: the choice of the people was ratified by the pope; but a triple oath of fidelity must have often embarrassed the prefect in the conflict of adverse

* In his twenty-seventh dissertation on the Antiquities of Italy (tom. ii. p. 332-340), M. Monnier exhibits a series of the senatorian coins, which bear the obverse names of effectuatu, effectuatu, potestas, imperium. During this period, all the popes, without exception, Bennetx xix., abstained from the right of coming, which was resumed by his successor Benedix xit, and regularly exercised in the court of Avignon.

* A German historian, Georg of Heerenberg, in his Miscellanea, tom. i. p. 64, quoted Schmidt, Hist. des Allemands, tom. iii. p. 263, thus describes the constitution of Rome in the sixteenth century: Grandibus urbibus et urbibus novissimi spectantes ad Romanum pontificem, quippe ad Romanum imperatorum; sibi illius urbium urbium prefectum, qui de sub dignitate respectuum urbis, videlicet dominium papam colit habens, et dominium imperatorum a quo accepta suae potestatis insignis, ac(ur) diditum exercitum.
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

of the senate, and people. iv. After the revival of the senate, the conscript fathers (if I may use the expression) were invested with the legislative and executive power; but their views seldom

* The words of a contemporary writer (Pandolphi, Pisa, i., p. 337, 338) describe the election and oath of the prefect in 1116, in the consuls' presence: "locum praefecturae ... Ladinus praefectura ... committeram opulenter ... juramentum pecunia in omnem subventionem ... confirmavit sum in urbe praefecturae postum.

* Ursula personis ad illum fideltatem recipit, et per maximum quod ubi domino de praefectura cum publico invenerit, quis usque ad remissum juramentum fideltatis imperioi tant obligatur et ab eo praefectura tumui invenerat (Gesta Innocentii iii. in Muratorii, tom. iii, p. 1, p. 487.)

* See Otha Prizium, Chron. viii., 31, de Greg. Frederic i., 44, c. 27.
reached beyond the present day; and that day was most frequently disturbed by violence and tumult. In its utmost plenitude, the order or assembly consisted of fifty-six senators, the most eminent of whom were distinguished by the title of counsellors: they were nominated, perhaps annually, by the people; and a previous choice of their electors, ten persons in each region, or parish, might afford a basis for a free and permanent constitution. The popes, who in this tempest submitted rather to bend than to break, confirmed, by treaty, the establishment and privileges of the senate, and expected from time, peace, and religion, the restoration of their government. The motives of public and private interest might sometimes draw from the Romans an occasional and temporary sacrifice of their claims; and they renewed their oath of allegiance to the successor of St. Peter and Constantine, the lawful head of the church and the republic.

* Our countryman, Roger Hoveden, speaks of the single senators of the Cesarian family, &c. quorum tempusque munus regalum Roma quam nunc (s. s. 1194) est temporibus illi sensum (Hoveden, Gloss. tom vi. p. 101, Senatorum). 

† Muratari (diserti. alli, tom. iii, p. 783-788) has published an original treaty: Concilia inter D. nostrum papam Clementum m, et senatorem populi Romani super regulibus et aliis dignitibus urbis, &c. anno 44° senatus. The senate speaks, and speaks with authority: Reulmus ad praetorem... habitationem... debeat presbyteria... juridicos praeceps et senatorum, &c. A chartula de Tenementis Tuisenduali, datata in the forty-seventh year of the same era, and confirmed decreta unionum multis senatus, acclamationes P. R. publice Capitulis, assensuis. It is there we find the difference of senators consularii and simple senators (Muratari, diserti. alli, tom. iii, p. 785-789).
The union and vigour of a public council was dissolved in a lawless city; and the Romans soon adopted a more strong and simple mode of administration. They condensed the name and authority of the senate in a single magistrate, or two colleagues; and, as they were changed at the end of a year, or of six months, the greatness of the trust was compensated by the shortness of the term. But in this transient reign, the senators of Rome indulged their avarice and ambition; their justice was perverted by the interest of their family and faction; and as they punished only their enemies, they were obeyed only by their adherents. Anarchy, no longer tempered by the pastoral care of their bishop, admonished the Romans that they were incapable of governing themselves; and they sought abroad those blessings which they were hopeless of finding at home. In the same age, and from the same motives, most of the Italian republics were prompted to embrace a measure, which, however strange it may seem, was adapted to their situation, and productive of the most salutary effects.* They chose, in some foreign but friendly city, an impartial magistrate of noble birth and unblemished character, a soldier and a statesman, recommended by the voice of fame and his country, to whom they delegated, for a time, the supreme administration of peace and war. The compact

* Muretii Obser., xiv. tom. iv. p. 68-69.] He has fully explained this mode of government; and the Oeuvres Pastorales, which he has given at the end, is a treatise or sermon on the duties of these foreign magistrates.
between the governor and the governed was sealed with oaths and subscriptions; and the duration of his power, the measure of his stipend, the nature of their mutual obligations, were defined with scrupulous precision. They swore to obey him as their lawful superior; he pledged his faith to unite the indifference of a stranger with the zeal of a patriot. At his choice, four or six knights and civilians, his assessors in arms and justice, attended: the podesta, who maintained, at his own expence, a decent retinue of servants and horses; his wife, his son, his brother, who might bias the affections of the judge, were left behind; during the exercise of his office, he was not permitted to purchase land, to contract an alliance, or even to accept an invitation in the house of a citizen; nor could he honourably depart till he had satisfied the complaints that might be urged against his government.

It was thus, about the middle of the thirteenth century, that the Romans, called from Bologna the senator Brancacone, whose fame and merit have been rescued from oblivion by the pen of an English historian. A just anxiety for his reputation, a clear foresight of the difficulties of the

---

4 In the Latin writers, at least of the silver age, the title of podesta was transferred from the office to the magistrate.

Nuper quid ramus praestantissimum nequeatur.

An Pudens servus, servus, quem parente servitus.

---

* See the life and death of Brancacone, in the Historia Major of Matthew Paris, p. 241, 247, 292, 294, 299, 810, 832, 833, 836, 840. The multitude of pilgrims and soldiery entering Rome and St. Anan's; and the resentment of the English clergy prompted them to rejoice whenever the popes were humbled and oppressed.
task, had engaged him to refuse the honour of their choice; the statues of Rome were suspended, and his office prolonged to the term of three years. By the guilty and licentious he was accused as cruel; by the clergy he was suspected as partial; but the friends of peace and order applauded the firm and upright magistrate by whom those blessings were restored; no criminals were so powerful as to brave, so obscure as to elude, the justice of the senator. By his sentence, two nobles of the Aribaldi family were executed on a gibbet; and he inexorably demolished, in the city and neighbourhood, one hundred and forty towers, the strong shelters of rapine and mischief. The bishop, as a simple bishop, was compelled to reside in his diocese; and the standard of Brancacone was displayed in the field with terror and effect. His services were repaid by the ingratitude of a people unworthy of the happiness which they enjoyed. By the public robbers, whom he had provoked for their sake, the Romans were excited to depose and imprison their benefactor; nor would his life have been spared, if Bologna had not possessed a pledge for his safety. Before his departure, the prudent senator had required the exchange of thirty hostages of the noblest families of Rome; on the news of his danger, and at the prayer of his wife, they were more strictly guarded; and Bologna, in the cause of honour, sustained the thunders of a papal interdict. This generous resistance allowed the Romans to compare the present with the past; and Brancacone was conducted from the prison to the capitol amidst the accla-
motions of a repentant people. The remainder of his government was firm and fortunate; and as soon as envy was appeased by death, his head, enclosed in a precious vase, was deposited on a lofty column of marble.

The impotence of reason and virtue recommended in Italy a more effectual choice; instead of a private citizen, to whom they yielded a voluntary and precarious obedience, the Romans elected for their senator some prince of independent power, who could defend them from their enemies and themselves. Charles of Anjou and Provence, the most ambitious and warlike monarch of the age, accepted at the same time the kingdom of Naples from the pope, and the office of senator from the Roman people. As he passed through the city, in his road to victory, he received their oath of allegiance, lodged in the Lateran palace, and smoothed in a short visit the harsh features of his despotic character. Yet even Charles was exposed to the inconstancy of the people, who saluted with the same acclamations

---

*Matthew Paris thus ends his account: Caput vero Ippianus Bramsiliae in vase pretioso super marmorum columna collectum, in sagmina et rubris et prelibatis, quos eripuere, superstitionis sines et pomposa rudimentum. Fecerat summa superborum quantum et manifester votis matres, et matres accipiant, et regna promoverat et defendit, veritates et justitiae instar et auctor (p. 640). A biographer of Innocent II (Muratori, Script. Hist. i. p. 341, 345) draws less favourable portrait of this Gallican senator.*

*The election of Charles of Anjou to the office of perpetual senator of Rome is mentioned by the historians in the eighth volume of the collection of Muratori, by Nicholas de Senvilla (p. 592), the monk of Padua (p. 724), Sabas Malaspina 12. 8, v. 9; p. 308), and Niccolás de Malaspina (p. 377, p. 999).*
the passages of his rival, the unfortunate Conradin; and a powerful avenger, who reigned in the capitol, alarmed the fears and jealousy of the popes. The absolute term of his life was superseded by a renewal every third year; and the enmity of Nicholas the third obliged the Sicilian king to abdicate the government of Rome. In his bull, a perpetual law, the imperious pontiff asserts the truth, validity, and use, of the donation of Constantine, not less essential to the peace of the city than to the independence of the church; establishes the annual election of the senator; and formally disqualifies all emperors, kings, princes, and persons of an eminent and conspicuous rank. This prohibitory clause was repealed in his own behalf by Martin the fourth, who humbly solicited the suffrage of the Romans, in the presence, and by the authority, of the people, two electors conferred, not on the pope, but on the noble and faithful Martin, the dignity of senator, and the supreme administration of the republic, to hold during his natural life, and to exercise at pleasure by himself or his deputies. About fifty years afterwards, the same title was granted to the emperor Lewis of Bavaria; and the liberty of Rome was acknowledged by her.

The high-sounding bull of Nicholas iv., which founds his temporal sovereignty on the donation of Constantine, is still extant; and as it has been inserted by Boniface vii. in the State of the Dominatus, it must be received by the Catholics, or at least by the papists, as a sacred and perpetual law.

I am indebted to Fleury (Hist. Eccles., tom. xxxiii, p. 306) for an extract of this Roman act, which he has taken from the Ecclesiastical Annals of Odoiron Raynaldus, a. d. 1281, No. 14, 15.
two sovereigns, who accepted a municipal office in the government of their own metropolis.

In the first moments of rebellion, when Arnold of Brescia had inflamed their minds against the church, the Romans artfully laboured to conciliate the favour of the empire, and to recommend their merit and services in the cause of Caesar. The style of their ambassadors to Conrad the third and Frederic the first is a mixture of flattery and pride, the tradition and the ignorance of their own history. After some complaint of his silence and neglect, they exhort the former of these princes to pass the Alps, and assume from their hands the imperial crown. "We beseech your majesty, not to disdain the humility of your sons and vassals, not to listen to the accusations of our common enemies, who calumniate the senate as hostile to your throne, who sow the seeds of discord, that they may reap the harvest of destruction. The pope and the Sicilian are united in an impious league to oppose our liberty and your coronation. With the blessing of God, our zeal and courage has hitherto defeated their attempts. Of their powerful and factious adherents, more especially the Frangipani, we have taken by assault the houses and turrets; some of these are

* These letters and speeches are preserved by Otto bishop of Freising (Fabric. Bibliot. Lat. med. et med. tom. iv., p. 186, 187), perhaps the noblest of historians; he was son of Leopold marquis of Austria; his mother, Agnes, was daughter of the emperor Henry iv., and he was half-brother and uncle to Conrad iii. and Frederic ii. He has left in seven books, a Chronicle of the Times; in two, the Gesa Frederici i.; the last of which is inserted in the sixth volume of Muratori's historians.
occupied by our troops, and some are levelled with the ground. The Milvian bridge, which they had broken, is restored and fortified for your safe passage; and your army may enter the city without being annoyed from the castle of St. Angelo. All that we have done, and all that we design, is for your honour and service, in the loyal hope, that you will speedily appear in person, to vindicate those rights which have been invaded by the clergy, to revive the dignity of the empire, and to surpass the fame and glory of your predecessors. May you fix your residence in Rome, the capital of the world; give laws to Italy and the Teutonic kingdom; and imitate the example of Constantine and Justinian, who, by the vigour of the senate and people, obtained the sceptre of the earth. But these splendid and fallacious wishes were not cherished by Conrad the Franconian, whose eyes were fixed on the Holy land, and who died without visiting Rome soon after his return from the Holy land.

His nephew and successor, Frederic Barbarossa, was more ambitious of the imperial crown; nor had any of the successors of Otho acquired such absolute sway over the kingdom of Italy. Surrounded by his ecclesiastical and secular princes, he gave audience in his camp at Sutri to the ambassadors of Rome, who thus addressed him in a

---

1 We desire (said the ignorant Romans) to restore the empire to its former state; we seek the peace of Constantine and Justinian, who taught our armed senators and popes to maintain our nation.

2 Otho Frising. de Gestis Frederici 1, 1, c. 99, p. 682-684.
free and florid oration: "Incline your ear to the queen of cities; approach with a peaceful and friendly mind the precincts of Rome, which has cast away the yoke of the clergy, and is impatient to crown her legitimate emperor. Under your auspicious influence, may the primitive times be restored. Assert the prerogatives of the eternal city, and reduce under her monarchy the insolence of the world. You are not ignorant, that, in former ages, by the wisdom of the senate, by the valour and discipline of the equestrian order, she extended her victorious arms to the East and West, beyond the Alps, and over the islands of the ocean. By our sins, in the absence of our princes, the noble institution of the senate has sunk in oblivion; and with our prudence, our strength has likewise decreased. We have revived the senate and the equestrian order; the counsels of the one, the arms of the other, will be devoted to your person and the service of the empire. Do you not hear the language of the Roman matron? You were a guest, I have adopted you as a citizen; a Transalpine stranger, I have elected you for my sovereign? and given you myself and all that is mine. Your first and most sacred duty is to swear and subscribe that you will shed your blood for the republic; that you will maintain in peace and justice the laws of the city and the charters of your predecessors; and that you will reward

* Haec pro caesi, civem ex. Audemus filii ex Transalpnum partibus principem caesarem,
with five thousand pounds of silver, the faithful senators who shall proclaim your titles in the capitol. With the name, assume the character, of Augustus." The flowers of Latin rhetoric were not yet exhausted; but Frederic, impatient of their vanity, interrupted the orators in the high tone of royalty and conquest. "Famous indeed have been the fortitude and wisdom of the ancient Romans; but your speech is not seasoned with wisdom, and I could wish that fortitude were conspicuous in your actions. Like all sublunary things, Rome has felt the vicissitudes of time and fortune. Your noblest families were translated to the East, to the royal city of Constantine; and the remains of your strength and freedom have long since been exhausted by the Greeks and Franks. Are you desirous of beholding the ancient glory of Rome, the gravity of the senate, the spirit of the knights, the discipline of the camp, the valour of the legions? you will find them in the German republic. It is not empire, naked and alone; the ornaments and virtues of empire have likewise migrated beyond the Alps to a more deserving people.¹ They will be employed in your defence, but they claim your obedience. You pretend that myself or my predecessors have been invited by the Romans; you mistake the word; they were not invited; they were implored. From its foreign and

¹Non exspectabo nodum imperium, virtute sua antiquam venit, ornamenti sua seclum traxit. Peccus non sunt essentiales, &c. Quem or Livy would not have rejected these images, the eloquence of a barbarian, born and educated in the Hibernian forest.
domestic tyrants, the city was rescued by Charlemagne and Otho, whose ashes repose in our country; and their dominion was the price of your deliverance. Under that dominion your ancestors lived and died. I claim by the right of inheritance and possession, and who shall dare to extort you from my hands? Is the hand of the Franks and Germans enfeebled by age? Am I vanquished? Am I a captive? Am I not encompassed with the banners of a potent and invincible army? You impose conditions on your master; you require oaths: if the conditions are just, an oath is superfluous; if unjust, it is criminal. Can you doubt my equity? It is extended to the meanest of my subjects. Will not my sword be unsheathed in the defence of the capitol? By that sword the northern kingdom of Denmark has been restored to the Roman empire. You prescribe the measure and the objects of my bounty, which flows in a copious but a voluntary stream. All will be given to patient merit; all will be denied to rude importunity." Neither the emperor nor the senate could maintain these lofty pretensions of dominion and liberty. United with the pope, and suspicious of the Romans, Frederic continued his march to the Vatican; his coronation was disturbed by a sally from the

---

* Otho of Frisingen, who surely understood the language of the court and diet of Germany, speaks of the Franks in the twelfth century as the reigning nation (Proscess Franci, equites Franci, manus Francorum); he adds, however, the epithet of Tratasetici.

* Otho Frising. de Gentilis Frederici i, ii, c. 22, p. 720-721. These original and authentic acts I have translated and abridged with freedom, yet with fidelity.
capitol; and if the numbers and valour of the Germans prevailed in the bloody conflict, he could not safely encamp in the presence of a city of which he styled himself the sovereign. About twelve years afterwards, he besieged Rome, to seat an antipope in the chair of St. Peter; and twelve Pisan galleys were introduced into the Tyber; but the senate and people were saved by the arts of negotiation and the progress of disease; nor did Frederic or his successors reiterate the hostile attempt. Their laborious reigns were exercised by the popes, the crusades, and the independence of Lombardy and Germany; they courted the alliance of the Romans; and Frederic the second offered in the capitol the great standard, the Carocci of Milan. After the extinction of the house of Swabia, they were banished beyond the Alps; and their last coronations betrayed the impotence and poverty of the Teutonic Caesars.

*From the chronicles of Ricobaldo and Francis Pepin, Muratori (diarist. xxvi. tom. ii. p. 532) has transcribed this curious fact, with the doggerel verses that accompanied the gift.

Ars deserta ursus age. Viges in ille destine, age! Cursum ab Augusto Frederico Caesaris justa.

Vae Mediolani! jam sectis sperare suum Impetui vires, proprias tibi tellere vires.

Ergo triumphorum urbs potes meminere esse prorsum Quois tibi mittebant reges qui bella gerendar.

Ne si des necare (I now use the Italian dissertation, tom. 1, p. 444) ad modum anno 1737, una copia desce Carocci in marmo dianal ignota si scoprienni Campidiglio, presso alle case de quel luogo, d'era Sisto V. l'aveva fatto rincludere. Stava esse posto sopra quatorze colonne di marmo fino colla sequente inscripion, &c. in the same purpose as the old inscription.

* The decline of the imperial arms and authority in Italy is related with impartial learning in the Annales of Muratori (tom. 7, xi, xii) and
Under the reign of Adrian, when the empire extended from the Euphrates to the ocean, from mount Atlas to the Grampian hills, a fanciful historian amused the Romans with the picture of their infant wars. "There was a time," says Florus, "when Tibur and Praeneste, our summer retreats, were the objects of hostile vows in the capitol, when we dreaded the shades of the Arician groves, when we could triumph without a blush over the nameless villages of the Sahines and Latins, and even Corioli could afford a title not unworthy of a victorious general." The pride of his contemporaries was gratified by the contrast of the past with the present; they would have been humbled by the prospect of futurity; by the prediction, that after a thousand years, Rome, despoiled of empire, and contracted to her primaeval limits, would renew the same hostilities, on the same ground which was then decorated with her villas and gardens. The adjacent territory on either side of the Tyber was always claimed, and sometimes possessed, as the patrimony of St. Peter; but the barons assumed a lawless independence, and the cities too faithfully copied the revolt and discord of the metropolis. In the twelfth and thirteenth cen-

and the reader may compare his narrative with the "Histoire des Allemains" (vol. iii. iv.) by Schmidt, who has deserved the esteem of his countrymen.

*Tibur sive suburbium, ut notam Praeneste delineat, mucupolis in capitolio voto pestamentum. The whole passage of Florus (l. i., c. 11) may be read with pleasure, and has deserved the praise of a man of genius (Oeuvres de Montesquieu, tom. iii. p. 634, 635, quarto edition.)
turies, the Romans incessantly laboured to reduce or destroy the contumacious vassals of the church and senate; and if their headstrong and selfish ambition was moderated by the pope, he often encouraged their zeal by the alliance of his spiritual arms. Their warfare was that of the first consuls and dictators, who were taken from the plough. They assembled in arms at the foot of the capitol; saluted from the gates, plundered or burnt the harvests of their neighbours, engaged in tumultuary conflict, and returned home after an expedition of fifteen or twenty days. Their sieges were tedious and unskillful: in the use of victory, they indulged the meager passions of jealousy and revenge; and instead of adopting the valour, they trampled on the misfortunes, of their adversaries. The captives, in their shirts, with a rope round their necks, solicited their pardon: the fortifications, and even the buildings, of the rival cities, were demolished, and the inhabitants were scattered in the adjacent villages. It was thus that the seats of the cardinal bishops, Porto, Ostia, Albanum, Tusculum, Praeneste, and Tibur or Tivoli, were successively overthrown by the ferocious hostility of the Romans. Of these,

* Ne a feritate Romanorum siciu fuerant Hostilissar, Portuennar, Tusculanenses, Albanenses, Labienses, et super Tiburtin, Aenatem centur (Matthew Paris, p. 737). These events are marked in the Annales and Index (the eighteenth volume) of Muratori.

* For the state or ruin of these suburban cities, the banks of the Tiber, &c. see the lively picture of the P. Labri. (Voyage en Italie, et en Italie) who had not long resided in the neighbourhood of Rome; and the more accurate description of which P. Richarzard (Roma, 1730, in octavo) has added to the topographical map of Collegi.
Porto and Ostia, the two keys of the Tyber, are still vacant and desolate: the marshy and unwholesome banks are peopled with herds of buffaloes, and the river is lost to every purpose of navigation and trade. The hills, which afford a shady retreat from the autumnal heats, have again smiled with the blessings of peace: Pescati has arisen near the ruins of Tusculum: Tibur or Tivoli has resumed the honour of a city, and the manner towns of Albano and Palestrina are decorated with the villas of the cardinals and princes of Rome. In the work of destruction, the ambition of the Romans was often checked and repulsed by the neighbouring cities and their allies: in the first siege of Tibur, they were driven from their camp; and the battles of Tusculum and Viterbo might be compared, in their relative state, to the memorable fields of Thrasymene and Cannae. In the first of these petty wars, thirty thousand Romans were overthrown by a thousand German horse, whom Frederic Barbarossa had detached to the relief of Tusculum; and if we number the slain at three, the prisoners at two thousand, we shall embrace the most authentic and moderate account. Sixty-eight years after—

1 Labat (cum, iii, p. 232) mentions a recent decree of the Roman government, which has severely maritised the pride and poverty of Tibur: in Latin Tiburina non viserunt civitatem.

2 I depart from my usual method, of quoting only by the date the annals of Muratori, in consideration of the critical balance in which he has weighed nine contemporary writers, who mention the battle of Tusculum (tom. iv, p. 45-44).

3 Matthew Paris, p. 345. This bishop of Winchester was Peter du Rupus, who occupied the see thirty-two years (a. D. 1204-1238), and is described, by an English historian, as a soldier and a statesman (p. 178, 399).
ward they marched against Viterbo in the ecclesiastical state with the whole force of the city: by a rare coalition the Teutonic eagle was blended, in the adverse banners, with the key of St. Peter; and the pope’s auxiliaries were commanded by a count of Toulouse and a bishop of Winchester. The Romans were discomfited with shame and slaughter; but the English prelate must have indulged the vanity of a pilgrim, if he multiplied their numbers to one hundred, and their loss in the field to thirty thousand men. Had the policy of the senate, and the discipline of the legions, been restored with the capitol, the divided condition of Italy would have offered the fairest opportunity of a second conquest. But in arms, the modern Romans were not above, and in arts they were far below, the common level of the neighbouring republics. Nor was their warlike spirit of any long continuance: after some irregular sallies, they subsided in the national apathy, in the neglect of military institutions, and in the disgraceful and dangerous use of foreign mercenaries.

Ambition is a weed of quick and early vegetation in the vineyard of Christ. Under the first Christian princes, the chair of St. Peter was disputed by the votes, the venality, the violence, of a popular election: the sanctuaries of Rome were polluted with blood; and, from the third to the twelfth century, the church was distracted by the mischief of frequent schisms. As long as the final appeal was determined by the civil magistrate, these mischiefs were transient and local: the merits were tried by equity or favour; nor could the
unsuccessful competitor long disturb the triumph of his rival. But after the emperors had been divested of their prerogatives, after a maxim had been established, that the vicar of Christ is amenable to no earthly tribunal, each vacancy of the holy see might involve Christendom in controversy and war. The claims of the cardinals and inferior clergy, of the nobles and people, were vague and litigious; the freedom of choice was overruled by the tumults of a city that no longer owned or obeyed a superior. On the decease of a pope, two factions proceeded in different churches to a double election: the number and weight of votes, the priority of times, the merit of the candidates, might balance each other: the most respectable of the clergy were divided; and the distant princes, who bowed before the spiritual throne, could not distinguish the spurious, from the legitimate, idol. The emperors were often the authors of the schism, from the political motive of opposing a friendly to an hostile pontiff; and each of the competitors was reduced to suffer the insults of his enemies, who were not awed by conscience; and to purchase the support of his adherents, who were instigated by avarice or ambition. A peaceful and perpetual succession was ascertained by Alexander the third, who finally abolished the tumultuary votes of the clergy and people, and defined the right of election in the

7 See Mosheim, Inst. Hist. Histor. Eccles., p. 461, 463. Alexander himself had nearly been the victim of a contested election; and the doubtful merit of Innocent had only preponderated by the weight of genius and learning which St. Bernard cast into the scale (see his life and writings).
sole college of cardinals. The three orders of bishops, priests, and deacons, were assimilated to each other by this important privilege; the parochial clergy of Rome obtained the first rank in the hierarchy; they were indifferently chosen among the nations of Christendom; and the possession of the richest benefices, of the most important bishoprics, was not incompatible with their title and office. The senators of the catholic church, the coadjutors and legates of the supreme pontiff, were robed in purple, the symbol of martyrdom or royalty; they claimed a proud equality with kings; and their dignity was enhanced by the smallness of their number, which, till the reign of Leo the tenth, seldom exceeded twenty or twenty-five persons. By this wise regulation, all doubt and scandal were removed, and the root of schism was so effectually destroyed, that in a period of six hundred years, a double choice has only once divided the unity of the sacred college. But as the concurrence of two thirds of the votes had been made necessary, the election was often delayed by the private interest and passions of the cardinals; and while they prolonged their independent reign, the christian world was left destitute of an head. A vacancy of almost three years had preceded the elevation of Gregory the tenth, who resolved to prevent

*The origin, titles, importance, dress, precedence, &c. of the Roman cardinals, are very fully discussed by Thomassin (Disciplina de l'Église, tom. 1., p. 1862-1267., but their purple is now much faded. The sacred college was raised to the noble number of seventy-two, to represent, under his vicar, the disciples of Christ.
the future abuse; and his bull, after some opposition, has been consecrated in the code of the canon law.* Nine days are allowed for the obsequies of the deceased pope, and the arrival of the absent cardinals; on the tenth, they are imprisoned, each with one domestic, in a common apartment or conclave, without any separation of walls or curtains; a small window is reserved for the introduction of necessaries; but the door is locked on both sides, and guarded by the magistrates of the city, to seclude them from all correspondence with the world. If the election be not consummated in three days, the luxury of their tables is contracted to a single dish at dinner and supper; and after the eighth day, they are reduced to a scanty allowance of bread, water, and wine. During the vacancy of the holy see, the cardinals are prohibited from touching the revenues, or assuming, unless in some rare emergency, the government of the church; all agreements and promises among the electors are formally annulled; and their integrity is fortified by their solemn oath and the prayers of the catholics. Some articles of inconvenient or superfluous rigour have been gradually relaxed, but the principle of confinement is vigorous and entire; they are still urged, by the personal motives of health and freedom, to accelerate the moment of their deliverance; and the improvement of ballot or secret votes has wrapt the struggles of

* See the bull of Gregory x, approbante sacro concilio, in the Sexta of the Canon Law (l. i, tit. 9, c. 3), a supplement to the Decretals, which Boniface viii promulgated at Rome in 1298, and addressed to all the universities of Europe.
the conclave in the silky veil of charity and politeness. By these institutions, the Romans were excluded from the election of their prince and bishop; and in the fever of wild and precarious liberty, they seemed insensible of the loss of this inestimable privilege. The emperor Lewis of Bavaria revived the example of the great Otho. After some negotiation with the magistrates, the Roman people was assembled in the square before St. Peter’s; the pope of Avignon, John the twenty-second, was deposed; the choice of his successor was ratified by their consent and applause. They freely voted for a new law, that their bishop should never be absent more than three months in the year, and two days journey from the city; and that if he neglected to re-

---

[The text is cut off and not fully legible.]
turn on the third summons, the public servant should be degraded and dismissed." But Lewis forgot his own dehility and the prejudices of the times: beyond the precincts of a German camp, his useless phantom was rejected; the Romans despised their own workmanship; the antipope implored the mercy of his lawful sovereign; and the exclusive right of the cardinals was more firmly established by this unseasonable attack.

Had the election been always held in the Vatican, the rights of the senate and people would not have been violated with impunity. But the Romans forgot, and were forgotten, in the absence of the successors of Gregory the seventh, who did not keep as a divine precept their ordinary residence in the city and diocese. The care of that diocese was less important than the government of the universal church; nor could the popes delight in a city in which their authority was always opposed, and their person was often endangered. From the persecution of the emperors, and the wars of Italy, they escaped beyond the Alps into the hospitable bosom of France; from the tumults of Rome they prudently withdrew to live.

* Villani (l. xiv. c. 68-71, in Muratori, Script. tom. xiii, p. 641-645) relates this law, and the whole transaction, with much less abhorrence than the prudent Muratori. Any one conversant with the darker ages must have observed how much the sense (I mean the nonsense) of superstition is fluctuating and insipid.

* In the first volume of the Popes of Avignon, see the second origins: Life of John xxvii, p. 142-145, the confusion of the antipopes, p. 145-152, and the laborious notes of Baluzé, p. 714, 715.
and die in the more tranquil stations of Anagni, Perugia, Viterbo, and the adjacent cities. When the flock was offended or impoverished by the absence of the shepherd, they were recalled by a stern admonition that St. Peter had fixed his chair, not in an obscure village, but in the capital of the world; by a ferocious menace that the Romans would march in arms to destroy the place and people that should dare to afford them a retreat. They returned with timorous obedience; and were saluted with the account of an heavy debt, of all the losses which their desertion had occasioned, the hire of lodgings, the sale of provisions, and the various expences of servants and strangers who attended the court. After a short interval of peace, and perhaps of authority, they were again banished by new tumults, and again summoned by the imperious or respectful invitation of the senate. In these occasional retreats, the exiles and fugitives of the Vatican were seldom long, or far, distant from the metropolis; but in the beginning of the fourteenth century the apostolic throne was transported, as it might seem for ever, from the Tyber to the Rhône; and the cause of the transmigration may be deduced from

---

* Romani autem non valentes nec volentes ultra munum celare cupiditatem gravissimi contra popum movere cœperunt questionem, exigentes ab eo urgentissime omnia quae subiecerant per eis absentee; damas et jacturas, videlicet in hospitum locandis, in mercianulis, in mercatibus, in providis, et in aliis modis innumerabiles. Quoddam audisset papae, præcordialiter ingenuit et ad compositum manusculatet, &c. Matt. Paris, p. 757. For the ordinary history of the popes, their life and death, their residence and absence, it is enough to refer to the ecclesiastical annalists, Sponheim and Fleury.
the furious contest between Boniface the eighth and the king of France. The spiritual arms of excommunication and interdict were repulsed by the union of the three estates, and the privileges of the Gallican church; but the pope was not against the carnal weapons which Philip the fair had courage to employ. As the pope resided at Anagni, without the suspicion of danger, his palace and person were assaulted by three hundred horse, who had been secretly levied by William of Nogaret, a French minister, and Sciarrà Colonna, of a noble but hostile family of Rome. The cardinals fled; the inhabitants of Anagni were seduced from their allegiance and gratitude; but the dauntless Boniface, unarmed and alone, seated himself in his chair, and awaited, like the conscript fathers of old, the swords of the Gauls. Nogaret, a foreign adversary, was content to execute the orders of his master: by the domestic enmity of Colonna, he was insulted with words and blows; and during a confinement of three days his life was threatened by the hardships which they inflicted on the obstinacy which they provoked. Their strange delay gave time and courage to the adherents of the church, who rescued him from sacrilegious violence; but his imperious soul was wounded in a vital part; and Boniface expired at Rome in a frenzy of rage and revenge.

* Besides the general historians of the church of Italy and of France, we possess a valuable treatise composed by a learned friend of Thamerus, which his last and best editors have published in the appendix (Histoire particuliere du grand Differand entre Boniface viii. et Philippe le 2e Roi, par Pierre du Pail, tom. vii., p. 31, p. 67-82).
His memory is stained with the glaring vices of avarice and pride; nor has the courage of a martyr promoted this ecclesiastical champion to the honours of a saint; a magnanimous sinner (say the chronicles of the times), who entered like a fox, reigned like a lion, and died like a dog. He was succeeded by Benedict the eleventh, the mildest of mankind. Yet he excommunicated the impious emissaries of Philip, and devoted the city and people of Amagni by a tremendous curse, whose effects are still visible to the eyes of superstition.

After his decease, the tedious and unequal suspense of the conclave was fixed by the dexterity of the French faction. A specious offer was made and accepted, that, in the term of forty days, they would elect one of the three candidates who should be named by their opponents. The archbishop of Bourdeaux, a furious enemy of his king and country, was the first on the list; but his ambition was known; and his conscience obeyed the calls of fortune and the commands of a benefactor, who had been informed by a swift messenger that the choice of a pope was now in his hands. The terms were regulated in a private interview; and with such speed and secrecy was the business transacted, that the unanimous conclave applauded the elevation of Clement the fifth. The

1 It is difficult to know whether Le cab (tom. iv. p. 23-37) be in jest or in earnest, when he supposes that Anagni still feels the weight of this curse, and that the corn fields, or vineyards, or olive trees, are annually blunted by nature, the obsequious handmaid of the pope.

2 See in the Chronicle of Giovanni Villani (l. viii. c. 63, 64, 65; in Brutus, tom. iii) the imprisonment of Boniface viii, and the elevation of Clement v, the last of which, like most anecdotes, is embarrassed with some difficulties.
cardinals of both parties were soon astonished by a summons to attend him beyond the Alps; from whence, as they soon discovered, they must never hope to return. He was engaged, by promise and affection, to prefer the residence of France; and, after dragging his court through Poitou and Gascogny, and devouring, by his expence, the cities and convents on the road, he finally reposed at Avignon, which flourished above seventy years the seat of the Roman pontiff and the metropolis of Christendom. By land, by sea, by the Rhône, the position of Avignon was on all sides accessible; the southern provinces of France do not yield to Italy itself; new palaces arose for the accommodation of the pope and cardinals; and the arts of luxury were soon attracted by the treasures of the church. They were already possessed of the adjacent territory, the Venaissin county, a

1 The original lives of the eight popes of Avignon, Clement v, John xxiii, Benedict xi, Clement vi, Innocent v, Urban v, Gregory x, and Clement vii, are published by Stephen Baluze (Vita Papum Avignonensium; Paris 1683), 3 vols. 8vo., with copious and elaborate notes, and a second volume of acts and documents. With the true seat of an author and a patriot, he devoutly, justifies or excuses the characters of his countrymen.

* The exile of Avignon is compared by the Italians with Babylon and the Babylonish captivity. Such lurid metaphors, more suitable to the vacancy of Petrach than to the judgment of Muratini, are gravely related in Baluze’s preface. The abbé de Sade is distracted between the love of Petrach and of his country. Yet he modestly pleads that many of the local inconveniences of Avignon are now removed, and many of the vices against which the popes declaimed, had been repressed with the Roman court by the strangers of Italy (ibid. i, p. 22–29).

* The count Venaissin was ceded to the pope in 1273 by Philip, king of France, after he had inherited the dominions of the count of Toulouse. Forty years before, the beauty of count Raymond had given them
populous and fertile spot; and the sovereignty of Avignon was afterwards purchased from the youth and distress of Jane, the first queen of Naples and countess of Provence, for the inadequate price of fourscore thousand florins. Under the shadow of the French monarchy, amidst an obedient people, the popes enjoyed an honourable and tranquil state, to which they long had been strangers: but Italy deplored their absence; and Rome, in solitude and poverty, might repent of the ungovernable freedom which had driven from the Vatican the successor of St. Peter. Her repentance was tardy and fruitless: after the death of the old members, the sacred college was filled with French cardinals, who beheld Rome and Italy with abhorrence and contempt, and perpetuated a series of national, and even provincial, popes, attached by the most indissoluble ties to their native country.

them a presence of assured, and they derived some obscure claim from the eleventh century to some lands extra Rhodanum (Valesii Notitia Galliarum, p. 439, 610. Longinurus, Descrip. de la France, tom. i., p. 373—381).

If a possession of four centuries were not itself a title, such objections might assail the bargain; but the purchase-money must be refunded, for indeed it was paid. Civitatem Arvenseem unam . . . per eummodi conditionem pecunia redundantes, &c. (Clna Vita Clemente viii., in Baldeum, tom. i., p. 272. Muratori, Script. tom. iv., p. 12, p. 565). The only temptation for Jane and her second husband was ready money, and without it they could not have returned to the throne of Naples.

Clement vi immediately presented two cardinals, nine French and one English (Vita IV., p. 63; et Baldeum, p. 625, &c.). In 1321, the pope refused two candidates recommended by the king of France, quinxx Cardinales, de quibus xiv de Regno Franciae originem traxisse nescoum in memoratu collegio existant (Thomassin, Disciplina de l'Eglise, tom. i., p. 1261).
The progress of industry had produced and enriched the Italian republics: the era of their liberty is the most flourishing period of population and agriculture, of manufactures and commerce; and their mechanic labours were gradually refined into the arts of elegance and genius. But the position of Rome was less favourable, the territory less fruitful: the character of the inhabitants was debased by indolence and elated by pride; and they fondly conceived that the tribute of subjects must for ever nourish the metropolis of the church and empire. This prejudice was encouraged in some degree by the resort of pilgrims to the shrines of the apostles; and the last legacy of the popes, the institution of the holy year, was not less beneficial to the people than to the clergy. Since the loss of Palestine, the gift of plenary indulgences, which had been applied to the crusades, remained without an object; and the most valuable treasure of the church was sequestered above eight years from public circulation. A new channel was opened by the diligence of Boniface the eighth, who reconciled the vices of ambition and avarice; and the pope had sufficient learning to recollect and revive the secular games, which were celebrated in Rome at the conclusion of every century. To sound without danger the depth of popular credulity, a sermon was seasonably pronounced, a
report was artfully scattered, some aged witnesses were produced; and on the first of January of the year thirteen hundred, the church of St. Peter was crowded with the faithful, who demanded the customary indulgence of the holy time. The pontiff, who watched and irritated their devout impatience, was soon persuaded by ancient testimony of the justice of their claim; and he proclaimed a plenary absolution to all catholics who, in the course of that year, and at every similar period, should respectfully visit the apostolic churches of St. Peter and St. Paul. The welcome sound was propagated through Christendom; and at first from the nearest provinces of Italy, and at length from the remote kingdoms of Hungary and Britain, the highways were thronged with a swarm of pilgrims who sought to expiate their sins in a journey, however costly or laborious, which was exempt from the perils of military service. All exceptions of rank or sex, of age or infirmity, were forgotten in the common transport; and in the streets and churches many persons were trampled to death by the eagerness of devotion. The calculation of their numbers could not be easy nor accurate; and they have probably been magnified by a dextrous clergy, well apprised of the contagion of example; yet we are assured by a judicious historian, who assisted at the ceremony, that Rome was never replenished with less than two hundred thousand strangers; and another spectator has fixed at two millions the total concourse of the year. A trifling oblation from each individual would accumulate a royal treasure; and two priests
stood night and day, with rakes in their hands, to collect, without counting, the heaps of gold and silver that were poured in the altar of St. Paul. It was fortunately a season of peace and plenty; and if forage was scarce, if inns and lodgings were extravagantly dear, an inexhaustible supply of bread and wine, of meat and fish, was provided by the policy of Boniface and the venal hospitality of the Romans. From a city without trade or industry, all casual riches will speedily evaporate: but the avarice and envy of the next generation solicited Clement the sixth to anticipate the distant period of the century. The gracious pontiff complied with their wishes; afforded Rome this poor consolation for his loss; and justified the change by the name and practice of the mosaic jubilee. His summons was obeyed; and the number, zeal, and liberality of the pilgrims did not yield to the primitive festival. But they encountered the triple scourge of war, pestilence, and famine: many wives and virgins were violated in the castles of Italy; and many strangers were pillaged or mur-

* See John Villani (i, viii, c. 36) in the 12th, and the Chronicles of the 11th volume (p. 191, 192) of Muratori's Collection. Papa immemorialium peccamin ab eisdem accept, sum non clericis, sumi servis, &c.

* The two texts of Boniface vii and Clement vii, are inserted in the Corpus Juris Civilis (Extravagant. Commun. l. v. tit. 15, c. 1, 2).

* The sabbatic years and jubilees of the mosaic law (Car. Sigon de Republica Hebraeorum, Opp. num. iv. l. iii. c. 14, 15, p. 151, 152; the suspension of all care and labour, the periodical release of lame, debtors, serviitute, &c. may seem a noble idea: but the execution would be impracticable in a proselyte republic and I should be glad to learn that this ruinous festival was observed by the Jewish people.
dered by the savage Romans, no longer moderated by the presence of their bishop. To the impatience of the popes we may ascribe the successive reduction to fifty, thirty-three, and twenty-five years; although the second of these terms is commensurate with the life of Christ. The profusion of indulgences, there revolt of the protestants, and the decline of superstition, have much diminished the value of the jubilee; yet even the nineteenth and last festival was a year of pleasure and profit to the Romans; and a philosophic smile will not disturb the triumph of the priest or the happiness of the people.

In the beginning of the eleventh century, Italy was exposed to the feudal tyranny, alike oppressive to the sovereign and the people. The rights of human nature were vindicated by her numerous republics, who soon extended their liberty and dominion from the city to the adjacent country. The sword of the nobles was broken; their slaves were enfranchised; their castles were demolished; they assumed the habits of society and obedience; their ambition was confined to municipal honours, and in the proudest aristocracy of Venice or Genoa, each patrician was subject

---

* See the Chronicle of Matteo Villani (l. i. c. 58) in the fourteenth volume of Muratori, and the Memoires sur la Vie de Petrarch, tom. iii, p. 75-89.

* The subject is exhausted by M. Chais, a French minister at the Hague, in his Lettres Historiques et Dognatiques, sur les Donations et les Indulgences; la Haye, 1731, 3 vols. in 12mo; an elaborate and pleasing work, had not the author preferred the character of a polemic to that of a philosopher.
to the laws. But the feeble and disorderly government of Rome was unequal to the task of curbing her rebellious sons, who scorned the authority of the magistrate within and without the walls. It was no longer a civil contention between the nobles and plebeians for the government of the state; the barons asserted in arms their personal independence; their palaces and castles were fortified against a siege; and their private quarrels were maintained by the numbers of their vassals and retainers. In origin and affection, they were aliens to their country; and a genuine Roman, could such have been produced, might have renounced these haughty strangers, who disdained the appellation of citizens, and proudly styled themselves the princes of Rome. After a dark series of revolutions, all records of pedigree were lost; the distinction of surnames were abolished; the blood of the nations was mingled in a thousand channels; and the Goths and Lombards, the Greeks and Franks, the Germans and Normans, had obtained the

* Muratori (Dissert. xlvii) alludes the Annals of Florence, Padua, Genoa, &c., the analogy of the rest, the evidence of Otho of Frisium (De Gen. Frid. i. 1. ii. p. 119), and the submission of the margrave of Este.

* As early as the year 821, the emperor Ladhier found it expedient to interrogate the Roman people, to learn from each individual by what national law he chose to be governed (Muratori, Dissert. xxi).

* Petrarch attacks these foreigners, the tyrants of Rome, in a declaration or speech, full of bold truths and sincere pedantry, in which he applies the maxim, and even reproaches, of the old republic to the state of the fourteenth century (Memoires, tom. iii. p. 137-169).
fairesst possessions by royal bounty or the prerogative of valour. These examples might be readily presumed; but the elevation of an Hebrew race to the rank of senators and consuls, is an event without a parallel in the long captivity of these miserable exiles. In the time of Leo the ninth, a wealthy and learned Jew was converted to christianity, and honoured at his baptism with the name of his godfather, the reigning pope. The zeal and courage of Peter the son of Leo were signalised in the cause of Gregory the seventh, who entrusted his faithful adherent with the government of Adrian's mole, the tower of Crescentius, or, as it is now called, the castle of St. Angelo. Both the father and the son were the parents of a numerous progeny; their riches, the fruits of usury, were shared with the noblest families of the city; and so extensive was their alliance, that the grandson of the proselyte was exalted by the weight of his kindred to the throne of St. Peter. A majority of the clergy and people supported his cause; he reigned several years in the Vatican, and it is only the eloquence of St. Bernard, and the final triumph of Innocent the second, that has branded Anacletus with the epithet of antipope. After his defeat and death, the posterity of Leo is no longer conspicuous; and none will be found of the modern nobles am-

---

6 The origin and adventures of this Jewish family are noticed by Pagi (Critica, tom. iv, p. 423, n. 1124, No. 3., 4.), who draws his information from the Chronographia Maurignaciana, and Arnulfus Segismund de Schlamte (in Murator, Script. Ital. tom. iii, p. i, p. 423-432). The fact must in some degree be true; yet I could show that it had been falsely related, before it was turned into a reproof against the antipope.
bitious of descending from a Jewish stock. It is not my design to enumerate the Roman families which have failed at different periods, or those which are continued in different degrees of splendor to the present time. The old consular line of the 

Fragipani discover their name in the generous act of breaking or dividing bread in a time of famine; and such benevolence is more truly glorious than to have enclosed, with their allies the Corsi, a spacious quarter of the city in the chains of their fortifications: the Savelli, as it should seem: a Sabine race, have maintained their original dignity; the absolute surname of the Ca-picenchi is inscribed on the coins of the first senators; the Conti preserve the honour, without the estate, of the counts of Signia; and the Anni-bal-dii must have been very ignorant, or very modest, if they had not descended from the Carthaginian hero.

But among, perhaps above, the peers and princes of the city, I distinguish the rival houses

* Muratori has given two dissertations (xii and xiii) to the names, surnames, and families of Italy. Some nobles, who glory in their domestic titles, may be offended with his firm and temperate criticism; yet surely some ounces of pure gold are of more value than many pounds of base metal.

* The cardinal of St. George, in his pastoral, or rather metrical history of the election and coronation of Boniface VIII (Muratori, Script, Itali. tom. ii. p. 1, p. 641, &c.), describes the state and families of Rome at the coronation of Boniface VIII (a. d. 1294).

Inserat titulis redimti sanguine et armis
Illustraque viri Honam opusque rubentibus
Nomen in emeritos tamae virtutis honorum
Intolerant se modis festinasque coelant
Aurata fulgentes toga soliiame catarvi.
of Colonna and Ursini, whose private story is an essential part of the annals of modern Rome.

The name and arms of Colonna have been the theme of much doubtful etymology; nor have the orators and antiquarians overlooked either Trajan's pillar, or the columns of Hercules, or the pillar of Christ's flagellation, or the luminous column that guided the Israelites in the desert. Their first historical appearance in the year eleven hundred and four, attests the power and antiquity, while it explains the simple meaning of the name. By the usurpation of Cave, the Colonna provoked the arms of Paschal the second; but they lawfully held, in the Campagna of Rome, the hereditary fiefs of Zagarola and Colonna; and the latter of these towns was probably adorned with some lofty pillar, the relic of a villa or temple. They likewise possessed one moiety of the neighbouring city of Tusculum; a strong presumption of their descent from the counts

Ex ipso devota domus praestantia alibus
Et antiquus, vetustaque, meminisse alium
Pons Colonna praebuit; namque illustris multis
Stephaniana est, Crupi, Audahanio paulet
Praenestini urbis magnam sine virtute nominem

The ancient statues of Rome ii. iii. c. 39, p. 174, 175; distinguish eleven families of humos, who are obliged to swear in these terms before the senator, that they would not harbour or protect any malcontents, outlaws, &c.—a feeble security.

It is pity that the Colonna themselves have not favoured the world with a complete and critical history of their illustrious house. I allude to Muratori (Disert. xii, tom. iii, p. 447, 448).

Pausanias Plut. in VII. Pasch. ii, in Munatari, Scrip. Ital. tom. iii, p. 1, p. 335. The family has still great possessions in the Campagna of Rome; but they have alienated to the Respigliati this original fief of Colonna (Zachmann, p. 238, 239).
of Tuscumum, who in the tenth century were the tyrants of the apostolic see. According to their own and the public opinion, the primitive and remote source was derived from the banks of the Rhine; and the sovereigns of Germany were not ashamed of a real or fabulous affinity with a noble race, which in the revolutions of seven hundred years has been often illustrated by merit, and always by fortune. About the end of the thirteenth century, the most powerful branch was composed of an uncle and six brothers, all conspicuous in arms, or in the honours of the church. Of these, Peter was elected senator of Rome, introduced to the capital in a triumphant car, and hailed in some vain acclamations with the title of Casar; while John and Stephen were declared marquis of Ancona and count of Romagna by Nicholas the fourth, a patron so partial to their family, that he has been delineated, in satirical portraits, imprisoned as it were in a hollow pillar. After his decease, their haughty

* Te lingua sua dedit tellus et pacem Rhenii, says Petruich; and, in 1447, a duke of Guelders and Jiilich acknowledges (Loutain, Hist. du Comte de Constance, tom. ii., p. 239), his descent from the ancestors of Martinus (Otto Colonna), but the royal author of the Memoirs of Brandenburg observes, that the script in his arms has been confounded with the columns. To maintain the Roman origin of the Colonna, it was ingeniously supposed (D'Alvarez Maffei, in the Script. Ital., tom. xii., p. 381), that a cousin of the emperor Nero escaped from the city, and founded Mestre in Germany.

* I cannot overlook the Roman triumph, or victory of Marco Antonio Colonna, who had commanded the pope's galley at the maritime victory of Lepanto (Tiram. Hist., t. i., tom. iii., p. 55, 56; Murat. Oratio x., Opp. tom. i., p. 180-189).

* Muratoni, Annali d'Italia, tom. xx., p. 216, 220.
behaviour provoked the displeasure of the most implacable of mankind. The two cardinals, the uncle and the nephew, denied the election of Boniface the eighth; and the Colonna were oppressed for a moment by his temporal and spiritual arms. He proclaimed a crusade against his personal enemies; their estates were confiscated; their fortresses on either side of the Tyber were besieged by the troops of St. Peter and those of the rival nobles; and after the ruin of Palestrina or Praseoste, their principal seat, the ground was marked with a ploughshare, the emblem of perpetual desolation. Degraded, banished, proscribed, the six brothers, in disguise and danger, wandered over Europe without renouncing the hope of deliverance and revenge. In this double hope, the French court was their surest asylum; they prompted and directed the enterprise of Philip; and I should praise their magnanimity, had they respected the misfortune and courage of the captive tyrant. His civil acts were annulled by the Roman people, who restored the honours and possessions of the Colonna; and some estimate may be formed of their wealth by their losses, of their losses by the damages of one hundred thou-

* Petrarch's attachment to the Colonna, has authorised the abbé de Sade to expatiate on the state of the family in the fourteenth century; the persecution of Boniface VIII, the character of Stephen and his sons, their quarrels with the Uslar, &c. (Memorial sur Petrarch, tom. 1, p. 88-110, 130-140, 154-178, 222-230, 275-306) His criticism often rectifies the lurid stories of Villani, and the arrows of the less diligent moderns. I understand the branch of Stephen to be now extinct.
gold florins which were granted them against the accomplices and heirs of the deceased pope. All the spiritual censures and disqualifications were abolished by his prudent successors; and the fortune of the house was more firmly established by this transient hurricane. The boldness of Sciarra Colonna was signalised in the captivity of Boniface, and long afterwards in the coronation of Lewis of Bavaria; and by the gratitude of the emperor, the pillar in their arms was encircled with a royal crown. But the first of the family in fame and merit was the elder Stephen, whom Petrarch loved and esteemed as an hero superior to his own times, and not unworthy of ancient Rome. Persecution and exile displayed to the nations his abilities in peace and war; in his distress he was an object, not of pity but of reverence; the aspect of danger provoked him to avow his name and country: and when he was asked, "where is now your fortress?" he laid his hand on his heart, and answered, "here." He supported with the same virtue the return of prosperity; and till the ruin of his declining age, the ancestors, the character, and the children of Stephen Colonna, exalted his dignity in the Roman republic, and at the court of Avignon. 11. The Ursini migrated from Spo-

1 Alexander vi had declared the Colonna who adhered to the emperor Frederick, incapable of holding any ecclesiastical benefice (Villani, i. v. c. ii); and the last states of unam excommunication were purged by Sixtus v (Vita di Sixto v, tom. iii., p. 416). Treason, sedition, prescription, are often the best titles of ancient nobility,
leto;" the sons of Ursus, as they are styled in the twelfth century, from some eminent person, who is only known as the father of their race. But they were soon distinguished among the nobles of Rome, by the number and bravery of their kinsmen, the strength of their towers, the honours of the senate and sacred college, and the elevation of two popes, Celestin the third and Nicholas the third, of their name and lineage. Their riches may be accused as an early abuse of nepotism: the estates of St. Peter were alienated in their favour by the liberal Celestin;* and Nicholas was ambitious for their sake to solicit the alliance of monarchs; to found new kingdoms in Lombardy and Tuscany; and to invest them with the perpetual office of senators of Rome. All that has been observed of the greatness of the Co-

---Vallis te proxima misit
Appenninique quae prata viridia sylvis
Sospita mortuus armastra greces protesi.

Monaldeschi (tom. xii. Script. Ital. p. 533) gives the Ursini a French origin, which may be remotely true.

* In the metrical life of Celestin i., by the cardinal of St. George (Muratori, tom. iii. p. 4, p. 613, &c.), we find a luminous, and not ingenuous, passage (t. i. v. 3; p. 203, &c.):

---gravit quem nobilis Ursi (Ueli ?)
Progenies. Romana damas, veterataque magna
Facies in cetera, pompeaque exspecta seuntia,
Bellorumque manu grandi stipata parentium
Cardines apicis secernat fastigia dum
Papatha iterata tenens.

Muratori (Disert. ii., tom. xiii. p. ) observes, that the first Ursini pontificate of Celestine iii was unknown: he is inclined to read Ursi progenies.

* Filii Ursi, quondam Celestini papa nepotes, de Venetia atque Romana dition (Vit. Innocent. ii. in Muratori, Script. tom. iii. p. 6). The partial prodigality of Nicholas iii is more conspicuous in Villani and Muratori. Yet the Ursini would disdain the nephews of a modest pope.

VOL. XII.
louna, will likewise redound to the glory of the Ursini, their constant and equal antagonists in the long hereditary feud, which distracted above two hundred and fifty years the ecclesiastical state. The jealousy of pre-eminence and power was the true ground of their quarrel; but as a specious badge of distinction, the Colonna embraced the name of Ghibelines and the party of the empire; the Ursini espoused the title of Guelphs and the cause of the church. The eagle and the keys were displayed in their adverse banniers; and the two factions of Italy most furiously raged when the origin and nature of the dispute were long since forgotten. After the retreat of the popes to Avignon, they disputed in arms the vacant republic; and the mischiefs of discord were perpetuated by the wretched compromise of electing each year two rival senators. By their private hostilities, the city and country were desolated, and the fluctuating balance inclined with their alternate success. But none of either family had fallen by the sword, till the most renowned champion of the Ursini was surprised and slain by the younger Stephen Colonna. His triumph is stained with the reproach of violating the truce; their defeat was basely avenged by the assassination, before the church-door, of an innocent boy and his two servants. Yet the victorious Co-

* In his fifty-first Dissertation on the Italian Antiquities, Muratori explains the factions of the Guelphs and Ghibelines.
* Petrarch (tom. i. p. 228-230) has celebrated this victory according to the Colonna; but two contemporaries, a Florentine (Giovanni Villani, i. x. c. 220) and a Roman (Ludovico dell'Aquila, p. 303, 334), are less favourable to their arms.
Ionna, with an annual colleague, was declared senator of Rome during the term of five years. And the muse of Petrarch inspired a wish, a hope, a prediction, that the generous youth, the son of his venerable hero, would restore Rome and Italy to their pristine glory; that his justice would exterminate the wolves and lions, the serpents and bears, who laboured to subvert the eternal basis of the marble column.¹

¹ The abbd de Salle (Tom. I. note, p. 61-66) has applied the sixth sonnet of Petrarch, Speto Gentil, &c. to Stephen Columb the younger:

Oeæ, hope, blond, aquile e serpi.
Ad nona gran marmore columnae
Panno noja savente e à se dannio.
In the apprehension of modern times, Petrarch is the Italian songster of Laura and love. In the harmony of his Tuscan rhymes, Italy applauds, or rather adores, the father of her lyric poetry; and his verse, or at least his name, is repeated by the enthusiasm, or affectation of amorous sensibility. Whatever may be the private taste of a stranger, his slight and superficial knowledge should humbly acquiesce in the taste of a learned nation; yet I may hope or presume, that the Italians do not compare the tedious uniformity of sonnets and elegies, with the sublime

* The Mémoires sur la Vie de François Petrarch (Amsterdam, 1764, 1767; 2 vols. in 4to) form a copious, original, and entertaining work, a labour of love, composed from the accurate study of Petrarch and his contemporaries; but the hero is too often lost in the general history of the age, and the author too often languishes in the affectation of politeness and gallantry. In the preface to his first volume, he enumerates and weighs twenty Italian biographers, who have professedly treated of the same subject.
compositions of their epic muse, the original wildness of Dante, the regular beauties of Tasso, and the boundless variety of the incomparable Ariosto. The merits of the lover I am still less qualified to appreciate; nor am I deeply interested in a metaphysical passion for a nymph so shadowy, that her existence has been questioned, for a matron so prolific, that she was delivered of eleven legitimate children, while her amorous swain sighed and sung at the fountain of Vaucluse. But in the eyes of Petrarch, and those of his graver contemporaries, his love was a sin, and Italian verse a frivolous amusement. His Latin works of philosophy, poetry, and eloquence, established his serious reputation, which was soon diffused from Avignon over France and

---

5. The allegorical interpretation prevailed in the fifteenth century; but the wise commentators were not agreed whether they should understand by Laura, religion, or virtue, or the blessed virgin, or the prefaces to the first and second volumes.

6. Laura de Noves, born about the year 1307, was married, in January 1325, to Hugues de Sade, a noble citizen of Avignon, whose jealousy was not the effect of love, since he married a second wife with seven months of her death, which happened the 6th of April 1348, precisely one and twenty years after Petrarch had seen and loved her.

7. Corpus erubescit partibus exstantium from one of these is issued, in the tenth degree, the abbe de Sade, the fond and grateful biographer of Petrarch: and this domestic motive most probably suggested the idea of his work, and urged him to enquire into every circumstance that could affect the history and character of his grandmother (see particularly tom. i. p. 122-133, notes, p. 5-58, tom. ii. p. 433-495, not. p. 76-87).

8. Vaucluse, so familiar to our English travellers, is described from the writings of Petrarch, and the local knowledge of his biographer (Memoires, tom. i. p. 340-359). It was, in truth, the retreat of an hermit, and the moderns are much mistaken, if they place Laura and an happy lover in the grotto.
Italy: his friends and disciples were multiplied in every city; and if the ponderous volume of his writings be now abandoned to a long repose, our gratitude must applaud the man, who by precept and example revived the spirit and study of the Augustan age. From his earliest youth, Petrarch aspired to the poetic crown. The academical honours of the three faculties had introduced a royal degree of master or doctor in the art of poetry; and the title of poet-laureat, which custom, rather than vanity, perpetuates in the English court, was first invented by the Caesars of Germany. In the musical games of antiquity, a prize was bestowed on the victor.

6 Of 1250 pages, in a close print, at Basil in the sixteenth century, but without the date of the year. The abbe de Sale calls aloud for a new edition of Petrarch's Latin works; but I much doubt whether it would redound to the profit of the bookseller, or the amusement of the public.

8 Concerning Selden's Titles of Honour, in his works (vol. iii. p. 457-460). An hundred years before Petrarch, St. Francis received the visit of a poet, qui de impensata versus spectat et satis reo versus spectat.

9 From Augustus to Louis, the muse has too often been idle; and even if I much doubt whether any age or court can produce a similar establishment of a stipendiary poet, who in every reign, and at all events, is bound to furnish twice a year a measure of praise and verse, such as may be sung in the chapel, and, I believe, in the presence, of the sovereign. I speak the more freely, as the best time for abolishing this ridiculous custom, is while the prince is a man of virtue, and the poet a man of genius.

10 Seeocrates his Panegyricus, tom. i. p. 116, 117, edit. Ratti, Cambi, 1729; claims for his native Athens the glory of first instituting and recommending the olympic crown, et non poetae ne poetae ne poetae ne poetae, sed etiam ne poetae, poetae. The example of the Panathenians was imitated at Delphi; but the Olympic games were ignorant of a musical crown, till it was extorted by the vain tyranny of Nero (Sueton. in Nero, c. 23; Philostr. Apud Cassiod. in Lucan; Dion Cassius, or Xiphilin, l. xliv. p. 1632, 1631. Prol. of Greek Antiquities, vol. i. p. 445, 460).
the belief that Virgil and Horace had been crowned in the capitol inflamed the emulation of a Latin bard; and the laurel was endeared to the lover by a verbal resemblance with the name of his mistress. The value of either object was enhanced by the difficulties of the pursuit; and if the virtue or prudence of Laura was inexorable, he enjoyed, and might boast of enjoying, the nymph of poetry. His vanity was not of the most delicate kind, since he applauds the success of his own labours; his name was popular; his friends were active; the open or secret opposition of envy and prejudice was surmounted by the dexterity of patient merit. In the thirty-sixth year of his age, he was solicited to accept the object of his wishes; and on the same day, in the solitude of Vaucluse, he received a similar and solemn invitation from the senate of Rome and the university of Paris. The learning of a theological school, and the ignorance of a

1 The Capitoline games (certamen quinquennale, musicae, oenonic, gymnicae) were instituted by Domitian (Sexton, c. 4) in the year of Christ 86 (Cassius de Die Natali, c. 18, p. 100, ed. Havercamp), and were not abolished in the fourth century (Ammianus de Prolemariis Burdegal, v.). If the crowns were given to superior merit, the exclusion of Statius (capiolæ nostræ introductæ lyra, Syr. l. iii., v. 81) may do honour to the games of the capitol; but the Latin poets who lived before Domitian were crowned only in the public opinion.

2 Petrarch and the senators of Rome were ignorant that the laurel was not the Capitoline, but the Delphic, crown (Pline, Hist. Natur, xv, 99. Hist. Critique de la République des Lettres, tom. 1, p. 159-220). The victors in the capitol were crowned with a garland of oak leaves (Martial, l. iv, epigram 54).

3 The pious grandson of Laura has laboured, and not without success, to vindicate her immaculate chastity against the censures of the grave and the mors of the profane (tom. ii., notes, p. 76-82).
lawless city, were alike unqualified to bestow the ideal though immortal wreath which genius may obtain from the free applause of the public and of posterity; but the candidate dismissed this troublesome reflection, and after some moments of complacency and suspense, preferred the summons of the metropolis of the world.

The ceremony of his coronation* was performed in the capitol by his friend and patron the supreme magistrate of the republic. Twelve patrician youths were arrayed in scarlet; six representatives of the most illustrious families, in green robes, with garlands of flowers, accompanied the procession: in the midst of the princes and nobles, the senator, count of Anguillara, a kinsman of the Colonna, assumed his throne; and at the voice of an herald Petrarch arose. After discoursing on a text of Virgil, and thrice repeating his vows for the prosperity of Rome, he knelt before the throne, and received from the senator a laurel crown, with a more precious declaration, "This is the reward of merit." The people shouted "long life to the capitol and the poet!" A sonnet in praise of Rome was accepted as the effusion of genius and gratitude; and after the whole procession had visited the Vatican, the profane wreath was suspended before the shrine of St. Peter. In the act of diploma, which was

* The whole process of Petrarch's coronation is accurately described by the abbe de Sade (toms. i., p. 425-433, tom. ii., p. 1-6, notes p. 1-13), from his own writings, and the Roman diary of Ludovico Minaldeschi, without mixing in this authentic narrative the more recent fables of Sannocccio Belhene.

* The original act is printed among the Pieces Justificatives in the Memoires sur Petrarch, tom. iii., p. 30-33.
presented to Petrarch, the title and prerogatives of poet laureat are revived in the capitol, after the lapse of thirteen hundred years; and he receives the perpetual privilege of wearing, at his choice, a crown of laurel, ivy, or myrtle, of assuming the poetic habit, and of teaching, disputing, interpreting, and composing, in all places whatsoever, and on all subjects of literature. The grant was ratified by the authority of the senate and people; and the character of citizen was the recompence of his affection for the Roman name. They did him honour, but they did him justice. In the familiar society of Cicero and Livy, he had imbibed the ideas of an ancient patriot; and his ardent fancy kindled every idea to a sentiment, and every sentiment to a passion. The aspect of the seven hills and their majestic ruins confirmed these lively impressions; and he loved a country by whose liberal spirit he had been crowned and adopted. The poverty and debasement of Rome excited the indignation and pity of her grateful son: he dissembled the faults of his fellow-citizens; applauded with partial fondness the last of their heroes and matrons; and in the remembrance of the past, in the hope of the future, was pleased to forget the miseries of the present time. Rome was still the lawful mistress of the world: the pope and the emperor, her bishop and general, had abdicated their station by an inglorious retreat to the Rhône and the Danube; but if she could resume her virtue, the republic might again vindicate her liberty and dominion. Amidst the
indulgence of enthusiasm and eloquence. Petrarch, Italy, and Europe, were astonished by a revolution which realized for a moment his most splendid visions. The rise and fall of the tribune Rienzi will occupy the following pages; the subject is interesting, the materials are rich, and the glance of a patriot-hard will sometimes vivify the copious, but simple, narrative of the Florentine, and more especially of the Roman historian.

* To find the proofs of his enthusiasm for Rome, I need only request that the reader would open, by chance, either Petrarch, or his French biographer. The latter has described the poet’s first visit to Rome (tom. i. p. 323-333). But in the mass of much idle theory and anomaly, Petrarch might have amassed the present and future age with an original account of the city and his coronation.

* It has been treated by the pen of a Jesuit, the P. du Cerceau, whose posthumous work (Conjuration de Nicolas Galerini, dit de Rienzi, Tyran de Rome, en 1357; was published at Paris 1745, in 12mo. I am indebted to him for some facts and documents in John Heckerius, casus of Leip, a contemporary historian (Paucitium Bibliograph. Lat. med. Nov. tom. ii. p. 273, tom. iv. p. 85).

* The aho de Sado, who so freely expatiates on the history of the fourteenth century, might treat as his proper subject a revolution in which the heart of Petrarch was so deeply engaged (Mémoires, tom. ii. p. 30, 31, 338-417, notes, p. 70-108, tom. iii. p. 221-243, 366-373). Not an idea or a fact in the writings of Petrarch has probably escaped him.


* In his third volume of Italian antiquities (p. 249-318), Muratori has inserted the Fragmenta Historiae Romanae ab anno 1327 usque ad annum 1354, in the original dialect of Rome or Naples in the fourteenth century, and a Latin version for the benefit of strangers. It contains the most particular and authentic life of Cola (Nicholas) di Rienzi; which had been printed at Basle 1627, in 4to, under the name of Tomaso Fortiocco, who is only mentioned in this work as having been published by the tribune for forgery. Human nature is scarcely
In a quarter of the city which was inhabited only by mechanics and Jews, the marriage of an innkeeper and a washerwoman produced the future deliverer of Rome.* From such parents Nicholas Ricetti Gahroni could inherit neither dignity nor fortune; and the gift of a liberal education, which they painfully bestowed, was the cause of his glory and untimely end. The study of history and eloquence, the writings of Cicero, Seneca, Livy, Caesar, and Valerius Maximus, elevated above his equals and contemporaries the genius of the young plebeian; he perused with indefatigable diligence the manuscripts and marbles of antiquity; loved to dispense his knowledge in familiar language; and was often provoked to exclaim, "Where are now these Romans? their virtue, their justice, their power? why was I not born in those happy times!" When the

---

* The first and splendid period of Ricetti, his tribunian government, is contained in the eighteenth chapter of the Fragments (p. 388-479), which, in the new division, forms the second book of the history in 38 smaller chapters or sections.

---

...
republic addressed to the throne of Avignon at
embassy of the three orders, the spirit and elo-
quence of Rienzi recommended him to a place
among the thirteen deputies of the commons.
The orator had the honour of haranguing pope
Clement the sixth, and the satisfaction of conver-
sing with Petrarch, a congenial mind; but his
aspiring hopes were chilled by disgrace and po-
verty; and the patriot was reduced to a single
garment and the charity of the hospital. From
this misery he was relieved by the sense of merit
or the smile of favour; and the employment of
apostolic notary afforded him a daily stipend of
five gold florins, a more honourable and extensive
connection; and the right of contrasting, both
in words and actions, his own integrity with the
vices of the state. The eloquence of Rienzi was
prompt and persuasive: the multitude is always
prone to envy and censure: he was stimulated by
the loss of a brother and the impunity of the
assassins; nor was it possible to excuse or exagge-
rate the public calamities. The blessings of peace
and justice, for which civil society has been insti-
tuted, were banished from Rome: the jealous citi-
zens, who might have endured every personal or
pecuniary injury, were most deeply wounded in
the dishonour of their wives and daughters: they
were equally oppressed by the arrogance of the
nobles and the corruption of the magistrates; and
the abuse of arms or of laws was the only circum-

* Petrarch compares the jealousy of the Romans with the easy
temper of the husbands of Avignon (Memoires, tom. i, p. 330).
stance that distinguished the lions from the dogs and serpents of the capitol. These allegorical emblems were variously repeated in the pictures which Rienzi exhibited in the streets and churches; and while the spectators gazed with curious wonder, the bold and ready orator unfolded the meaning, applied the satire, inflamed their passions, and announced a distant hope of comfort and deliverance. The privileges of Rome, her eternal sovereignty over her princes and provinces, was the theme of his public and private discourse; and a monument of servitude became in his hands a title and incentive of liberty. The decree of the senate, which granted the most ample prerogatives to the emperor Vespasian, had been inscribed on a copperplate still extant in the choir of the church of St. John Lateran. A numerous assembly of nobles and plebeians was invited to this political lecture, and a convenient theatre was erected for their reception. The notary appeared, in a magnificent and mysterious habit, explained the inscription by a version and commentary, and descanted with eloquence and zeal on the ancient glories of the senate and people, from whom all legal authority was derived. The supine igno-

---

* The fragments of the Lex Regia may be found in the Inscriptions of Gruter, tom. i., p. 242, and at the end of the Tacitus of Ernesti, with some learned notes of the editor, tom. i.

* I cannot overlook a stupendous and laughable blunder of Muratori. The Lex Regia empowers Vespasian to enlarge the Pomerium, a word familiar to every antiquary. It was not so to the tribune; he confounds it with pomarium an orchard, translates to Jardino de Roma ciuseo Italian, and is copied by the less excusable ignorance of the Latin translator (p. 406) and the French historian (p. 33). Even the learning of Muratori has stumbled over the passage.
rancour of the nobles was incapable of discerning the serious tendency of such representations: they might sometimes chastise with words and blows the plebeian reformer; but he was often suffered in the Colonna palace to amuse the company with his threats and predictions; and the modern Brutus⁶ was concealed under the mask of folly and the character of a buffoon. While they indulged their contempt, the restoration of the good estate, his favourite expression, was entertained among the people as a desirable, a possible, and at length as an approaching, event; and while all had the disposition to applaud, some had the courage to assist, their promised deliverer.

A prophecy, or rather a summons, affixed on the church-door of St. George, was the first public evidence of his designs; a nocturnal assembly of an hundred citizens on mount Aventine, the first step to their execution. After an oath of secrecy and aid, he represented to the conspirators the importance and facility of their enterprise; that the nobles, without union or resources, were strong only in the fear of their imaginary strength; that all power, as well as right, was in the hands of the people; that the revenues of the apostolical chamber might relieve the public distress; and that the pope himself would approve their victory over the common enemies of government and freedom. After securing a faithful band to protect his first declaration, he proclaimed through

⁶ Priest (Bruta) tamen similis, juventem usurps, larga ingenio quaevis simulacrum induerat, ut sub hoc obtentum liberaret ille P. R. Speratur tempus suo. . . . Ille reginam, hic tyrannus con- tremptus (Opp. p. 336).
the city, by sound of trumpet, that on the evening of the following day all persons should assemble without arms before the church of St. Angelo, to provide for the re-establishment of the good estate. The whole night was employed in the celebration of thirty masses of the Holy Ghost; and in the morning, Rienzi, bareheaded, but in complete armour, issued from the church, encompassed by the hundred conspirators. The pope's vicar, the simple bishop of Orvieto, who had been persuaded to sustain a part in this singular ceremony, marched on his right hand; and three great standards were borne aloft as the emblems of their design. In the first, the banner of liberty, Rome was seated on two lions, with a palm in one hand and a globe in the other; St. Paul, with a drawn sword, was delineated in the banner of justice; and in the third, St. Peter held the keys of concord and peace. Rienzi was encouraged by the presence and applause of an innumerable crowd, who understood little, and hoped much; and the procession slowly rolled forwards from the castle of St. Angelo to the capitol. His triumph was disturbed by some secret emotion which he laboured to suppress: he ascended without opposition, and with seeming confidence, the citadel of the republic; harangued the people from the balcony; and received the most flattering confirmation of his acts and laws. The nobles, as if destitute of arms and counsels, beheld in silent consternation this strange revolution; and the moment had been prudently chosen, when the most formidable, Stephen Colonna, was
absent from the city. On the first rumour, he returned to his palace, affected to despise this plebeian tumult, and declared to the messengers of Rienzi, that at his leisure he would cast the madman from the windows of the capitol. The great bell instantly rang an alarm, and so rapid was the tide, so urgent was the danger, that Colonna escaped with precipitation to the suburb of St. Laurence: from thence, after a moment's refreshment, he continued the same speedy career till he reached in safety his castle of Palestrina; lamenting his own imprudence, which had not trampled the spark of this mighty conflagration. A general and peremptory order was issued from the capitol to all the nobles, that they should peaceably retire to their estates: they obeyed; and their departure secured the tranquillity of the free and obedient citizens of Rome.

But such voluntary obedience evaporates with the first transports of zeal; and Rienzi felt the importance of justifying his usurpation by a regular form and a legal title. At his own choice, the Roman people would have displayed their attachment and authority, by lavishing on his head the names of senator or consul, of king or emperor: he preferred the ancient and modest appellation of tribune; the protection of the commons was the essence of that sacred office; and they were ignorant, that it had never been invested with any share in the legislative or executive powers of the republic. In this character, and with the consent of the Romans, the tribune enacted the most salutary laws for the restoration and maintenance
of the good estate. By the first he fulfils the wish of honesty and inexperience, that no civil suit should be protracted beyond the term of fifteen days. The danger of frequent perjury might justify the pronouncing against a false accuser the same penalty which his evidence would have inflicted; the disorders of the times might compel the legislator to punish every homicide with death, and every injury with equal retaliation; but the execution of justice was hopeless till he had previously abolished the tyranny of the nobles. It was formerly provided, that none, except the supreme magistrate, should possess or command the gates, bridges, or towers, of the state; that no private garrisons should be introduced into the towns or castles of the Roman territory; that none should bear arms, or presume to fortify their houses in the city or country; that the barons should be responsible for the safety of the highways and the free passage of provisions; and that the protection of malefactors and robbers should be expiated by a fine of a thousand marks of silver. But these regulations would have been impotent and nugatory, had not the licentious nobles been awed by the sword of the civil power. A sudden alarm from the bell of the capitol could still summon to the standard above twenty thousand volunteers: the support of the tribune and the laws required a more regular and permanent force. In each harbour of the coast, a vessel was stationed for the assurance of commerce; a standing militia of three hundred and
sixty horse and thirteen hundred foot was levied, clothed, and paid, in the thirteen quarters of the city; and the spirit of a commonwealth may be traced in the grateful allowance of one hundred florins or pounds to the heirs of every soldier who lost his life in the service of his country. For the maintenance of the public defence, for the establishment of granaries, for the relief of widows, orphans, and indigent convents, Rienzi applied, without fear of sacrilege, the revenues of the apostolic chamber: the three branches of hearth-money, the salt-duty, and the customs, were each of the annual produce of one hundred thousand florins; and scandalous were the abuses, if in four or five months the amount of the salt-duty could be trebled by his judicious economy. After thus restoring the forces and finances of the republic, the tribune recalled the nobles from their solitary independence; required their personal appearance in the capitol; and imposed an oath of allegiance to the new government, and of submission to the laws of the good estate. Apprehensive for their safety, but still more apprehensive of the danger of a refusal, the princes and barons returned to their houses at Rome in the garb of simple and peaceful citizens: the Colonna and Ursini, the Savelli and Frangipani, were con-
founded before the tribunal of a plebeian, of the
tile buffoon whom they had so often derided; and
their disgrace was aggravated by the indignation
which they vainly struggled to disguise. The
same oath was successively pronounced by the se-
veral orders of society, the clergy and gentlemen,
the judges and notaries, the merchants and arti-
sans; and the gradual descent was marked by
the increase of sincerity and zeal. They swore
to live and die with the republic and the church,
whose interest was artfully united by the nominal
association of the bishop of Orvietto, the pope's
vicar, to the office of tribune. It was the boast
of Rienzi, that he had delivered the throne
and patrimony of St. Peter from a rebellious
aristocracy; and Clement the sixth, who re-
joiced in its fall, affected to believe the profes-
sions, to applaud the merits, and to confirm the
title, of his trusty servant. The speech, per-
haps the mind, of the tribune was inspired with
a lively regard for the purity of the faith; he
insinuated his claim to a supernatural mission
from the Holy Ghost; enforced, by an heavy for-
feiture, the annual duty of confession and com-
munion; and strictly guarded the spiritual as well
as temporal welfare of his faithful people.  

Never perhaps has the energy and effect of a
single mind been more remarkably felt than in
the sudden, though transient, reformation of
Rome by the tribune Rienzi. A den of rob-
ers was converted to the discipline of a camp

The fifteen tribunitian laws may be found in the Roman historian
(whom for brevity I shall name) Fortilobus, l. viii. c. 4.
or convent: patient to hear, swift to redress, inexorable to punish, his tribunal was always accessible to the poor and stranger; nor could birth, or dignity, or the immunities of the church, protect the offender or his accomplices. The privileged houses, the private sanctuaries, in Rome, on which no officer of justice would presume to trespass, were abolished; and he applied the timber and iron of their barricades in the fortifications of the capitol. The venerable father of the Colonna was exposed in his own palace to the double shame of being desirous, and of being unable, to protect a criminal. A mule, with a jar of oil, had been stolen near Capranica; and the lord of the Ursini family was condemned to restore the damage, and to discharge a fine of four hundred florins for his negligence in guarding the highways. Nor were the persons of the barons more inviolate than their lands or houses; and, either from accident or design, the same impartial rigour was exercised against the heads of the adverse factions. Peter Agapet Colonna, who had himself been senator of Rome, was arrested in the street for injury or debt; and justice was appeased by the tardy execution of Martin Ursini, who, among his various acts of violence and rapine, had pillaged a shipwrecked vessel at the mouth of the Tyber. His name, the purple of two

*Fortitunex, I. ii. c. 11. From the account of this shipwreck we learn some circumstances of the trade and navigation of the age. 1. The ship was built and freighted at Naples for the ports of Marseilles and
cardinals, his uncles, a recent marriage, and a mortal disease, were disregarded by the inflexible tribune, who had chosen his victim. The public officers dragged him from his palace and nuptial bed: his trial was short and satisfactory: the bell of the capital convened the people: stript of his mantle, on his knees, with his hands bound behind his back, he heard the sentence of death; and after a brief confession, Ursini was led away to the gallows. After such an example, none who were conscious of guilt could hope for impunity, and the flight of the wicked, the licentious, and the idle, soon purified the city and territory of Rome. In this time (says the historian) the woods began to rejoice that they were no longer infested with robbers; the oxen began to plough; the pilgrims visited the sanctuaries; the roads and inns were replenished with travellers; trade, plenty, and good faith, were restored in the markets; and a purse of gold might be exposed without danger in the midst of the highway. As soon as the life and property of the subject are secure, the labours and rewards of industry spontaneously revive: Rome was still the metropolis of the Christian world; and the fame and fortunes of the tribune were diffused in

and Avignon. 2. The sailors were of Naples and the Isle of Elbeach, less skilful than those of Sicily and Genoa. 3. The navigation from Marseille was a coasting voyage in the mouth of the Tyber, where they took shelter in a storm; but instead of finding the current, unfortunately ran on a shoal; the vessel was stranded, the mariners escaped. 4. The cargo, which was pilfered, consisted of the revenue of Provence for the royal treasury, many bags of pepper and cinnamon, and bales of French cloth, to the value of 20,000 norins: a rich prize.
every country by the strangers who had enjoyed the blessings of his government.

The deliverance of his country inspired Ri-
enzi with a vast, and perhaps visionary, idea of uniting Italy in a great federative republic, of which Rome should be the ancient and lawful head, and the free cities and princes the members and associates. His pen was not less elo-
quent than his tongue; and his numerous epistles were delivered to swift and trusty messengers. On foot, with a white wand in their hand, they traversed the forests and mountains; enjoyed, in the most hostile states, the sacred security of ambassadors; and reported, in the style of flatter-
try or truth, that the highways along their pas-
age were lined with kneeling multitudes, who implored heaven for the success of their undertakings. Could passion have listened to reason; could private interest have yielded to the public welfare; the supreme tribunal and confederate union of the Italian republic might have healed their intestine discord, and closed the Alps against the barbarians of the North. But the propitious season had elapsed; and if Venice, Florence, Sienna, Perugia, and many inferior cities, offered their lives and fortunes to the good estate, the tyrants of Lombardy and Tuscany must despise, or hate, the plebeian author of a free constitution. From them, however, and from every part of Italy, the tribune received the most friendly and respectful answers; they were followed by the ambassadors of the princes and republics: and in this foreign conflux, on all
the occasions of pleasure or business, the low-born notary could assume the familiar or majestic courtesy of a sovereign. The most glorious circumstance of his reign was an appeal to his justice from Lewis king of Hungary, who complained, that his brother, and her husband, had been perfidiously strangled by Jane queen of Naples. her guilt or innocence was pleaded in a solemn trial at Rome; but after hearing the advocates, the tribune adjourned this weighty and invidious cause, which was soon determined by the sword of the Hungarian. Beyond the Alps, more especially at Avignon, the revolution was the theme of curiosity, wonder, and applause. Petrarch had been the private friend, perhaps the secret counsellor, of Rienzi: his writings breathe the most ardent spirit of patriotism and joy; and all respect for the pope, all gratitude for the Colonna, was lost in the superior duties of a Roman citizen. The poet-laureat of the capitol maintains the

7 It was then that Oliver Cromwell's old acquaintance, who remembered his vulgar and ungracious entrance into the house of commons, were astonished at the ease and majesty of the protector at his throne (see Harris's Life of Cromwell, p. 21-34, from Clarendon, Warwick, Whitelock, Walsingham, &c.). The consciousness of merit and power will sometimes elevate the manners to the station.

8 See the causes, circumstances, and effects, of the death of Andrew, in Glanvill (tom. iii, l. xxiii, p. 220-229) and the Life of Petrarch (Memoires, tom. ii, p. 145-148, 243-250, 375-379, notes, p. 21-27). The abbé de Sade wishes to extenuate her guilt.

9 The advocate who pleaded against Jane could add nothing to the logical force and gravity of his master's epistle, Johanna, insinuated with procedure, sustentio potestatis in regnum, neglecta viabilitis, vir alter suscepta, et exsustionibus sequentibus, necis suis se must profite illicit particeps at concubinet. Jane of Naples and Mary of Scotland have a singular conformity.
act, applauds the hero, and mingles with some apprehension and advice the most lofty hopes of the permanent and rising greatness of the republic! While Petrarch indulged these prophetic visions, the Roman hero was fast declining from the meridian of fame and power; and the people, who had gazed with astonishment on the ascending meteor, began to mark the irregularity of its course, and the vicissitudes of light and obscurity. More eloquent than judicious, more enterprising than resolute, the faculties of Rienzi were not balanced by cool and commanding reason: he magnified in a tenfold proportion the objects of hope and fear; and prudence, which could not have erected, did not presume to fortify, his throne. In the blaze of prosperity, his virtues were insensibly tainted with the adjacent vices; justice with cruelty, liberality with profusion, and the desire of fame with puerile and ostentatious vanity. He might have learned, that the ancient tribunes, so strong and sacred in the public opinion, were not distinguished in style, habit, or appearance, from an ordinary plebeian; and that as often as they visited the city on foot, a

1 See the Epistola Hortatoria de Capessenda Republica, from Petrarch to Nicholas Rienzi (Opp. 2. 533-540), and the fifth elegy, or pastoral, a perpetual and obscure allegory.
2 In his Roman Questions, Plutarch (Opuscul. tom. i, p. 505, 506, edit. Graec. Heu. Stephi) states, on the most constitutional principles, the simple greatness of the tribunes, who were not properly magistrates, but a check on magistracy. It was their duty and interest ἰέραμα σκορπάω, οὐκ οὖν τὰ δικαία τοιαύτης τινὰ σχέσιν...

Ω κατεμφάσει (a saying of C. Curio) και οὐκ ἐρωτάσα τε λιπαρά...
single viator, or beadle, attended the exercise of their office. The Gracchi would have frowned or smiled, could they have read the sonorous titles and epithets of their successor, "Nicho-
las, severe and merciful; deliverer of Rome; defender of Italy; friend of mankind, and
of liberty, peace, and justice; tribune august:" his theatrical pageants had prepared the revo-
lution; but Rienzi abused, in luxury and pride, the political maxim of speaking to the eyes, as well as the understanding, of the multitude. From nature he had received the gift of an handsome person," till it was swelled and disfigured by intemperance; and his prop-
ensity to laughter was corrected in the magis-
trate by the affectation of gravity and sternness. He was clothed, at least on public occasions, in a party-coloured robe of velvet or sattin, lined with fur, and embroidered with gold: the rod of justice, which he carried in his hand, was a sceptre of polished steel, crowned with a globe and cross of gold, and inclosing a small fragment of the true and holy wood. In his civil and re-

1 I could not express in English the forehead, though barbarous, title of Zetator Italia, which Rienzi assumed.

2 Era bell' homo (l. ii. c. i. p. 399). It is remarkable that the rise sarcasmos of the Bracciano edition is wanting in the Roman ms. from which Muratori has given the text. In his second reign, when he is painted almost as a monster, Rienzi traverse una ventura torna triangula, a modo de uno Ablato Aciiano, or Aciiano (l. iii. c. 18, p. 323).
The pomp of his knighthood,

A.D. 1547,
August 1.

religious processions through the city, he rode on a white steed, the symbol of royalty: the great banner of the republic, a sun with a circle of stars, a dove with an olive branch, was displayed over his head: a shower of gold and silver was scattered among the populace; fifty guards with halberds encompassed his person; a troop of horse preceded his march; and their tambours and trumpets were of massy silver.

The ambition of the honours of chivalry\(^4\) betrayed the meanness of his birth, and degraded the importance of his office; and the equestrian tribunal was not less odious to the nobles, whom he adopted, than to the plebeians, whom he deserted. All that yet remained of treasure, or luxury, or art, was exhausted on that solemn day. Rienzi led the procession from the capitol to the Lateran; the tediousness of the way was relieved with decorations and games; the ecclesiastical, civil, and military, orders marched under their various banners; the Roman ladies attended his wife; and the ambassadors of Italy might loudly applaud, or secretly deride, the novelty of the pomp. In the evening, when they had reached the church and palace of Constantine, he thanked and dismissed the numerous assembly, with an invitation to the festival of the ensuing day. From

\(^4\) Strange as it may seem, this festival was not without a precedent. In the year 1521, two terms, a Column and an Urn, the usual balance, were erasted knights by the Roman people; their bath was of rose water, their beds were decked with royal magnificence, and they were served at St. Mark's of Arzecell, in the capitol, by the twenty-eight laws. They afterwards received from Robert King of Naples, the sword of chivalry (Hist. Rom. l. i. c. 2, p. 239).
the hands of a venerable knight he received the order of the Holy Ghost; the purification of the bath was a previous ceremony; but in no step of his life did Rienzi excite such scandal and censure as by the profane use of the porphyry vase, in which Constantine (a foolish legend) had been healed of his leprosy by pope Sylvester. With equal presumption the tribune watched or reposed within the consecrated precincts of the baptistery; and the failure of his state-bed was interpreted as an omen of his approaching downfall. At the hour of worship he shewed himself to the returning crowds in a majestic attitude, with a robe of purple, his sword, and gilt spurs; but the holy rites were soon interrupted by his levity and insolence. Rising from his throne, and advancing towards the congregation, he proclaimed in a loud voice: "We summon to our tribunal pope Clement; and command him to reside in his diocese of Rome: we also summon the sacred college of cardinals." We again summon the two pretenders, Charles of Bohemia and Lewis of Bavaria, who style themselves emperors: we likewise summon all the electors of Germany, to inform us on what pretence they have

---

* All parties believed in the leprosy and bath of Constantine (Petrarch, Epist. Famili. vi. 5), and Rienzi justified his own conduct by observing to the court of Avignon, that a case which had been used by a pagan, could not be profaned by a pious Christian. Yet this crime is specified in the bull of excommunication (Hocessius, part de Cereau, p. 189, 190.

* This verbal summons of pope Clement vi., which rests on the authority of the Roman historian and a Vatican ms., is disputed by the biographer of Petrarch (tom. ii., not. p. 30-76), with arguments rather of decency than of weight. The court of Avignon might not choose to agitate this delicate question.
"unsurped the inalienable right of the Roman people, the ancient and lawful sovereigns of the empire." Unsheathing his maiden sword, he thrice brandished it to the three parts of the world, and thrice repeated the extravagant declaration, "And this too is mine!" The pope's vicar, the bishop of Orvieto, attempted to check this career of folly; but his feeble protest was silenced by martial music; and instead of withdrawing from the assembly, he consented to dine with his brother tribune, at a table which had hitherto been reserved for the supreme pontiff. A banquet such as the Caesars had given, was prepared for the Romans. The apartments, porticoes, and courts, of the Lateran were spread with innumerable tables for either sex, and every condition: a stream of wine flowed from the nostrils of Constantine's brazen horse; no complaint except of the scarcity of water, could be heard; and the licentiousness of the multitude was curbed by discipline and fear. A subsequent day was appointed for the coronation of Rienzi; seven crowns of different leaves or metals were successively placed on his head by the most eminent of the Roman clergy; they represented the seven gifts of the Holy Ghost; and he still professed to imitate the example of the ancient tribunes. These extraordinary spectacles might deceive or flatter the

* The summons of the two rival emperors, a monument of freedom and fully, is extant in Hocesinus (Corseu, p. 163-166).

* It is singular that the Roman historian should have overlooked this sevenfold coronation, which is sufficiently proved by internal evidence, and the testimony of Hocesinus, and even of Rienzi (Cor. Seau, p. 167-170, 289).
people; and their own vanity was gratified in the vanity of their leader. But in his private life he soon deviated from the strict rule of frugality and abstinence; and the plebeians, who were awed by the splendour of the nobles, were provoked by the luxury of their equal. His wife, his son, his uncle (a barber in name and profession), exposed the contrast of vulgar manners and princely expense; and without acquiring the majesty, Rienzi degenerated into the vices, of a king.

A simple citizen describes with pity, or perhaps with pleasure, the humiliation of the barons of Rome. "Bareheaded, their hands crossed on their breast, they stood with downcast looks in the presence of the tribune; and they trembled; 'good God, how they trembled!'" As long as the yoke of Rienzi was that of justice and their country, their conscience forced them to esteem the man, whom pride and interest provoked them to hate: his extravagant conduct soon fortified their hatred by contempt; and they conceived the hope of subverting a power which was no longer so deeply rooted in the public confidence. The old animosity of the Colonna and Ursini was suspended, for a moment, by their common disgrace: they associated their wishes, and perhaps their designs; an assassin was seized and tortured; he accused the nobles; and as soon as Rienzi deserved the fate, he adopted the suspicions and

* Post se facera stare demante a ca, mentre sedeva, il barou tutti in dieci ritti co le vranca piecato e co li capucci scatti. Debbono avovano pensac! (Hist. Rom. i, ii, c. 20, p. 439). He saw them, and we see them.
maxims, of a tyrant. On the same day, under various pretences, he invited to the capitol his principal enemies, among whom were five members of the Ursini and three of the Colonna name. But instead of a council or a banquet, they found themselves prisoners under the sword of despotism or justice; and the consciousness of innocence or guilt might inspire them with equal apprehensions of danger. At the sound of the great bell the people assembled; they were arraigned for a conspiracy against the tribune's life; and though some might sympathise in their distress, not a hand, nor a voice, was raised to rescue the first of the nobility from their impending doom. Their apparent boldness was prompted by despair; they passed in separate chambers a sleepless and painful night; and the venerable hero, Stephen Colonna, striking against the door of his prison, repeatedly urged his guards to deliver him, by a speedy death, from such ignominious servitude. In the morning they understood their sentence from the visit of a confessor and the tolling of the bell. The great hall of the capitol had been decorated for the bloody scene with red and white hangings; the countenance of the tribune was dark and severe; the swords of the executioners were unsheathed; and the barons were interrupted in their dying speeches by the sound of trumpets. But in this decisive moment, Rienzi was not less anxious or apprehensive than his captives; he dreaded the splendour of their names, their surviving kinsmen, the inconstancy of the people, the reproaches
of the world; and, after rashly offering a mortal injury, he vainly presumed that, if he could forgive, he might himself be forgiven. His elaborate oration was that of a Christian and a suppliant; and, as the humble minister of the commons, he entreated his masters to pardon these noble criminals, for whose repentance and future service he pledged his faith and authority. "If you are spared," said the tribune, "by the mercy of the Romans, will you not promise to support the good estate with your lives and fortunes?" Astonished by this marvellous clemency, the barons bowed their heads; and, while they devoutly repeated the oath of allegiance, might whisper a secret, and more sincere, assurance of revenge. A priest, in the name of the people, pronounced their absolution; they received the communion with the tribune, assisted at the banquet, followed the procession; and, after every spiritual and temporal sign of reconciliation, were dismissed in safety to their respective homes, with the new honours and titles of generals, consuls, and patricians.¹

During some weeks they were checked by the memory of their danger, rather than of their deliverance, till the most powerful of the Ursini, escaping with the Colonna from the city, erected at Marino the standard of rebellion. The fortifications of the castle were instantly restored; the vassals attended their lord; the outlaws

¹ The original letter, in which Rienzi justifies his treatment of the Colonna (Hocesini, supit. in Cer. em., p. 222-230) employs, in genuine colours, the mixture of the knave and the mainman.
armed against the magistrate; the flocks and herds, the harvests and vineyards, from Marino to the gates of Rome, were swept away or destroyed; and the people arraigned Rienzi as the author of the calamities which his government had taught them to forget. In the camp, Rienzi appeared to less advantage than in the rostrum; and he neglected the progress of the rebel barons till their numbers were strong, and their castles impregnable. From the pages of Livy he had not imbibed the art, or even the courage, of a general; an army of twenty thousand Romans returned, without honour or effect, from the attack of Marino; and his vengeance was amused by painting his enemies, their heads downwards, and drowning two dogs (at least they should have been bears) as the representatives of the Ursini. The belief of his incapacity encouraged their operations: they were invited by their secret adherents; and the barons attempted, with four thousand foot and sixteen hundred horse, to enter Rome by force or surprise. The city was prepared for their reception: the alarm-bell rung all night; the gates were strictly guarded, or insolently open; and, after some hesitation, they sounded a retreat. The two first divisions had passed along the walls, but the prospect of a free entrance tempted the headstrong valour of the nobles in the rear; and, after a successful skirmish, they were overthrown and massacred, without quarter, by the crowds of the Roman people. Stephen Colonna the younger, the noble spirit to whom Petrarch ascribed the
restoration of Italy, was preceded or accompanied in death by his son John, a gallant youth, by his brother Peter, who might regret the case and honours of the church, by a nephew of legitimate birth, and by two bastards of the Colonna race; and the number of seven, the seven crowns, as Rienzi styled them, of the Holy Ghost, was completed by the agony of the deplorable parent, and the veteran chief, who had survived the hope and fortune of his house. The vision and prophecies of St. Martin and pope Boniface had been used by the tribune to animate his troops: he displayed, at least in the pursuit, the spirit of an hero; but he forgot the maxims of the ancient Romans, who abhorred the triumphs of civil war. The conqueror ascended the capitol; deposited his crown and sceptre on the altar; and boasted with some truth, that he had cut off an ear which neither pope nor emperor had been able to amputate. His base and implacable revenge denied the honours of burial; and the bodies of the Colonna, which he threatened to expose with those of the

*Rienzi, in the above-mentioned letter, mentions to St. Martin the tribune, Boniface iii., the enemy of Colonna, himself, and the Roman people, the glory of the day, which Villani likewise (G. ii. c. 104) describes as a regular battle. The disorderly slain, the flight of the Romans, and the cowardice of Rienzi, are painted in the simple and minute narrative of Fortilucca, or the anonymous citizen G. ii, c. 34-37.

In describing the fall of the Colonna, I speak only of the family of Stephen the elder, who is often confounded by the P. de Carpent with his son. That family was extinguished, but the house has been perpetuated in the collateral branches, of which I have not a very accurate knowledge. Circumflex says Petrarch familiariter statum Colonnarium demiserit, solito pauciores habitant columnas. Quid sun t modo fundamentum stable, cedantque perpetuo.
vilest malefactors, were secretly interred by the holy virgins of their name and family. The people sympathised in their grief, repented of their own fury, and detested the indecent joy of Rienzi, who visited the spot where these illustrious victims had fallen. It was on that fatal spot that he conferred on his son the honour of knighthood; and the ceremony was accomplished by a slight blow from each of the horsemen of the guard, and by a ridiculous and inhuman ablation from a pool of water, which was yet polluted with partician blood.

A short delay would have saved the Colonna; the delay of a single month, which elapsed between the triumph and exile of Rienzi. In the pride of victory, he forfeited what yet remained of his civil virtues, without acquiring the fame of military prowess. A free and vigorous opposition was formed in the city; and when the tribune proposed in the public council to impose a new tax, and to regulate the government of Perugia, thirty-nine members voted against his measures; repelled the injurious charge of treachery and corruption; and urged him to

* The convent of St. Silvester was founded, endowed, and protected, by the Colonna cardinals, for the daughters of the family who subsisted a monastic life, and who, in the year 1418, were twelve in number. The sisters were allowed to marry with their kinsmen in the fourth degree, and the dispensation was justified by the small number and close alliance of the main families of Rome (Mém. sur Pétrarque, tom. i., p. 110, tom. ii., p. 461).

* Poccieli wrote a stiff and pedantic letter of congratulation (Fam. lvi., spec. 15, p. 322, 323). The whole was lost in the patriot. Nulla mai et primum principis familia cura; noster tamen republicae cura Roman, cura Italia.

Ja vous sauf sous Dieu de notre pas Romain.

* This council and opposition is ably mentioned by Pollinsoro, a contemporary writer, who has preserved some curious and original facts (Hist. Italiarmm, tom. v., c. 31, p. 108-109).
prove, by their forcible exclusion; that, if the populace adhered to his cause, it was already disclaimed by the most respectable citizens. The pope and the sacred college had never been dazzled by his specious professions; they were justly offended by the insolence of his conduct: a cardinal legate was sent to Italy, and after some fruitless treaty, and two personal interviews, he fulminated a bull of excommunication, in which the tribune is degraded from his office, and branded with the guilt of rebellion, sacrilege, and heresy. The surviving barons of Rome were now humbled to a sense of allegiance; their interest and revenge engaged them in the service of the church; but as the fate of the Colonna was before their eyes, they abandoned to a private adventurer the peril and glory of the revolution. John Pepin, count of Minerbino, in the kingdom of Naples, had been condemned for his crimes, or his riches, to perpetual imprisonment; and Petrarch, by soliciting his release, indirectly contributed to the ruin of his friend. At the head of one hundred and fifty soldiers, the count of Minerbino introduced himself into Rome; barricaded the quarter of the Colonna; and found

*The facts and bulls of Clement vi against Rome are translated by the P. de Cerasus (p. 198, 232), from the Ecclesiastical Annals of Rodericus Rainaldus (1347, No. 13, 15, 21, &c.), who found them in the archives of the Vatican.*

*Mattaeus Villanuana describes the origin, character, and death of this count of Minerbino, a man de natura inornante, a valorus adulescens, whose grandfather, a crafty money, was enriched and emboldened by the spoils of the Serenes of Nocera (v. vii. c. 192, 193). See his imprisonment, and the efforts of Petrarch, supp. ii. p. 140-141.*
the enterprise as easy as it had seemed impossible. From the first alarm, the bell of the capitol incessantly tolled; but, instead of repairing to the well-known sound, the people was silent and inactive; and the pusillanimous Rienzi, deploring their ingratitude with sighs and tears, abdicated the government and palace of the republic.

Without drawing his sword, count Pepin restored the aristocracy and the church; three senators were chosen, and the legate assuming the first rank, accepted his two colleagues from the rival families of Colonna and Ursini. The acts of the tribune were abolished, his head was proscribed; yet such was the terror of his name, that the barons hesitated three days before they would trust themselves in the city; and Rienzi was left above a month in the castle of St. Angelo, from whence he peaceably withdrew, after labouring, without effect, to revive the affection and courage of the Romans. The vision of freedom and empire had vanished: their fallen spirit would have acquiesced in servitude, had it been smoothed by tranquillity and order; and it was scarcely observed, that the new senators derived their authority from the apostolic see; that four cardinals were appointed to reform, with dictatorial power, the state of the republic. Rome was again agitated by the bloody feuds of the barons, who detested each other, and despised the commons; their hostile fortresses, both in town and country, again rose, and were again demolished; and the peaceful citizens, a flock of sheep, were devoured,
says the Florentine historian, by these rapacious wolves. But when their pride and avarice had exhausted the patience of the Romans, a confraternity of the virgin Mary protected or avenged the republic: the bell of the capitol was again tolled; the nobles in arms trembled in the presence of an unarmed multitude; and of the two senators, Colonna escaped from the window of the palace, and Ursini was stoned at the foot of the altar. The dangerous office of tribune was successively occupied by two plebeians, Cerroni and Baroncelli. The mildness of Cerroni was unequal to the times; and after a faint struggle, he retired with a fair reputation and a decent fortune to the comforts of rural life. Devoid of eloquence or genius, Baroncelli was distinguished by a resolute spirit: he spoke the language of a patriot, and trode in the footsteps of tyrants; his suspicion was a sentence of death, and his own death was the reward of his cruelties. Amidst the public misfortunes, the faults of Rienzi were forgotten; and the Romans sighed for the peace and prosperity of the good estate.  

After an exile of seven years, the first deliverer was again restored to his country. In the disguise of a monk or a pilgrim, he escaped from the castle of St. Angelo, implored the friendship of the kings of Hungary and Naples, tempted the ambition of every bold adventurer,

The troubles of Rome, from the departure to the return of Rienzi, are related by Matteo Villani (i. ii. c. 47, 48, c. 53, 57, 78) and Thomas Fortunatus (i. iii. c. 1-4). I have slightly passed over these secondary characters, who imitated the original tribunes.
mingled at Rome with the pilgrims of the jubilee, lay concealed among the hermits of the Appennine, and wandered through the cities of Italy, Germany, and Bohemia. His person was invisible, his name was yet formidable; and the anxiety of the court of Avignon supposes, and even magnifies, his personal merit. The emperor Charles the fourth gave audience to a stranger, who frankly revealed himself as the tribune of the republic; and astonished an assembly of ambassadors and princes, by the eloquence of a patriot, and the visions of a prophet, the downfall of tyranny, and the kingdom of the Holy Ghost. Whatever had been his hopes, Rienzi found himself a captive; but he supported a character of independence and dignity, and obeyed, as his own choice, the irresistible summons of the supreme pontiff. The zeal of Petrarch, which had been cooled by the unworthy conduct, was rekindled by the sufferings and the presence, of his friend; and he boldly complains of the times, in which the saviour of Rome was delivered by her emperor into the hands of her bishop. Rienzi was transported slowly, but in safe custody, from Prague to Avignon; his entrance into the city was that of a malefactor; in his prison he was chained by the leg; and four cardinals were named to inquire into the crimes of heresy and rebellion.

* Those visions, of which the friends and the enemies of Rienzi seem alike ignorant, are surely magnified by the zeal of Pollistera, a Dominican inquisitor. (Hist. Ital., tom. xxx, c. 30, p. 810). Had the tribune taught, that Christ was impelled by the Holy Ghost, that the tyrranny of the pope could be abolished, he might have been convicted of heresy and treason, without offending the human.
But his trial and condemnation would have involved some questions, which it was more prudent to leave under the veil of mystery: the temporal supremacy of the popes; the duty of residence; the civil and ecclesiastical privileges of the clergy and people of Rome. The reigning pontiff well deserved the appellation of Clement; the strange vicissitudes and magnificent spirit of the captive excited his pity and esteem; and Petrarch believes that he respected in the hero the name and sacred character of a poet. Rienzi was indulged with an easy confinement and the use of books; and in the assiduous study of Livy, and the bible, he sought the cause and the consolation of his misfortunes.

The succeeding pontificate of Innocent the sixth opened a new prospect of his deliverance and restoration; and the court of Avignon was persuaded, that the successful rebel could alone appease and reform the anarchy of the metropolis. After a solemn profession of fidelity, the Roman tribune was sent into Italy, with the title of senator; but the death of Baroncelli appeared to supersede the use of his mission; and the legate, cardinal Albornoz, a consummate statesman, allowed him with reluctance, and

---

4 The astonishment, the envy, almost, of Petrarch is a proof, if not of the truth of this incredible fact, at least of his own veracity. The abbé de Sacy (Mém. de Phil., tom. iv, p. 241) quotes the sixth epistle of the thirteenth book of Petrarch, but it is of the royal text which he consulted, and not of the ordinary Basel edition (p. 895).

5 Epitome, or Giles Albornoz, a noble Spaniard, archbishop of Toledo, and cardinal legate in Italy (v. v. 1325-1367), declared, by his arms and counsels, the temporal dominion of the popes. His life has been separately written by Sepulveda; but Dryden could not reasonably suppose, that his name, or that of Wolsey, had reached the ears of the Multi in Dan Schorlan.
without aid, to undertake the perilous experiment. His first reception was equal to his wishes; the day of his entrance was a public festival; and his eloquence and authority revived the laws of the good estate. But this momentary sunshine was soon clouded by his own vices and those of the people; in the capitol, he might often regret the prison of Avignon; and after a second administration of four months, Rienzi was massacred in a tumult which had been fomented by the Roman barons. In the society of the Germans and Bohemians, he is said to have contracted the habits of intemperance and cruelty; adversity had chilled his enthusiasm, without fortifying his reason or virtue; and that youthful hope, that lively assurance, which is the pledge of success, was now succeeded by the cold impotence of distrust and despair. The tribune had reigned with absolute dominion, by the choice, and in the hearts, of the Romans; the senator was the servile minister of a foreign court; and while he was suspected by the people, he was abandoned by the prince. The legate Albornoz, who seemed desirous of his ruin, inflexibly refused all supplies of men and money; a faithful subject could no longer presume to touch the revenues of the apostolical chamber; and the first idea of a tax was the signal of clamour and sedition. Even his justice was tainted with the guilt or reproach of selfish cruelty; the most virtuous citizen of Rome was sacrificed to his jealousy; and in the execution of a public robber, from whose purse he had been assisted, the magistrate too much forgot, or too
much remembered, the obligations of the debtor. A civil war exhausted his treasures and the patience of the city: the Colonna maintained their hostile station at Palestrina; and his mercenaries soon despised a leader whose ignorance and fear were envious of all subordinate merit. In the death as in the life of Rienzi, the hero and the coward were strangely mingled. When the capitol was invested by a furious multitude, when he was basely deserted by his civil and military servants, the intrepid senator, waving the banner of liberty, presented himself on the balcony, addressed his eloquence to the various passions of the Romans, and laboured to persuade them, that in the same cause himself and the republic must either stand or fall. His oration was interrupted by a volley of imprecations and stones; and after an arrow had transgressed his head, he sunk into abject despair, and fled weeping to the inner chambers, from whence he was let down by a sheet before the windows of the prison. Destitute of aid or hope, he was besieged till the evening: the doors of the capitol were destroyed with axes and fire; and while the senator attempted to escape in a plebeian habit, he was discovered and dragged to the platform of the palace, the fatal scene of his judgments and executions. A whole hour, without voice or motion, he stood amidst the multitude half naked and half dead; their rage was hushed into curiosity and wonder: the last

* From Matteo Villani and Fortebraccio, the P. de Ceresio (p. 388-394) has extracted the life and death of the chancellor Montalto, the life of a robber and the death of an heir. At the head of a free company, the first that disdained Italy, he became rich and formidable; he had money in all the banks; 80,000 sucras in Pavia alone.
feelings of reverence and compassion yet struggled in his favour; and they might have prevailed, if a bold assassin had not plunged a dagger in his breast. He fell senseless with the first stroke; the impotent revenge of his enemies inflicted a thousand wounds; and the senator's body was abandoned to the dogs, to the Jews, and to the flames. Posterity will compare the virtues and failings of this extraordinary man; but in a long period of anarchy and servitude, the name of Rienzi has often been celebrated as the deliverer of his country, and the last of the Roman patriots.

The first and most generous wish of Petrarch was the restoration of a free republic; but after the exile and death of his plebeian hero, he turned his eyes from the tribune, to the king, of the Romans. The capitol was yet stained with the blood of Rienzi, when Charles the fourth descended from the Alps to obtain the Italian and imperial crowns. In his passage through Milan he received the visit, and repaid the flattery, of the poet-laureat; accepted a medal of Augustus; and promised, without a smile, to imitate the founder of the Roman monarchy. A false application of the names and maxims of antiquity was the source of the hopes and disappointments of Petrarch; yet he could not overlook the difference of times and characters; the immeasurable distance between the first Caesars and a Bohemian prince, who by the favour of the clergy had been elected the titular head of the German aristocracy. Instead of re-

\[\text{The exile, second government, and death, of Rienzi, are minutely related by the anonymous Roman, who appears neither his friend nor his enemy (i. 16, c. 12-25). Petrarch, who loved the tribune, was indifferent to the fate of the senator.}\]
storing to Rome her glory and her provinces; {chap.
he had bound himself, by a secret treaty with
the pope, to evacuate the city on the day of
his coronation; and his shameful retreat was
pursued by the reproaches of the patriot bard.

After the loss of liberty and empire, his third
and more humble wish was to reconcile
the shepherd with his flock; to recall the Roman bish-
shop to his ancient and peculiar diocese. In
the fervour of youth, with the authority of age,
Petrarch addressed his exhortations to five suc-
cessive popes, and his eloquence was always
inspired by the enthusiasm of sentiment and
the freedom of language. The son of a citizen
of Florence invariably preferred the country
of his birth to that of his education; and Italy,
in his eyes, was the queen and garden of the
world. Amidst her domestic factions, she was
doubtless superior to France both in art and
science, in wealth and politeness; but the dif-
ference could scarcely support the epithet of
barbarous, which he promiscuously bestows on
the countries beyond the Alps. Avignon, the
mystic Babylon, the sink of vice and corruption,
was the object of his hatred and contempt;

He solicits
the popes of
Avignon to
resist their
suggestion at
Rome.

1 The hopes and the disappointment of Petrarch are agreeably
described in his own words by the French biographer (Memoires,
tom. iii., p. 373-410); but the sleep, though sweet, unaided, was the
excruciation of Zanobi the post-laurent by Charles ix.

2 See in his accurate and amusing biographer, the application of
Petrarch and Rome to Benedict xii., in the year 1342 (Memoires,
tom. i., p. 291-305); to Clement vi., in 1348 (tom. ii., p. 43-47);
and to Urban v., in 1365 (tom. iii., p. 611-601); his praise (p. 711-
715), and execration (p. 776), of the last of these pontiffs. His angry
controversy on the respective merits of France and Italy may be found
(Opp. p. 1068-1069).
but he forgets that her scandalous vices were not the growth of the soil, and that in every residence they would adhere to the power and luxury of the papal court. He confesses, that the successor of St. Peter is the bishop of the universal church; yet it was not on the banks of the Rhone, but of the Tyber, that the apostle had fixed his everlasting throne; and while every city in the Christian world was blessed with a bishop, the metropolis alone was desolate and forlorn. Since the removal of the holy see, the sacred buildings of the Lateran and the Vatican, their altars and their saints, were left in a state of poverty and decay; and Rome was often painted under the image of a disconsolate matron, as if the wandering husband could be reclaimed by the homely portrait of the age and infirmities of his weeping spouse. But the cloud which hung over the seven hills would be dispelled by the presence of their lawful sovereign: eternal fame, the prosperity of Rome, and the peace of Italy, would be the recompence of the pope who should dare to embrace this generous resolution. Of the five whom Petrarch exhorted, the three first, John the twenty-second, Benedict the twelfth, and Clement the sixth, were importuned or amused by the boldness of the orator; but the memorable

Squalida et spumia turba, neglecta culta
Castraria; multisque nallis luminis incuncta
Riparia salutis affligens; rebus accipe nemora
Roma sequor.
(Carm. 1-2, p. 77).
He spins this allegory beyond all measure or patience. The Epistles to Urban v., in prose, are more simple and pervasive (Senilium, 1, 71, p. 811-827, 1, 15, epist. 1, p. 844-854).
change which had been attempted by Urban the fifth, was finally accomplished by Gregory the eleventh. The execution of their design was opposed by weighty and almost insuperable obstacles. A king of France, who has deserved the epithet of wise, was unwilling to release them from a local dependence: the cardinals, for the most part his subjects, were attached to the language, manners, and climate, of Avignon; to their stately palaces; above all, to the wines of Burgundy. In their eyes, Italy was foreign or hostile; and they reluctantly embarked at Marseilles, as if they had been sold or banished into the land of the Saracens.

Urban the fifth resided three years in the Vatican with safety and honour: his sanctity was protected by a guard of two thousand horse; and the king of Cyprus, the queen of Naples, and the emperors of the East and West, devoutly saluted their common father in the chair of St. Peter. But the joy of Petrarch and the Italians was soon turned into grief and indignation. Some reasons of public or private moment, his own impatience or the prayers of the cardinals, recalled Urban to France; and the approaching election was saved from the tyrannic patriotism of the Romans. The powers of heaven were interested in their cause: Bridget of Sweden, a saint and pilgrim, disapproved the return, and foretold the death, of Urban the fifth: the migration of Gregory the eleventh was encouraged by St. Catherine of Sienna, the spouse of Christ and ambassador of the Florentines; and the popes themselves, the great masters of human credulity, appear to have listened to
THE DECLINE AND FALL.

...
Cassin had been consulted whether he would accept the triple crown from the clergy and people: "I am a citizen of Rome," replied that venerable ecclesiastic, "and my first law is the "voice of my country."

If superstition will interpret an untimely death; if the merit of counsels be judged from the event; the heavens may seem to frown on a measure of such apparent reason and propriety. Gregory the eleventh did not survive above fourteen months his return to the Vatican; and his decease was followed by the great schism of the West, which distracted the Latin church above forty years. The sacred college was then composed of twenty-

---

* The first crown as regnum (Diocletian, Glass Latin, tom. x. p. 303) on the episcopal mitre of the pope, is ascribed to the gift of Constantin, or Chloe. The second was added by Ambrose, as the emblem not only of a spiritual, but of a temporal, kingdom. The three statues of the church are represented by the triple crown, which was introduced by John xxii. or Benedict xiii. (Memoriae san Petrarque, tom. i. p. 238, 239).

* Bulbus (Not. ad Pap. Alexbad. tom. i. p. 1124, 1125) produces the original evidence which assists the threats of the Roman ambassadors, and the resignation of the abbot of Mount Cassin, qui uterum se officina respondit esse Romanum non, et idem soli quad voluit.

* The return of the pope from Avignon to Rome, and their reception by the people, are related in the original himself of Urban v. and Gregory xi. in Bulbus (VII. Paparum Aventienses, tom. i. p. 363-486) and Muratori (Script. Italicorum, tom. iii. p. 1). (p. 616-718). In the disputes of the schism, every circumstance was serious, though partially, extraneous a mere subservient to the greatagment, which decided the obedience of Castile, and in which Bulbus, in his notes, so often and so largely appeals from a ms. volume in the Harley library (p. 1881, &c).

* Can the death of a good man be esteemed a punishment by those who believe in the immortality of the soul? They betray the instability of their faith. Yet as a mere philosopher, I cannot agree with the Greeks, &c. See the speech of Seneca on the death of Patras (Epist. Grumnia, p. 231.). See in Herodotus (i. 7. c. 51) the moral and pleasing tale of the Jugghe youths.
two cardinals: six of these had remained at Avignon; eleven Frenchmen, one Spaniard, and four Italians, entered the conclave in the usual form. Their choice was not yet limited to the purple; and their unanimous votes acquiesced in the archbishop of Bari, a subject of Naples, conspicuous for his zeal and learning, who ascended the throne of St. Peter under the name of Urban the sixth. The epistle of the sacred college affirms his free and regular election; which had been inspired, as usual, by the Holy Ghost: he was adorned, invested, and crowned, with the customary rights; his temporal authority was obeyed at Rome and Avignon, and his ecclesiastical supremacy was acknowledged in the Latin world. During several weeks, the cardinals attended their new master with the fairest professions of attachment and loyalty; till the summer heats permitted a decent escape from the city. But as soon as they were united at Anagni and Fundi, in a place of security, they cast aside the mask, accused their own falsehood and hypocrisy, excommunicated the apostate and antichrist of Rome, and proceeded to a new election of Robert of Geneva, Clement the seventh, whom they announced to the nations as the true and rightful vicar of Christ. Their first choice, an involuntary and illegal act, was annulled by the fear of death and the menaces of the Romans; and their complaint is justified by the strong evidence of probability and fact. The twelve French cardinals, above two-thirds of the votes, were masters of the election; and whatever
might be their provincial jealousies, it cannot fairly be presumed that they would have sacrificed their right and interest to a foreign candidate, who would never restore them to their native country. In the various, and often inconsistent, narratives, the shades of popular violence are more darkly or faintly coloured; but the licentiousness of the seditious Romans was inflamed by a sense of their privileges, and the danger of a second emigration. The conclave was intimidated by the shouts, and encompassed by the arms of thirty thousand rebels; the bells of the capitol and St. Peter's rang an alarm: “Death, or an Italian pope!” was the universal cry; the same threat was repeated by the twelve bannerets, or chiefs of the quarters, in the form of charitable advice: some preparations were made for burning the obstinate cardinals; and had they chosen a Transalpine subject, it is probable that they would never have departed alive from the Vatican. The same constraint imposed the necessity of dissembling in the eyes of Rome and of the world; the pride and cruelty of Urban presented a more insidious danger; and they soon discovered the features of the tyrant, who could walk in his garden and recite his breviary, while he heard, from an adjacent chamber, six cardinals groaning on the rack.

* * *
His inflexible zeal, which loudly censured their luxury and vice, would have attached them to the stations and duties of their parishes at Rome; and had he not fatally delayed a new promotion, the French cardinals would have been reduced to an helpless minority in the sacred college. For these reasons, and in the hope of repassing the Alps, they rashly violated the peace and unity of the church; and the merits of their double choice are yet agitated in the catholic schools.* The vanity, rather than the interest, of the nation, determined the court and clergy of France.† The states of Savoy, Sicily, Cyprus, Arragon, Castile, Navarre, and Scotland, were inclined, by their example and authority, to the obedience of Clement the seventh, and, after his decease, of Benedict the thirteenth, Rome, and the principal states of Italy, Germany, Portugal, England, the Low Countries, and the kingdoms of the north, adhered to the prior election of Urban the sixth, who was suc-

* The ordinal numbers of the popes seem to decide the question against Clement vii and Benedict xii, who are hardly dignitaries as antipopes by the Indians, while the French are content with authorities and reasons to plead the cause of doubt and toleration (Balnis, in Pauly.) It is singular, or rather it is not singular, that miracles, visions, and miracles, should be common to both parties.

† Balnis strenuouslylabours(Not. p. 1211-1280) to justify the pure and popa monarchy of Charles v, King of France; he refused to hear the arguments of Urban; but was not the urbanists equally deaf to the reason of Clement, &c.

‡ An apotheosis, or declamation, in the name of Edward vii. (Balnis, VII. Pap. Avic. Sum.t. p. 285) displays the zeal of the English nation against the Condemnations. Nor was their zeal summed to words; the bishop of Norwich led a crusade of 60,000 bumas beyond sea (Hume's History, vol. iii, p. 57, 38).
ceeded by Boniface the ninth, Innocent the seventh, and Gregory the twelfth.

From the banks of the Tyber and the Rhône, the hostile pontiffs encountered each other with the pen and the sword; the civil and ecclesiastical order of society was disturbed; and the Romans had their full share of the mischiefs of which they may be arraigned as the primary authors.* They had partly flattered themselves with the hope of securing the seat of the ecclesiastical monarchy, and of relieving their poverty with the tributes and offerings of the nations; but the separation of France and Spain diverted the stream of lucrative devotion; nor could the loss be compensated by the two jubilees which were crowded into the space of ten years. By the avocations of the schism, by foreign arms and popular tumults, Urban the sixth, and his three successors, were often compelled to interrupt their residence in the Vatican. The Colonna and Ursini still exercised their deadly feuds; the bannerets of Rome asserted and abused the privileges of a republic; the vicars of Christ, who had levied a military force, chastised their rebellion with the gibbet, the sword, and the dagger; and in a friendly conference, eleven deputies of the people were perfidiously murdered and cast into the street. Since the invasion of Robert the Norman, the Romans had pursued their domestic quarrels

* Besides the general historians, the Duciis of Dolianni Gerbillio, Peter Antonian, and Stephen Inserna, in the great Collection of Muratori, represent the state and sufferings of Rome.
without the dangerous interposition of a stranger. But, in the disorders of the schism, an aspiring neighbour, Ladislaus, king of Naples, alternately supported and betrayed the pope and the people: by the former he was declared gonfalonier, or general, of the church, while the latter submitted to his choice the nomination of their magistrates. Besieging Rome by land and water, he thrice entered the gates as a barbarian conqueror; profaned the sancta, violated the virgins, pillaged the merchants, performed his devotions at St. Peter's, and left a garrison in the castle of St. Angelo. His arms were sometimes unfortunate, and to a delay of three days he was indebted for his life and crown: but Ladislaus triumphed in his turn, and it was only his premature death that could save the metropolis and the ecclesiastical state from the ambitious conqueror, who had assumed the title, or at least the powers, of king of Rome.

I have not undertaken the ecclesiastical history of the schism; but Rome, the object of these last chapters, is deeply interested in the disputed succession of her sovereigns. The first counsels for the peace and union of Christendom arose from the university of Paris, from the faculty of the Sorbonne, whose doctors were esteemed, at least in the Gallican church, as the most consummate

---

Note: It is supposed by Guizot (Hist. iii. p. 297) that he styled himself Rex Roman., a title unknown to the world since the expulsion of Tonzani. But a recent historian has justified the reading of Rex Roman., of Rome, as obsolete King. The emperor Henry's support to the crown of Hungary.
masters of theological science. Prudently waving all invasions inquiry into the origin and merits of the dispute, they proposed, as an healing measure, that the two pretenders of Rome and Avignon should abdicate at the same time, after qualifying the cardinals of the adverse factions to join in a legitimate election; and that the nations should *substitute* their obedience, if either of the competitors preferred his own interest to that of the public. At each vacancy, these physicians of the church deprecated the mischief of an hasty choice; but the policy of the conclave and the ambition of its members were deaf to reason and entreaties; and whatsoever promises were made, the pope could never be bound by the oaths of the cardinal. During fifteen years, the pacific designs of the university were eluded by the arts of the rival pontiffs, the scruples or passions of their adherents, and the vicissitudes of French factions, that ruled the insanity of Charles the sixth. At length a vigorous resolution was embraced: and a solemn embassy, of the titular patriarch of Alexandria, two archbishops, five bishops, five abbots, three knights, and twenty doctors, was sent to the courts of

*The laudable and decisive part which France assumed in the stadium, is stated by Peter de Foix in a separate History, extracted from authentic records, and inserted in the seventh volume of the last and best edition of his friend Tournier (p. 31, p. 110-151).*

*Of this measure, John Gerson, a near doctor, was the author and the champion. The proceedings of the university of Paris and the Gallia law church were often prompted by his advice, which is expressly displayed in his theological writings, as well as in his letters. Le Glain (Epist. 117) Jacques Chaume, tom. i, p. 1-26) has given a valuable account. John Gerson acted an important part in the councils of Vienne and Constance.*
Avignon and Rome, to require, in the name of the church and king, the abdication of the two pretenders, of Peter de Luna, who styled himself Benedict the thirteenth, and of Angelo Corrario, who assumed the name of Gregory the twelfth. For the ancient honour of Rome, and the success of their commission, the ambassadors solicited a conference with the magistrates of the city, whom they gratified by a positive declaration, that the most Christian king did not entertain a wish of transporting the holy see from the Vatican, which he considered as the genuine and proper seat of the successor of St. Peter. In the name of the senate and people, an eloquent Roman asserted their desire to co-operate in the union of the church, deplored the temporal and spiritual calamities of the long schism, and requested the protection of France against the arms of the king of Naples. The answers of Benedict and Gregory were alike edifying and alike deceitful; and, in evading the demand of their abdication, the two rivals were animated by a common spirit. They agreed on the necessity of a previous interview, but the time, the place, and the manner, could never be ascertained by mutual consent.

"If the one advances," says a servant of Gregory, "the other retreats; the one appears an animal fearful of the land, the other a creature apprehensive of the water. And thus, for a short remnant of life and power, will these aged priests endanger the peace and salvation of the Christian world."

*Leonardus Brunus Ariminus, one of the revivers of classic learning*
The christian world was at length provoked by their ostentation and fraud: they were deserted by their cardinals, who embraced each other as friends and colleagues; and their revolt was supported by a numerous assembly of prelates and ambassadors. With equal justice, the council of Pisa deposed the popes of Rome and Avignon; the conclave was unanimous in the choice of Alexander the fifth, and his vacant seat was soon filled by a similar election of John the twenty-third, the most proliigate of mankind. But instead of extinguishing the schism, the rashness of the French and Italians had given a third pretender to the chair of St. Peter. Such new claims of the synod and conclave were disputed: three kings, of Germany, Hungary, and Naples, adhered to the cause of Gregory the twelfth; and Benedict the thirteenth, himself a Spaniard, was acknowledged by the devotion and patriotism of that powerful nation. The rash proceedings of Pisa were corrected by the council of Constance; the emperor Sigismund acted a conspicuous part as the advocate or protector of the catholick church; and the number and weight of civil and ecclesiastical members might seem to constitute the states-general of Europe. Of the three popes, John the twenty-third was the first victim; he fled, and was brought back a prisoner: the most
scandalous charges were suppressed; the vicar of Christ was only accused of sacrilege, murder, rape, sodomy, and incest; and after subscribing his own condemnation, he expired in prison the imprudence of trusting his person to a free city beyond the Alps. Gregory the twelfth, whose obedience was reduced to the narrow precincts of Rimini, descended with more honour from the throne, and his ambassador convened the session, in which he renounced the title and authority of his pope. To vanquish the obstinacy of Benedict the thirteenth, or his adherents, the emperor in person undertook a journey from Constance to Perpignan. The kings of Castille, Arragon, Navarre, and Scotland, obtained an equal and honourable treaty: with the concurrence of the Spaniards, Benedict was deposed by the council; but the harmless old man was left in a solitary castle to excommunicate twice each day the rebel kingdoms which had deserted his cause. After thus eradicating the remains of the schism, the synod of Constance proceeded, with slow and cautious steps, to elect the sovereign of Rome and the head of the church. On this momentous occasion, the college of twenty-three cardinals was fortified with thirty deputies: six of whom were chosen in each of the five great nations of Christendom; the Italian, the German, the French, the Spanish, and the English. 1 the in-

1 I cannot overlook this great national cause, which was vigorously assailed by the English ambassador against those of France. The latter contended, that Christendom was essentially distinguished
ference of strangers was softened by their generous preference of an Italian and a Roman; and the hereditary, as well as personal, merit of Otho Colonna recommended him to the conclave. Rome accepted with joy and obedience the noblest of her sons, the ecclesiastical state was defended by his powerful family, and the elevation of Martin the fifth is the era of the restoration and establishment of the popes in the Vatican.

...into the four great nations and states of Italy, Germany, France, and England; and that the five kingdoms (with or without the British isles) have not been comprehended under one or other of those great divisions. The British isles, of which they were the head, should be considered as a high and coordinate nation, with an equal rank, and every argument of truth of table was introduced to exalt the dignity of that country. Including England, Scotland, Wales, the four kingdoms of Ireland, and the Orkneys, the British isles are denominated with eight royal crests, and discriminated by four or five languages: English, Welsh, German, Scotch, Irish, &c. The greater island lies north to south measure a 300 miles, or 40 days journey; and England alone contains 25 counties, and 35,000 parish churches (a bold assertion), besides cathedrals, colleges, palaces, and hospitals. They celebrate the mission of St. Joseph of Arimathea; the birth of Constantine, and the legislative powers of the two emperors without challenging the legitimacy of Bartholomeus de Graurville (c. 1360), who became king of a Christian kingdom, 1. of Rome; 2. of Constantinople; 3. of Ireland, which had been transferred to the English monarchy, and 4. of Spain. Our commander prevented in the counsel, but the services of Henry’s added much weight to their argument. The advices pleased was found at Constance by Sir Robert Wingfield, ambassador from Henry vth to the emperor Maximilian 1., and by him printed in 1512 at Louvain. From a Leipsic ed., they are more correctly published in the collection of Vol de Hertum, tom. 4.; but I have only seen a later copy of abstract of these acts (Concilium de Constantin, loco. l. p. 447, 442, &c.)

*The histories of the three successive councils, 1. of Constance, and 2. of Bologna, have been written with a tolerable degree of candor, industry, and elegance, by a Protestant minister, Mr. Landau, who retired from France to Berlin. They form six volumes in quarto, and as well in the west, as Constantin is the best part of the collection.
The royal prerogative of coining money, which had been exercised near three hundred years by the senate, was first resumed by Martin the fifth, and his image and superscription introduce the series of the papal medals. Of his two immediate successors, Eugenius the fourth was the last pope expelled by the tumults of the Roman people, and Nicholas the fifth, the last who was importuned by the presence of a Roman emperor. The prefetch of Eugenius with the fathers of Rome, and the weight or apprehension of a new excite, emboldened and provoked the Romans to usurp the temporal government of the city. They rose in arms, selected seven governors of the republic, and a constable of the capitol; imprisoned the pope's nephew; besieged his person in the palace; and shot volleys of arrows into his bark as he escaped down the Tyber in the habit of a monk. But he still possessed in the castle of St. Angelo a faithful garrison, and a train of artil-
enery: their batteries incessantly thundered on the city, and a bullet more dextrously pointed broke down the barricade of the bridge, and scattered with a single shot the heroes of the republic. Their constancy was exhausted by a rebellion of five months. Under the tyranny of the Ghibelline nobles, the wisest patriots regretted the dominion of the church; and their repentance was unanimous and effectual. The troops of St. Peter again entered the capitol; the magistrates departed to their homes; the most guilty were executed or exiled; and the legate, at the head of two thousand foot and four thousand horse, was saluted as the father of the city. The synods of Ferrara and Florence, the fear or resentment of Eugenius, prolonged his absence: he was received by a submissive people; but the pontiff understood from the acclamations of his triumphal entry, that to secure their loyalty and his own repose, he must grant without delay the abolition of the odious excise. 11. Rome was restored, adorned, and enlightened, by the peaceful reign of Nicholas the fifth. In the midst of these laudable occupations, the pope was alarmed by the approach of Frederic the third of Austria: though his fears could not be justified by the character or the power of the imperial candidate. After drawing his military force to the metropolis, and imposing the best security of oaths and

1 The oath of fidelity imposed on the emperor by the pope, is described and narrated in the Clementines (i. ii, iii. 22); and Bonum Sylvius, who objects to this new demand, would not forget, that in a few years he should ascend the throne, and imitate the maxims, of Heliogabalus.
treaties, Nicholas received with a strolling countenance the faithful advocate and vassal of the church. So tame were the times, so feeble was the Austrian, that the pomp of his coronation was accomplished with order and harmony; but the superfluous honour was so disgraceful to an independent nation, that his successors have excused themselves from the toilsome pilgrimage to the Vatican, and rest their imperial title on the choice of the electors of Germany.

A citizen has remarked, with pride and pleasure, that the king of the Romans, after passing with a slight salute the cardinals and prelates who met him at the gate, distinguished the dress and person of the senator of Rome; and in this last farewell, the pageants of the empire and the republic were chanced in a friendly embrace.* According to the laws of Rome, her first magistrate was required to be a doctor of laws, an alien, of a place at least forty miles from the city; with whose inhabitants he must not be connected in the third canonical degree of blood or alliance. The election was annual; a severe scrutiny was instituted into the conduct of the

---

* La somma di Roma, scritte in varie cose quante benetita, e con qualche canto, df opportunissima parte, ne' quali in soave tono di Tertulliano e Nazone, migliai scompa ese di Ambrose Syriaca, subit in servita e obbligata da alcune clementi (Dioia di Stephano Fontanara, p. 1123).

* Sic in the statutes of Rome, the senate and their judges (ann. 5-14), the consuls (ann. 5-69, in 17, 50, 69, 71, 73), the great consuls (c. 64), the great senators (c. 64), the council (c. 36), the title of judges, engineers, etc. of commerce, etc. is spread through many a chapter (c. 14-30) of the second book.
departing senator; nor could he be recalled to the same office till after the expiration of two years. A liberal salary of three thousand florins was assigned for his expense and reward; and his public appearance represented the majesty of the republic. His robes were of gold brocade or crimson velvet, or, in the summer season of a lighter silk; he bore in his hand an ivory sceptre; the sound of trumpets announced his approach; and his solemn steps were preceded at least by four lictors or attendants, whose red wands were enveloped with banners or streamers of the golden colour, or livery of the city. His oath in the capitol proclaims his right and duty, to observe and assert the laws, to control the proud, to protect the poor, and to exercise justice and mercy within the extent of his jurisdiction. In these useful functions he was assisted by three learned strangers, the two co-laterals, and the judge of criminal appeals; their frequent trials of robberies, rapes, and murders, are attested by the laws; and the weakness of these laws convenes at the licentiousness of private feuds and armed associations for mutual defence. But the senator was confined to the administration of justice: the capitol, the treasury, and the government of the city and its territory was entrusted to the three conservators, who were changed four times in each year: the militia of the thirteen regions assembled under the banners of their respective chiefs or capitanei; and the first of these was distinguished by the name and dignity of the prince. The popular legislature consisted of the secret and the
common councils of the Romans. The former was composed of the magistrates and their immediate predecessors, with some fiscal and legal officers, and three classes of thirteen, twenty-six, and forty counsellors, amounting in the whole to about one hundred and twenty persons. In the common council all male citizens had a right to vote; and the value of their privilege was enhanced by the care with which any foreigners were prevented from usurping the title and character of Romans. The tumult of a democracy was checked by wise and jealous precautions; except the magistrates, none could propose a question; none were permitted to speak, except from an open pulpit or tribunal; all disorderly acclamations were suppressed; the sense of the majority was decided by a secret ballot; and their decrees were promulgated in the venerable name of the Roman senate and people. It would not be easy to assign a period in which this theory of government has been reduced to accurate and constant practice, since the establishment of order has been gradually connected with the decay of liberty. But in the year one thousand five hundred and eighty, the ancient statutes were collected, methodized in three books, and adapted to present use, under the pontificate, and with the approbation, of Gregory the thirteenth: * this civil and criminal code is the

* Statuta aliorum Civei Roman Aureolati, S. II. N. Gregorii XIII. Pont. Max. de Senatu Populique Rom. reformata et edita. Romae, 1586, in folio. The obsolete, repugnant statutes of antiquity were confounded.
modern law of the city: and if the popular assemblies have been abolished, a foreign senator, with the three conservators, still resides in the palace of the capitol. The policy of the Caesars has been repeated by the popes; and the bishop of Rome affected to maintain the form of a republic, while he reigned with the absolute powers of a temporal, as well as spiritual, monarch.

It is an obvious truth, that the times must be suited to extraordinary characters, and that the genius of Cromwell or Retz might now expire in obscurity. The political enthusiasm of Rienzi had exalted him to a throne; the same enthusiasm, in the next century, conducted his imitator to the gallows. The birth of Stephen Porcaro was noble, his reputation spotless; his tongue was armed with eloquence, his mind was enlightened with learning; and he aspired, beyond the aim of vulgar ambition, to free his country, and immortalize his name. The dominion of priests is most odious to a liberal spirit; every scruple was removed by the recent knowledge of the false and forgery of Constantine's donation; Petrarch was now the oracle of the Italians; and as often as Porcaro revolved the ode which describes the

---

9 In my time (1765), and in M. Grosley's Observations sur l'Italie, tom. ii. p. 381, the senator of Rome was M. Biella, a noble Swede, and a presbytery to the catholic faith. The pope's right to appoint the senator and the conservator is implied, rather than affirmed, in the statutes.
patriot and hero of Rome; he applied to himself the visions of the prophetic bard. His first trial of the popular feelings was at the funeral of Eugenius the fourth: in an elaborate speech he called the Romans to liberty and arms; and they listened with apparent pleasure, till Porcaro was interrupted and answered by a grave advocate, who pleaded for the church and state. By every law the seditious orator was guilty of treason; but the benevolence of the new pontiff, who viewed his character with pity and esteem, attempted by an honourable office to convert the patriot into a friend. The inflexible Roman returned from Anagni with an increase of reputation and zeal; and, on the first opportunity, the games of the place Navona, he tried to inflame the casual dispute of some boys and mechanics into a general rising of the people. Yet the humane Nicholas was still averse to accept the forfeit of his life; and the traitor was removed from the scene of temptation to Bologna, with a liberal allowance for his support, and the easy obligation of presenting himself each day before the governor of the city. But Porcaro had learned from the younger Brutus, that with tyrants no faith or gratitude should be observed; the exile declaimed against the arbitrary sentence; a party and a conspiracy were gradually formed; his nephew, a daring youth, assembled a band of volunteers; and on the appointed evening a feast was prepared at his house for the friends of the republic. Their leader, who had escaped from Bologna,
appeared among them in a robe of purple and gold: his voice, his countenance, his gestures, bespoke the man who had devoted his life or death to the glorious cause. In a studied oration, he expatiated on the motives and the means of their enterprise: the name and liberties of Rome; the sloth and pride of their ecclesiastical tyrants; the active or passive consent of their fellow-citizens; three hundred soldiers and four hundred exiles, long exercised in arms or in wrongs; the licence of revenge to edge their swords, and a million of ducats to reward their victory. It would be easy (he said), on the next day, the festival of the Epiphany, to seize the pope and his cardinals, before the doors, or at the altar, of St. Peter's; to lead them in chains under the walls of St. Angelo; to extort by the threat of their instant death a surrender of the castle; to ascend the vacant capitol; to ring the alarm-bell; and to restore in a popular assembly the ancient republic of Rome. While he triumphed, he was already betrayed. The senator, with a strong guard, invested the house: the nephew of Porcaro cut his way through the crowd; but the unfortunate Stephen was drawn from a chest, lamenting that his enemies had anticipated by three hours the execution of his design. After such manifest and repeated guilt, even the mercy of Nicholas was silent. Porcaro, and nine of his accomplices, were hanged, without the benefit of the sacraments; and amidst the tears and invectives of the papal court, the Romans pitied,
and almost applauded; these martyrs of their country. But their applause was mute, their pity ineffectual, their liberty for ever extinct; and, if they have since risen in a vacancy of the throne or a scarcity of bread, such accidental tumults may be found in the bosom of the most abject servitude.

But the independence of the nobles, which was fomented by discord, survived the freedom of the commons, which must be founded in union. A privilege of rapine and oppression was long maintained by the barons of Rome; their houses were a fortress and a sanctuary; and the ferocious train of banditti and criminals whom they protected from the law, repaid the hospitality with the service of their swords and daggers. The private interest of the pontiffs, or their nephews, sometimes involved them in these domestic feuds. Under the reign of Sixtus the fourth, Rome was distracted by the battles and sieges of the rival houses; after the conflagration of his palace, the prothonotary Calonna was tortured and beheaded; and Savelli, his captive friend, was murdered on the spot, for refusing to join in the acclamations

---

3 Besides the curious though uncertain narratives of Machiavelli (Lettera Pontificia, I. 1, Opera, tom. I, p. 210, 211, edit, London, 1747), in n. 10, the Florentine conspiracy is related in the Diary of Stephen Halineman (Rer, stat, tom. II, p. 1, p. 1234, 1535), and in a separate tract by Louis Brifius Alcari (Rer, lat., tom. XVI, p. 607-613). It is amusing to compare the style and sentiments of the courtier and statesman.--Facies penita merito .... nonne etiam servitutis, necpe sulci helicostellis .... et pauca spectacula circiter .... efficacissimum verum existimationis et ... Petreissi in vita quidem innumerabili bene et sacrae della bene et libertate di Roma.
of the victorious Ursini. But the popes no longer trembled in the Vatican: they had strength to command, if they had resolution to claim, the obedience of their subjects; and the strangers, who observed these partial disorders, admired the easy taxes and wise administration of the ecclesiastical state.

The spiritual thunders of the Vatican depend on the force of opinion; and if that opinion be sup- planted by reason or passion, the sound may idly waste itself in the air; and the helpless priest is exposed to the brutal violence of a noble or a plebeian adversary. But after their return from Avignon, the keys of St. Peter were guarded by the sword of St. Paul. Rome was commanded by an impregnable citadel: the use of cannon is a powerful engine against popular seditions; a regular force of cavalry and infantry was enlisted under the banners of the pope: his ample revenues supplied the resources of war; and, from the extent of his domain, he could bring down on a rebellious city an army of hostile neighbours.

The disorders of Rome, which were much inflamed by the partiality of the people, are exposed in the histories of two operators, Steph. Inf. and his anonymous editor. See the troubles of the year 1554, and the death of the protonotary Celsus, in ann. 1557, p. 1000, 1158.

Et toute la terre de l'Eglise tremble pour cette partialité des Coloniers et des Ursini, nous nous dirions Luce et Grammont, ou en Hollande Hoore et Caliënion; et quand se ne serait de différent is autre de l'Eglise serait la plus ouvrure horizontal pour les sujets, qui se passent sans le monde (car il se payent se suivre en guerre autre chose), et servent toujours leurs ennemis (car toujours les papes sont en peur de leur sommes); mais lors arrivent en adjectif de grands et cruels massacres et pillages.
and loyal subjects. Since the union of the duchies of Ferarra and Urbino, the ecclesiastical state extends from the Mediterranean to the Adriatic, and from the confines of Naples to the banks of the Po; and as early as the sixteenth century, the greater part of that spacious and fruitful country acknowledged the lawful claims and temporal sovereignty of the Roman pontiffs. Their claims were readily deduced from the genuine, or fabulous, donations of the darker ages: the successive steps of their final settlement would engage us too far in the transactions of Italy, and even of Europe; the crimes of Alexander the sixth, the martial operations of Julius the second, and the liberal policy of Leo the tenth, a theme which has been adorned by the pens of the noblest historians of the times. In the first period of their conquests, till the expedition of Charles the eighth, the popes might successfully wrestle with the adjacent princes and states, whose military force was equal, or inferior, to their own: but as soon as the monarchs of France, Germany, and Spain,

* By the economy of Sixtus the revenue of the ecclesiastical state was raised to two millions and a half of Roman crowns (Vita, tom. ii. p. 281-290); and so regular was the military establishments that in one month Clement vii. could invade the duchy of Ferrara, with three thousand horse and twenty thousand foot (cum. iii. p. 94). Since that time (i.e. 1597) the papal arms are happily raised, but the revenue must have gained some annual increase.

* More especially by Guicciardini and Machiavelly, in the general history of the former, in the Florentine history, the Prince, and the political discourses of the latter. These, with their worthy successors, Fr. Paolo and Durini, were justly esteemed the first historians of modern languages, till, in the present age, Scotland aces, to dispute the prize with Italy herself.
contended with gigantic arms for the dominion of Italy, they supplied with art the deficiency of strength; and concealed, in a labyrinth of wars and treaties, their aspiring views, and the immortal hope of chasing the barbarians beyond the Alps. The nice balance of the Vatican was often subverted by the soldiers of the North and West, who were united under the standard of Charles the fifth: the feeble and fluctuating policy of Clement the seventh exposed his person and dominions to the conqueror; and Rome was abandoned seven months to a lawless army, more cruel and rapacious than the Goths and Vandals. After this severe lesson, the popes contracted their ambition, which was almost satisfied, resumed the character of a common parent, and abstained from all offensive hostilities, except in an hasty quarrel, when the vicar of Christ and the Turkish sultan were armed at the same time against the kingdom of Naples. The French and Germans at length withdrew from the field of battle: Milan, Naples, Sicily, Sardinia, and the sea-coast of Tuscany, were firmly possessed by the Spaniards; and it became their interest to maintain the peace and

* In the history of the Gothic siege, I have compared the barbarians with the subjects of Charles the v. (vol. v. p. 318-322.) In anticipation, which, like that of the Tartar conquerors, I indulged with thetextContent, as I could scarcely hope to reach the conclusion of my work.

* The ambitious and feebler hostilities of the Camillo pope, Paul v., may be seen in Tuscany (c. xxvi.-xxvii.) and Guicciardini (vol. iv. p. 149.-163.) These Catholic dignats, Philip v., and the duke of Alva, presumed to separate the Roman princes from the vicar of Christ; yet the holy character, which would have sanctified his name, was deceitfully applied to protect his deceit.
dependence of Italy, which continued almost without disturbance from the middle of the sixteenth to the opening of the eighteenth century. The Vatican was swayed and protected by the religious policy of the Catholic King: his prejudice and interest disposed him in every dispute to support the prince against the people; and instead of the encouragement, the aid, and the asylum, which they obtained from the adjacent states, the friends of liberty, or the enemies of law, were inclosed on all sides within the iron circle of despotism. The long habits of obedience and education subdued the turbulent spirit of the nobles and commons of Rome. The barons forgot the arms and factions of their ancestors, and insensibly became the servants of luxury and government. Instead of maintaining a crowd of tenants and followers, the produce of their estates was consumed in the private expenses, which multiply the pleasures, and diminish the power, of the lord. The Colonna and Ursini vied with each other in the decoration of their palaces and chapels; and their antique splendour was rivalled or surpassed by the sudden opulence of the papal families. In Rome the voice of freedom and discord is no longer heard; and instead of the foaming torrent, a smooth and stagnant lake reflects the image of idleness and servitude.

*This gradual change of manners and expence is admirably explained by Dr. Adam Smith, Wealth of Nations, vol. i. p. 492-504; who proves, perhaps too severely, that the most military efforts have flowed from the meanest and most selfish causes.*
A christian, a philosopher, and a patriot, will be equally scandalized by the temporal kingdom of the clergy; and the local majesty of Rome, the remembrance of her consuls and triumphs, may seem to embitter the sense, and aggravate the shame of her slavery. If we calmly weigh the merits and defects of the ecclesiastical government, it may be praised in its present state, as a mild, decent, and tranquil system, exempt from the dangers of a minority, the sallies of youth, the expenses of luxury, and the calamities of war. But these advantages are overbalanced by a frequent, perhaps a septennial, election of a sovereign, who is seldom a native of the country: the reign of a young statesmen of threescore, in the decline of his life and abilities, without hope to accomplish, and without children to inherit, the labours of his transitory reign. The successful candidate is drawn from the church, and even the convent; from the mode of education and life the most adverse to reason, humanity, and freedom. In the trammels of servile faith, he has learned to believe because it is absurd, to revere all that is contemptible, and to despise whatever might deserve the esteem of a rational being: to punish error as a crime, to reward mortification and celibacy as the first of virtues; to place the saints of the calendier above

* Mr. Hume (Hist. of England, vol. i. p. 599. the latter concludes, that if the civil and ecclesiastical powers be united in the same person, it is of little moment whether he be styled prince or pope, since the temporal character will always predominate.
* A protestant may disdain the unworthy preference of St. Francis
the heroes of Rome and the sages of Athens; and to consider the missal, or the crucifix, as more useful instruments than the plough or the loom. In the office of nuncio, or the rank of cardinal, he may acquire some knowledge of the world; but the primitive stap will adhere to his mind and manners: [from study and experience he may suspect the mystery of his profession: but the sacerdotal artist will imbibe some portion of the bigotry which he inculcates. The genius of Sixtus the fifth burst from the gloom of a Franciscan cloister. In a reign of five years, he exterminated the outlaws and banditti, abolished the profane sanctuaries of Rome, formed a naval and military force, restored and emulated the monuments of antiquity, and after a liberal use and large increase of the revenue, left five millions of crowns

or St. Dominic, but he will not rashly condemn the zeal of judgment of Sixtus v, who placed the statues of the apostles, St. Peter and St. Paul, on the sacred columns of Trajan and Antoninus.

* A wondering Italian, Gregorio Leti, has given the Vita di Sisto Quinto (Annot. 1781, 3 vol. in folio), a copious and amusing work, but which does not command our absolute confidence. Yet the character of the man, and the principal facts, are supported by the annals of Spallanzani and Muratori (a. 8. 1585-1400), and the contemporary history of the great Thurne (l. xxxii. c. 1, 2. l. xxxiv. c. 10. l. c. 8).

* These privileged places, the quartieri or franchises, were adopted from the Roman nobles by the foreign ministers. Julius ii had also abolished the abusamabosi et determinans franchiseur amplissimi nomino; and after Sixtus v, they again revived. I cannot discern either the justice or magnanimity of Louis xiv, who, in 1667, sent his ambassadour, the marquis de LaVerdure, to Rome, with an armed force of a thousand officers, guards, and domesticos, to maintain this inquisitoes claim, and small pope Innocent x, in the heart of his capital (Vita de Sisto v. tom. iii. p. 383-378. Muratori. Annali d'Italia, tom. xiv, p. 404-496, and Voltaire, Vie de Louis xiv, tom. ii. c. 14, p. 28, 39).
In the castle of St. Angelo. But his justice was sullied with cruelty, his activity was prompted by the ambition of conquest; after his decease, the abuses revived; the treasure was dissipated; he entailed on posterity thirty-five new taxes and the venality of offices; and, after his death, his statue was demolished by an ungrateful, or an injured, people. The wild and original character of Sixtus the fifth stands alone in the series of the pontiffs: the maxims and effects of their temporal government may be collected from the positive and comparative view of the arts and philosophy, the agriculture and trade, the wealth and population, of the ecclesiastical state. For myself, it is my wish to depart in charity with all mankind, nor am I willing, in these last moments, to offend even the pope and clergy of Rome.

* This outrage produced a decree, which was inserted on marble, and placed in the capitol. It is expressed in a style of main simplicity and freedom: Si quis, sine iudiciis, in magnatum genus de collocandis his posthumis statibus, mentionem factus absit, legiones a. u. a. decem in perpetuum infantis et pubescentum numerum super eis aequo. Major Augustus (Cursi di Sisto v., tom. iii., p. 400), I believe that this decree is still observed, and I know that every monarch who desires a statute, should himself support the prohibition.

The histories of the church, Italy, and Christendom, have contributed to the chapter which I now advance. In the original Lives of the Popes, we often discover the site and repulse of Rome; and the events of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries are preserved in the rude and domestic chronicles, which I have minutely inspected, and shall recapitulate in the order of time.

1. Monaldeschi (Ludovico Roscomini) Fragm. Annalium Roman., a. d. 1323., in the Scriptores Romani, Italiamini de Muretii., tom. iii., p. 523. L. I. The credit of this fragment is somewhat less by a singular interpretation, in which the author relates his son's death at the age of 113 years.

2. Fragm. Histor. Roman. (sive Thomas Forstechus), in Romanis Dialectis Vulgari (a. d. 1337., in Muratori, Anti-
THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAP. LXX.

CHAP. LXX. quarto, small 8vo, Bologna, 1712, 3 vols. p. 241-258; the authentic groundwork of the history of Rome.


8. Intellam Dei (Stefano). Diarium Romanum (a. d. 1794, or 1798-1804), vol. iii, p. ii, p. 1109.


Except the last, all these fragments and diaries are inserted in the Collections of Marazzi, my guide and master in the history of Italy. His country, and the public, are indebted to him for the following works on this subject: 1. Herbar Italiae Sacrace (a. d. 500-1400), 7 vols. in folio, Milano, 1742-1798, 1751. A volume of chronological and alphabetical tables is still wanting as a key to this great work, which is yet in a disorderly and defective state. 2. Antiquitates Galliae under title, 3 vols. in folio, Milano, 1728-1731, 1732. editions concerning the manners, government, religion, &c. of the Italians of the distant ages, with a large supplement of charters, &c. 3. Dissertatione sopra il Antiquità Italiane, 3 vols. in 4to, Milano, 1751, a free version by the author, which may be quoted with the same confidence as the Latin text of the Antiquitates. 2. Aspeti di Italia, 8 vols. in octavo, Milano, 1753-1756, a dry though accurate and useful abridgment of the history of Italy from the birth of Christ to the middle of the eighteenth century. 2. Dell' Antichità Ercolani in Italia, 2 vols. in folio, Modena, 1717, 1740. In the history of this illustrious city, the patron of our Brutus is large, the critic is not seduced by the loyalty or gratitude of the author. In all his works, Marazzi approves himself a diligent and excellent writer, who regards above the prejudices of a Catholic prince. He was born in the year 1673, and died in the year 1759, after passing near sixty years in the libraries of Milan and Modena (Vita dei Professi Ludovico Antonio Marazzi, by his nephew and successor Gian Francesco Soli Marazzi, Verona, 1756, in 4to).
CHAP. LXXI.

Prospect of the ruins of Rome in the fifteenth century.—Four causes of decay and destruction.—Example of the Coloseum.—Renovation of the city.—Conclusion of the whole work.

In the last days of pope Eugenius the fourth, two of his servants, the learned Poggius and a friend, ascended the Capitoline hill; reposed themselves among the ruins of columns and temples; and viewed from that commanding spot the wide and various prospect of desolation. The place and the object gave ample scope for moralising on the vicissitudes of fortune, which spares neither man nor the proudest of his works, which buries empires and cities in a common grave; and it was agreed, that in proportion to her former greatness, the fall of Rome was the more awful and deplorable. "Her primeval state, such as she might appear in a remote age, when Evander entertained the stranger of Troy, has

1 There already (sec. 30, 31, in chap. 63) mentioned the age, character, and writings of Poggius; and particularly noticed the date of this elegant moral lecture on the vanities of fortune.
2 Consultium in priore Tarpeio area ruina, pass in parte pumice iniustam, at pratis, templi, multiformem fumes, plurimum passim substantias columnarum, nulliigni, ut passa prospectus orbis pont (p. 46).
3 M. G. 389. This ancient picture, so slightly introduced, and so expeditiously finished, must have been highly interesting to an inhabitant of Rome's; and our early studies since we are sympathetic to the feelings of a Roman.
been delineated by the fancy of Virgil. This Tarpeian rock was then a savage and solitary thicket; in the time of the poet, it was crowned with the golden roofs of a temple; the temple is overthrown, the gold has been pillaged, the wheel of fortune has accomplished her revolution, and the sacred ground is again disfigured with thorns and brambles. The hill of the capitol, on which we sit, was formerly the head of the Roman empire, the citadel of the earth, the terror of kings; illustrated by the footsteps of so many triumphs, enriched with the spoils and tributes of so many nations. This spectacle of the world, how is it fallen! how changed! how defaced! the path of victory is obliterated by vines, and the benches of the senators are concealed by a dung-hill. Cast your eyes on the Palatine hill, and seek among the shapeless and enormous fragments, the marble theatre, the obelisks, the colossal statues, the porticoes of Nero’s palace: survey the other hills of the city, the vacant space is interrupted only by ruins and gardens. The forum of the Roman people, where they assembled to enact their laws and elect their magistrates, is now enclosed for the cultivation of pot herbs, or thrown open for the reception of swine and buffaloes. The public and private edifices, that were founded for eternity, lie prostrate, naked, and broken, like the limbs of a mighty giant, and the ruin is the more visible, from the stupendous
"relies that have survived the injuries of time and fortune."

These relics are minutely described by Poggio, one of the first who raised his eyes from the monuments of legendary, to those of classic, superstition. 1. Besides a bridge, an arch, a sepulchre, and the pyramid of Cestius, he could discern, of the age of the republic, a double row of vaults, in the salt-office of the capitol, which were inscribed with the name and munificence of Catulus. 2. Eleven temples were visible in some degree, from the perfect form of the Pantheon, to the three arches and a marble column of the temple of peace, which Vespasian erected after the civil wars and the Jewish triumph. 3. Of the number, which he rashly defines, of seven thermae or public baths, none were sufficiently entire to represent the use and distribution of the several parts: but those of Diocletian and Antoninus Caracalla still retained the titles of the founders, and astonished the curious spectator, who, in observing their solidity and extent, the variety of marbles, the size and multitude of the columns, compared the labour and expense with the use and importance. Of the baths of Constantine, of Alexander, of Domitian, or rather of Titus, some vestige might yet be found. 4. The triumphal arches of Titus, Severus, and Constantine, were entire, both the structure and the inscriptions; a falling frag-

* Capitolium also . . . Alumnatum ut vide in seminum, pal-ella immaculatissimum, stolatum at praepositorum in equitesulum for- tum. "Respect of Palatium munition . . . veste rustica . . .
corner olium periantur unius cum una alium, ruine viridem oppara compender (Poggio de Variatia, Fortuna, p. 21).
* See Poggio, p. 821.
ment was honoured with the name of Trajan; and two arches, then extant, in the Flaminian way, have been ascribed to the baser memory of Faustina and Gallienus. 5. After the wonder of the Coliseum, Poggius might have overlooked a small amphitheatre of brick, most probably for the use of the praetorian camp; the theatres of Marcellus and Pompey were occupied in a great measure by public and private buildings; and in the circus, Agonalia and Maximus, little more than the situation and the form could be investigated. 6. The columns of Trajan and Antonine were still erect; but the Egyptian obelisks were broken or buried. A people of gods and heroes, the workmanship of art, was reduced to one equestrian figure of gilt brass, and to five marble statues, of which the most conspicuous were, the two horses of Philias and Praxiteles. 7. The two mausoleums or sepulchres of Augustus and Hadrian could not totally be lost; but the former was only visible as a mound of earth; and the latter, the castle of St. Angelo, had acquired the name and appearance of a modern fortress. With the addition of some separate and nameless columns, such were the remains of the ancient city: for the marks of a more recent structure might be detected in the walls, which formed a circumference of ten miles, included three hundred and seventy-nine turrets, and opened into the country by thirteen gates.

This melancholy picture was drawn above nine hundred years after the fall of the Western empire, and even of the Gothic kingdom of Italy. A
long period of distress and anarchy, in which empire, and arts, and riches, had migrated from the banks of the Tyber, was incapable of restoring or adorning the city; and as all that is human must retrograde if it do not advance, every successive age must hasten the ruin of the works of antiquity. To measure the progress of decay, and to ascertain, at each era, the state of each edifice, would be an endless and useless labour; and I shall content myself with two observations, which will introduce a short enquiry into the general causes and effects. 1. Two hundred years before the eloquent complaint of Poggio, an anonymous writer composed a description of Rome. His ignorance may repeat the same objects under strange and fabulous names. Yet this barbarous topographer had eyes and ears; he could observe the visible remains; he could listen to the tradition of the people, and he distinctly enumerates seven theatres, eleven baths, twelve arches, and eighteen palaces, of which many had disappeared before the time of Poggio. It is apparent, that many stately monuments of antiquity survived till a late period; and that the principles of de-
contruction acted with vigorous and encreasing energy in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries.

2. The same reflection must be applied to the three last ages; and we should vainly seek the Septizodium of Severus, which is celebrated by Petrarch and the antiquarians of the sixteenth century. While the Roman edifices were still entire, the first blows, however weighty and impetuous, were resisted by the solidity of the mass and the harmony of the parts; but the slightest touch would precipitate the fragments of arches and columns, that already nodded to their fall.

After a diligent enquiry, I can discern four principal causes of the ruin of Rome, which continued to operate in a period of more than a thousand years. 1. The injuries of time and nature. II. The hostile attacks of the barbarians and christians. III. The use and abuse of the materials. And IV. The domestic quarrels of the Romans.

1. The art of man is able to construct monuments far more permanent than the narrow span of his own existence: yet these monuments, like himself, are perishable and frail; and in the boundless annals of time, his life and his labours must equally be measured as a fleeting moment. Of a simple and solid edifice, it is not easy, however, to circumscribe the duration. As the won-

the churches and holy places of Rome, knothes or several buildings, especially porticoes, which had disappeared before the thirteenth century.

* On the Septizodium, see the Mémoires sur Petrarch (vol. IV, p. 263), Desaix (p. 338), and Naulet (p. 117, 114).
Of the Roman Empire.

Chap. LXXXI.

Of the Roman Empire.

Durs of ancient days, the pyramids attracted the curiosity of the ancients; an hundred generations, the leaves of autumn, have dropt into the grave; and after the fall of the Pharaohs and Ptolemies, the Caesars and caliphs, the same pyramids stand erect and unshaken above the floods of the Nile. A complex figure, of various and minute parts, is more accessible to injury and decay; and the silent lapse of time is often accelerated by hurricanes and earthquakes, by fires and inundations. The air and earth have doubtless been shaken; and the lofty turrets of Rome have tottered from their foundations; but the seven hills do not appear to be placed on the great cavities of the globe; nor has the city, in any age, been exposed to the convulsions of nature, which, in the climate of Antioch, Lisbon, or Lima, have crumbled, in a few moments, the works of ages into dust. Fire is the most powerful agent of life and death; the rapid mischief may be kindled and propagated by the industry or negligence of mankind; and every period of the Roman annals is marked by the repetition of similar calamities. A memorable conflagration, the guilt or misfortune of Nero's reign, continued, though with unequal fury, either six or

---

1 The age of the pyramids is remote and unknown, since Diodorus Siculus (tom. 1. l. 2. c. 44. p. 52) is unable to decide whether they were constructed 1000 or 3400 years before the 1000th Olympiad. Sir John Marsham's contracted scale of the Egyptian dynasty would fix them above 2000 years before Christ (Casson. Chronol. p. 17.)

2 See the speech of Glaucus in the Iliad (v. 140). This natural and melancholy picture is familiar to Homer.
nine days. Innumerable buildings, crowded in close and crooked streets, supplied perpetual fuel for the flames; and when they ceased, four only of the fourteen regions were left entire; three were totally destroyed, and seven were deformed by the relics of smoking and lacerated edifices. In the full meridian of empire, the metropolis arose with fresh beauty from her ashes; yet the memory of the old deplored their irreparable losses; the arts of Greece, the trophies of victory, the monuments of primitive or fabulous antiquity. In the days of distress and anarchy, every wound is mortal, every fall irretrievable; nor can the damage be restored either by the public care of government, or the activity of private interest. Yet two causes may be alleged, which render the calamity of fire more destructive to a flourishing than a decayed city. 1. The more combustible materials of brick, timber, and metals, are first melted or consumed; but the flames may play without injury or effect on...
the naked walls, and mossy arches, that have been despoiled of their ornaments. It is among the common and plebeian habitations that a mischievous spark is most easily blown to a conflagration; but as soon as they are devoured, the greater edifices, which have resisted or escaped, are left as so many islands in a state of solitude and safety. From her situation, Rome is exposed to the danger of frequent inundations. Without excepting the Tyber, the rivers that descend from either side of the Appennine have a short and irregular course; a shallow stream in the summer heats; an impetuous torrent, when it is swelled in the spring or winter, by the fall of rain, and the melting of the snows. When the current is repelled from the sea by adverse winds, when the ordinary bed is inadequate to the weight of waters, they rise above the banks, and overspread, without limits or control, the plains and cities of the adjacent country. Soon after the triumph of the first Punic war, the Tyber was increased by unusual rains; and the inundation surpassing all former measure of time and place, destroyed all the buildings that were situate below the hills of Rome. According to the variety of ground, the same mischief was produced by different means; and the edifices were either swept away by the sudden impulse, or dissolved and undermined by the long continuance, of the flood.* Under the reign of Au-

* a. d. 207, ipsum Romam present triumphum Romanorum; diversa iguam aquirumque clades par abhumerat.
gustus, the same calamity was renewed: the lawless river overturned the palaces and temples on its banks; and, after the labours of the emperor in cleansing and widening the bed that was encumbered with ruins, the vigilance of his successors was exercised by similar dangers and designs. The project of diverting into new channels the Tyber itself, or some of the dependent streams, was long opposed by superstition and local interests; nor did the use compensate the toil and cost of the tardy and imperfect execution. The servitude of rivers is the noblest and most important victory which man has obtained over the licentiousness of nature.

Sam Tiberis insuris versus imbrius et ultra opemque, vel triumviri vel magnitudines eumdem, sunt Romae saepe laetae in plausa puella delit. Diversae qualitates in eorum consensum pervenerunt, quam et quae minus mundari transit mundi, tum etiam, quam esset terrae inventi impetus dejectus (Orosius, Hist. Liv., c. 12, p. 244, edit. Havercamp). Yet we may observe, that it is the plan and study of the Christian apologists to magnify the calamities of the pagan world.

*Vitamque furvarum Thesaurorum retulit.*

Litterae Etruriae violantes multis

Its selectum monumenta regis

Templique Vesta.

(Horn: Carm. L 7).

If the palace of Numa, and temple of Vesta, were thrown down in Titius's time, what was consumed of those buildings by Nero's fire could hardly deserve the epithets of vestmalius or incipiens.

*Ad nocendos insidias aequo Thibrisi (Titevis) societate, at se segeterr, completam idem rubrissim, et additam aspersam obsidinatis occasione Claudiae in Augusto, c. 20*.

Titius (Annals i. 79) reports the petitions of the different towns of Italy to the senate against the measure, and we may apply the phrase of reason. On a similar occasion, local interests would undoubtedly be consulted; but an English House of Commons would reject with contempt the arguments of superstition, *that nature had assigned to the rivers their proper course,* &c.
ture; and if such were the ravages of the Tyber under a firm and active government, what could oppose, or who can enumerate, the injuries of the city after the fall of the western empire? A remedy was at length produced by the evil itself: the accumulation of rubbish, and the earth that has been washed down from the hills, is supposed to have elevated the plain of Rome, fourteen or fifteen feet perhaps, above the ancient level; and the modern city is less accessible to the attacks of the river.

The crowd of writers of every nation, who impute the destruction of the Roman monuments to the Goths and the Christians, have neglected to inquire how far they were animated by an hostile principle, and how far they possessed the means and the leisure to satiate their enmity. In the preceding volumes of this history, I have described the triumph of barbarism and religion; and I can only resume, in a few words, their real or imaginary connection with the ruin of ancient Rome. Our fancy may create, or adopt, a pleasing romance, that the Goths and Vandals, sallied from Scandinavia, ardent to avenge the flight of

1. See the Époques de la Nature of the eloquent and philosophic Buffon. His picture of Guyana in South America is that of a new and savage land, in which the writers are abandoned to themselves, without being regulated by human industry (p. 212, 281, quarto edition).

2. In his Travel in Italy, Mr. Addison, who speaks, vol. ii, p. 88, Berkeley’s edition, has observed this curious and unquestionable fact.

3. Yet in modern times, the Tyber has sometimes damaged the city; and in the years 1530, 1551, 1558, the people of Murano record three disastrous and memorable inundations (vol. ii, p. 268, 429, 1st ed. p. 29, etc.).
Odin," to break the chains, and to chastise the oppressors, of mankind; that they wished to burn the records of classic literature, and to found their national architecture on the broken members of the Tuscan and Corinthian orders. But in simple truth, the northern conquerors were neither sufficiently savage, nor sufficiently refined, to entertain such aspiring ideas of destruction and revenge. The shepherds of Scythia and Germany had been educated in the armies of the empire, whose discipline they acquired, and whose weakness they invaded: with the familiar use of the Latin tongue, they had learned to reverence the name and titles of Rome; and, though incapable of emulating, they were more inclined to admire, than to abolish, the arts and studies of a brighter period. In the transient possession of a rich and unresisting capital, the soldiers of Alaric and Genseric were stimulated by the passions of a victorious army; amidst the wanton indulgence of lust or cruelty, portable wealth was the object of their search; nor could they derive either pride or pleasure from the unprofitable reflection, that they had battered to the ground the works of the consuls and Caesars. Their moments were indeed precious; the Goths evacuated Rome on the sixth,* the Vandals on the fifteenth, day;[

* I take this opportunity of declaring, that in the course of twenty years I have forgotten, or renounced, the right of Odin from Aspel to Sweden, which I never very seriously believed (vol. I, p. 386). The Goths are apparently Germans; but all beyond Ceasar and Tacitus is darkness or fable in the antiquities of Germany.
* History of the Decline, &c. vol. iv, p. 325.

vol. vi, p. 141.
and, though it be far more difficult to build than to destroy, their hasty assault would have made a slight impression on the solid piles of antiquity. We may remember, that both Alaric and Genseric affected to spare the buildings of the city; that they subsisted in strength and beauty under the auspicious government of Theodoric; and that the momentary resentment of Totila* was disarmed by his own temper and the advice of his friends and enemies. From these innocent barbarians, the reproach may be transferred to the catholics of Rome. The statues, altars, and houses, of the demons were an abomination in their eyes; and in the absolute command of the city, they might labour with zeal and perseverance to craze the idolatry of their ancestors. The demolition of the temples in the East affords to them an example of conduct; and to use an argument of belief; and it is probable, that a portion of guilt or merit may be imputed with justice to the Roman proselytes. Yet their abhorrence was confined to the monuments of heathen superstition; and the civil structures that were dedicated to the business or pleasure of society might be preserved without injury or scandal. The change of religion was accomplished, not by a popular tumult, but by the decrees of the emperors, of the senate, and of time. Of the christian hierarchy, the bishops of Rome were commonly the most prudent and least fanatic; nor

---

* vol. v. c. xxviii. p. 102-128.
can any positive charge be opposed to the meritorious act of saving and converting the majestic structure of the pantheon."

iii. The value of any object that supplies the wants or pleasures of mankind is compounded of its substance and its form, of the materials and the manufacture. Its price must depend on the number of persons by whom it may be acquired and used; on the extent of the market; and consequently on the ease or difficulty of remote exportation, according to the nature of the commodity, its local situation, and the temporary circumstances of the world. The barbarian conquerors of Rome usurped in a moment the toil and treasure of successive ages; but, except the luxuries of immediate consumption, they must view without desire all that could not be removed from the city, in the Gothic waggons or the fleet of the Vandals." Gold and silver were the first objects of their avarice; as in every country, and

-- Eadem temporis petita a Phocasis princeps templiurum good appellation Passione, in quo fact ecclesiastica Sanctae Mariae simplici virginitate, et omnium martyrum, in quid eclesiasticum principis multa bona obtulit (Anastasius vti potius Liber Pontificalis in Bonificis, in Muratori Script. Rom. Italic. lib. iii. p. 1, p. 155). According to the anonymous writer in Montanen, the pantheon had been vowed by Agrippa, to Cybele and Neptune, and was dedicated by Boniface, iv. on the calends of November, in the virgin, qui est utraque annorum centuriam (p. 197, 198).

-- Flaminii Varronis opus Montasum, p. 155, 160. His Memoirs is likewise printed, pp. 31, at the end of the Roma Antica of Nardini, and several Romani, doctorum gravibus, were persuaded that the Goths burned their treasures at Rome, and beard out the sacred marks of his nomenclature. He relates some anecdotes to prove that, in his own time, these places were visited and visited by the Transalpine pilgrims, the habit of the Gothic conquerors.
in the smallest compass, they represent the most ample command of the industry and possessions of mankind. A vase or a statue of those precious metals might tempt the vanity of some barbarian chief; but the grosser multitude, regardless of the form, was tenacious only of the substance; and the melted ingots might be readily divided and stamped into the current coin of the empire. The less active, or less fortunate, robbers were reduced to the baser plunder of brass, lead, iron, and copper; whatever had escaped the Goths and Vandals was pillaged by the Greek tyrants; and the emperor Constans, in his rapacious visit, stripped the bronze tiles from the roof of the pantheon.* The edifices of Rome might be considered as a vast and various mine; the first labour of extracting the materials was already performed; the metals were purified and cast; the marbles were hewn and polished; and after foreign and domestic rapine had been satiated, the remains of the city, could a purchaser have been found, were still venial. The monuments of antiquity had been left naked of their precious ornaments, but the Romans would demolish with their own hands the arches and walls, if the hope of profit could surpass the cost of the labour and exportation. If Charlemagne had fixed in Italy the seat of the Western empire, his genius would have aspired to restore, rather than to violate, the

* Quumque que erat in urbe adornatum civitatis exaruit; sed et ejectione R. Matri ad martyres quae de regibus annis sequenter disconspexit (Anaul. in Vitiano, p. 141). The base and superfluous Greek had not even the poor pretence of plundering an heathen temple; the pantheon was already a catholic church.
works of the Caesars: but policy confined the French monarch to the forests of Germany; his taste could be gratified only by destruction; and the new palace of Aix la Chapelle was decorated with the marbles of Ravenna and Rome. Five hundred years after Charlemagne, a king of Sicily, Robert, the wisest and most liberal sovereign of the age, was supplied with the same materials by the easy navigation of the Tyber and the sea; and Petrarch sighs an indignant complaint, that the ancient capital of the world should adorn, from her own bowels, the slothful luxury of Naples. But these examples of plunder or

---

1 For the spoils of Ravenna (mariae etque narmora) see the original grant of pope Adrian to Charlemagne (Codex Carolini, episc. lavdii, in Montan), Script. Ital. tom. iii. p. 222.

2 I shall quote the authentic testimony of the Saxon poet (ib. v. 387-389), de Rheni genitis, Carall magna, i.e., 327-340, in the Historians of France (ib. vi. p. 286):

Ad qua sanctissima praebuit Renni columna,
Quae longis pristina genus Ravennae ductus
De suo sepulchro petita regissi quos
Illius sanctum Fracencis terra fuit.

And I shall add, from the Chronicles of Sigibert (Historiarum de Francia, tom. vi. p. 375, et seq.), extera alia Aequaocus hastingae plurimum pandebant sub eis; et eae structurae in Rennae et Ravennae colonne et mariae desiderat reddi.

3 I cannot refuse to transcribe a long passage of Petrarch (Opus, p. 434, 437, in Epitome herbaria ad Nicolam Laurentiuni, in utum et in re, tarn honestae et decorae lenitatem et varium consilium et assemblia discedere, intemplato furoris sententia societate convocare, in poetas et mores atque intentione lapides deponere. Deinde poes

---
purchase were rare in the darker ages; and the Romans, alone and unenvied, might have applied to their private or public use the remaining structures of antiquity, if, in their present form and situation, they had not been useless in a great measure to the city and its inhabitants. The walls still described the old circumference, but the city had descended from the seven hills into the Campus Martius; and some of the noblest monuments, which had braved the injuries of time, were left in a desert, far remote from the habitations of mankind: The palaces of the senators were no longer adapted to the manners or fashions of their indigent successors; the use of baths and porches was forgotten; in the sixth century, the games of the theatre, amphitheatre, and circus, had been interrupted; some temples were devoted to the prevailing worship; but the Christian churches preferred the holy figure of the cross; and fashion, or reason, had distributed, after a peculiar model, the cells and offices of the cloister. Under the ecclesiastical reign, the number of these pious foundations was enormously multiplied; and the city was crowded with forty monasteries of

*Yet Charlemagne walked and swam at Aix-la-Chapelle with an hundred of his courtiers (Echternach, c. 72, p. 109, 110, and Marmoris description, c. 126, c. 306; the year 814, the public baths which were built a Spoleto in Italy (Annals, lib. xi. p. 578).*
men, twenty of women, and sixty chapters and colleges of canons and priests; who, aggravated, instead of relieving, the depopulation of the tenth century. But if the forms of ancient architecture were disregarded by a people insensible of their use and beauty, the plentiful materials were applied to every call of necessity or superstition; till the fairest columns of the Ionic and Corinthian orders, the richest marbles of Paros and Numidia, were degraded, perhaps, to the support of a convent or a stable. The daily havoc which is perpetrated by the Turks in the cities of Greece and Asia may afford a melancholy example; and in the gradual destruction of the monuments of Rome, Sixtus the fifth may alone be excused for employing the stones of the Septizonium in the glorious edifice of St. Peter's. A fragment, a ruin, howsoever mangled or profaned, may be viewed with pleasure and regret; but the greater part of the marble was deprived of substance, as well as of place and proportion; it was burnt to lime for the purpose of cement. Since the arrival of Poggio, the temple of Concord, and many

* See the Annals of Italy, a. d. 968. For this and the preceding fact, Muratori himself is indebted to the Benedictine history of Pére Malaurie.

† Vita di Sisto Quinto, da Gregorio Lutii, tom. III, p. 56.

‡ Porcius Rectus, Consularius, quam cum primum ad urbum successit, dicit, integrum opus maritum aliumque spectacularem Romani post- medium ad calcem alium turn et portico partem delapsae columnae sunt demulti (p. 15). The temple of Concord was therefore not destroyed by a sedition in the thirteenth century, as I have read in a work from del' Governo civile di Roma, written formerly at Rome, and entitled (I believe falsely) to the celebrated Gravina. Poggio Rectus affirms, that the sepulchre of Caelia Metella was burnt for
capital structures, had vanished from his eyes; and an epigram of the same age expresses a just and pious fear, that the continuance of this practice would finally annihilate all the monuments of antiquity. The smallness of their numbers was the sole check on the demands and depredations of the Romans. The imagination of Petrarch might create the presence of a mighty people; and I hesitate to believe, that even in the fourteenth century, they could be reduced to a contemptible list of thirty-three thousand inhabitants. From that period to the reign of Leo the tenth, if they multiplied to the amount of eight-five thousand, the increase of citizens was, in some degree, pernicious to the ancient city.

iv. I have reserved for the last, the most potent and forcible cause of destruction, the domestic hostilities of the Romans themselves. Under the dominion of the Greek and French emperors, the peace of the city was disturbed by accidental, though frequent, seditions; it is from the decline of the latter, from the beginning of the tenth

---

* Composed by Ausonio Sylvius, afterwards pope Pius ii, and published by Martyr from a ms. of the queen of Sweden (Mon. Italiae, tom. vi, p. 97).

Obestat me, Roma, tuae equitare velis:

Ex ejus lapidibus, gloria prorsa patet.

Seu tunc haec regnum urbis deboe restituit,

Caeso saeque ruinae muro; sine coqui

Impa terraevis si sit. Roma aruin amans.

Nullum hinc idiliicum nobilitatis exit.


* Those states of the population of Rome at different periods are derived from an ingenious treatise of the physician Livio, de Romani (Cass. Quaestionum (p. 122).
century, that we may date the licentiousness of private war, which violated with impunity the laws of the code and the gospel; without respecting the majesty of the absent sovereign, or the presence and person of the vicar of Christ. In a dark period of five hundred years, Rome was perpetually afflicted by the sanguinary quarrels of the nobles and the people, the Guelphs and Ghibelines, the Colonna and Ursini; and if much has escaped the knowledge, and much is unworthy of the notice, of history, I have exposed, in the two preceding chapters, the causes and effects of the public disorders. At such a time, when every quarrel was decided by the sword, and none could trust their lives or properties to the impotence of law; the powerful citizens were armed for safety or offence, against the domestic enemies, whom they feared or hated. Except Venice alone, the same dangers and designs were common to all the free republics of Italy; and the nobles usurped the prerogative of fortifying their houses, and erecting strong towers that were capable of resisting a sudden attack. The cities were filled with these hostile edifices; and the example of Lucca, which contained three hundred towers; her law which confined their height to the measure of fourscore feet, may be extended with suitable latitude to the more opulent and populous states. The first step of the senator Brancacone in the establishment of peace

* All the facts that relate to the towers at Rome, and in other free cities of Italy, may be found in the labours and entertaining compilation of Muratori, Antiquitates Italicæ, vol. iii., Observat. xxi. Com. ii. p. 405-406 of the Latin; tom. i., p. 446 of the Italian work.
and justice, was to demolish (as we have already seen) one hundred and forty of the towers of Rome; and, in the last days of anarchy and discord, as late as the reign of Martin the fifth, forty-four still stood in one of the thirteen or fourteen regions of the city. To this mischievous purpose, the remains of antiquity were most readily adapted: the temples and arches afforded a broad and solid basis for the new structures of brick and stone; and we can name the modern turrets that were raised on the triumphal monuments of Julius Caesar, Titus, and the Antonines. With some slight alterations, a theatre, an amphitheatre, a mausoleum, was transformed into a strong and spacious citadel. I need not repeat, that the mole of Adrian has assumed the title and form of the castle of St. Angelo: the septizonium of Severus was capable of standing against a royal army; the sepulchre of Metella has sunk under its outworks; the theatres of Pompey and Marcellus

*As for instance, Tempulum Jovi nume dicitur, tumet Castri Fragmento; et subsequently tumet Servus cornicis haec tellus insuperat (Monte sacra. Diction. Inclusa, p. 169). The accompanying writes (p. 204) innumera, serva Titus, tumet Carthalo, tumet Sallustium; tumet du Seculus; tumet Atheniis; Anglia & Coretho, &c.

* Habiles mutato: . . . . . . magno et parte Romanae auctior . . . . . . dictarum: quod certe tantum cessisse, si tumet numinum perit,nullius praedictum maius, reliquae maius existant (Poggio de Varietas. Fortuna, p. 167).

* Against the emperor Henry IV. (Montali. Annali d'Italia, Tom. 1. p. 167).

* I must copy an important passage of Montfaucon: Tura legenda rotunda . . . . Caesare Metella . . . . sepulchrum est, cujus neque solidus, at spatium suo quatuor minimum plus vacuum occupaverit et Tura di Bere dictur, a domo capillius manu inscripta. Hunc sequi-
were occupied by the Savelli and Ursini families; and the rough fortress had been gradually softened to the splendour and elegance of an Italian palace. Even the churches were encompassed with arms and bulwarks, and the military engines on the roof of St. Peter's were the terror of the Vatican and the scandal of the Christian world. Whatever is fortified will be attacked; and whatever is attacked may be destroyed. Could the Romans have wrested from the popes the castle of St. Angelo, they had resolved, by a public decree, to annihilate that monument of servitude. Every building of defence was exposed to a siege; and in every siege the arts and engines of destruction were laboriously employed. After the death of Nicholas the fourth, Rome, without a sovereign or a senate, was abandoned six months to the fury of civil war. "The houses," says a cardinal and poet of the times, "were crushed by the weight and

* See the testimonies of Donatus, Nardini, and Monticolo. In the Savelli palace, the remains of the theatre of Marcellus are still great and conspicuous.

† James cardinal of St. George, ad volum aureum, in his metre: Life of pope Celestin i. (Muratut), Scrip. Ital. tom. i, p. 104, p. 621, i, c. 1, sec. 133, &c.

Hoc dicere soleant. Romanae pars insignis
Maseribus castris hic et ibi: belloque vocatum vocatum
In section, in section fraternitas victoriae patres.
Tumultibus juridunt, viris insignis saxa:
Periodo domus trabant, socius ruina
Ignibus: flere versus, obstruuntque fames
Lustrosa vicina, quo sit apolia sepulchra.
velocity of enormous stones; the walls were perforated by the strokes of the battering-ram; the towers were involved in fire and smoke; and the assailants were stimulated by rapine and revenge. The work was consummated by the tyranny of the laws; and the factions of Italy alternately exercised a blind and thoughtless vengeance on their adversaries, whose houses and castles they razed to the ground. In comparing the days of foreign, with the age of domestic, hostility, we must pronounce, that the latter have been far more ruinous to the city; and our opinion is confirmed by the evidence of Petrarch. Behold, says the laureate, the relics of Rome, the image of her pristine greatness! neither time, nor the barbarian, can boast the merit of this stupendous destruction: it was perpetrated by her own citizens, by the most illustrious of her sons; and your ancestors (he writes to a noble Ammibaldi) have done with the battering-ram, what the Panic hero could not accomplish with the sword. The influence of the two last principles of decay must, in some degree, be mul-

* Muratori (Discescriptione sopra le Antiquità Italiane, tom. i. p. 427-431) finds, that stone bullets of two or three hundred pounds weight were not uncommon; and they are sometimes computed at twelve or eighteen talents of Rome, each talent weighing 160 pounds.

* The sixth law of the Visconti prohibits this nuisance and this abominable practice; and strictly enjoins, that the houses of banished citizens should be preserved pro rammum utinam (Guerres, in Muratori, Script. Beren. Ital., tom. xi, p. 1041).

* Petrarch thus addresses his friend, who, with shame and tears, had shown him the moans, lacerated forms, miserable Rome, and de-
tiplied by each other; since the houses and towers, which were subverted by civil war, required a new and perpetual supply from the monuments of antiquity.

These general observations may be separately applied to the amphitheatre of Titus, which has obtained the name of the Coliseum; either from its magnitude, or from Nero's colossal statue; an edifice, had it been left to time and nature, which might perhaps have claimed an eternal duration. The curious antiquaries, who have computed the numbers and seats, are disposed to believe, that above the upper row of stone steps, the amphitheatre was encircled and elevated with several stages of wooden galleries, which were repeatedly consumed by fire, and restored by the emperors. Whatever was precious, or portable, or profane, the statues of gods and heroes, and the costly ornaments of sculpture, which were cast in brass, or overspread with leaves of silver and

cited; his own intention of restoring them (Carmina Latina, 1. 3; epist. Ponders Amphilanced, xii. p. 97, 98).

Nec te vixi manet arva cautus
Quam te quid integer habuit; quis longior aestas
Frangere non vultis; non es aut iri erentis
Hons, ab egregia trangers civibus, boni! bene!

— Quod illa requiris (Hannibal)

Perfect his aris.

* The fourth part of the Veronae Illustratus of the Marquis Mattei, respectfully treated of amphitheatres, particularly those of Rome and Verona, of their dimensions, wooden galleries, &c. It is from many annals that he derives the name of Coloseum or Coliseum; since the same appellation was applied to the amphitheatre of Capua, without the aid of a colossal statue; since that of Nero was erected in the court (in atrio) of his palace, and not in the Coliseum (p. iv. p. 15-19, 1, i, c. 6).
gold, became the first prey of conquest or fanaticalism, or the avarice of the barbarians or the christians. In the mussy stones of the Coliseum, many holes are decreed; and the two most probable conjectures represent the various accidents of its decay. These stones were connected by solid links of brass or iron; nor had the eye of rapine overlooked the value of the baser metals; the vacant space was converted into a fair or market: the artisans of the Coliseum are mentioned in an ancient survey; and the chasms were perforated or enlarged to receive the poles that supported the shops or tents of the mechanic trades. Reduced to its naked majesty, the Flavian amphitheatre was contemplated with awe and admiration by the pilgrims of the north; and their rude enthusiasm broke forth in a sublime proverbial expression, which is recorded in the eighth century, in the fragments of the venerable Bede: "As long as the Coliseum stands, Rome shall stand; when the Coliseum falls, Rome will fall; when Rome falls, the world will fall." In the modern system of war, a situation commanded by three

* Joseph Marti-Santa, a learned bishop, and the author of an history of Florence, has composed a separate dissertation on the seven or eight probable causes of these holes, which has been since reprinted in the Roman Theatrum of Salles. Montfaucon (Diarium, p. 233) pronounces the rapine of the barbarians to be the main germanique causum stratum.

* Donatus, Roma Vetus et Nova, p. 263.

* Quod tamen stabit Coloseum, stabit et Roma; quando cadet Roma, cadet et mundus (Bede in Excerpta in Collectanea apud Ducange Glossar. med. et minus Latinisatis, tom. ii, p. 407, edit. Basili). This saying must be ascribed to the Anglo-Saxon pilgrims who visited Rome before the year 733, the era of Bede's death; for I do not believe that our venerable monk ever passed the sea.
hills would not be chosen for a fortress; but the strength of the walls and arches could resist the engines of assault; a numerous garrison might be lodged in the inclosure; and while one faction occupied the Vatican and the Capitol, the other was entrenched in the Lateran and the Colosseum."

The abolition at Rome of the ancient games must be understood with some latitude; and the carnival sports of the Testacean mount and the circus Agonalis, were regulated by the law or custom of the city. The senator presided with dignity and pomp to adjudge and distribute the prizes, the gold ring, or the pallium, as it was styled, of cloth or silk. A tribute on the Jews supplied the annual expense; and the races, on

---

1 I cannot recover, in Muratori's or any Livian of the Popes Carth. Hdrum. Italiam. tom. v. p. 25, the passage that attests this ancient parison, which must be applied to the end of the seventh or the beginning of the eighth century.

2 Although the structure of the circus Agonalis be destroyed, it still retains its form and name Agona, Nappa, Narroco, and the interior space affords a sufficient level for the purpose of racing. But the Muses, Testacean, that strange pile of ancient pottery, seems only adapted for the annual practice of hurling from top to bottom some waggon loads of live bags for the diversion of the populace (Statuta Urbis. Roma, p. 106).

3 see the Statuta Urbis Roma, t. iii. c. 87. 88. 89. p. 185, 186. I have already given an idea of this municipal code. The races of Nappa and Muses, Testaceus are likewise mentioned in the Diary of Peter Antiochus; from 1104 to 1417 (Muratori, Script. Hdrum. Italiam, tom. xi. p. 118).

4 The Pallium, which Musurus so forcibly describes from Paulus, is an easy exequation of the skin and the words, from the robe or raiment, in the materials, and from thence to their application as a prize (Muratori, diario. xxxiii).

5 For these expenses, the Jews of Rome paid every year 1130 solidi, or of which the old thity represented the pieces of silver, for which
foot, on horseback, or in chariots, were ennobled by a tilt and tournament of seventy-two of the Roman youth. In the year one thousand three hundred and thirty-two, a bull-feast, after the fashion of the Moors and Spaniards, was celebrated in the Coliseum itself; and the living manners are painted in a diary of the times. A convenient order of benches was restored; and a general proclamation, as far as Rimini and Ravenna, invited the nobles to exercise their skill and courage in this perilous adventure. The Roman ladies were marshalled in three squadrons, and seated in three balconies, which on this day, the third of September, were lined with scarlet cloth. The fair Jacova di Rovere, led the matrons from beyond the Tyber, a pure and native race, who still represent the features and character of antiquity. The remainder of the city was divided as usual between the Colonna and Ursini: the two factions were proud of the number and beauty of their female bands: the charms of Savella Ursini are mentioned with praise; and the Colonna regretted the absence of the youngest of their house, who had sprained her ankle in the garden of Nero's tower. The lots of the champions were

which Judas had betrayed his master to their ancestors. There was a foot-race of Jewish, as well as of Christian youths (Statins Pape, Sidonius).

* This extraordinary bull-feast in the Coliseum is described, from tradition rather than memory, by Ludovico Buenavita Mambinos, in the most ancient fragments of Roman annals (Manutius, Script. Roman. Hoffmann, tom. xii, p. 336, 560); and howsoever hasty they may seem, they are deeply marked with the maimes of truth and nature.
drawn by an old and respectable citizen; and they descended into the arena, or pit, to encounter the wild bulls, on foot, as it should seem, with a single spear. Amidst the crowd, our annalist has selected the names, colours, and devices, of twenty of the most conspicuous knights. Several of the names are the most illustrious of Rome and the ecclesiastical state: Malatesta, Polenta, della Valle, Cafarello, Savelli, Capocchio, Conti, Annibaldi, Altieri, Corsi; the colours were adapted to their taste and situation: the devices are expressive of hope or despair, and breathe the spirit of gallantry and arms. "I am alone like the youngest of the Horatii," the confidence of an intrepid stranger: "I live desolate," a weeping widower: "I burn under the ashes," a discreet lover: "I adore Lavinia, or Lucretia," the ambiguous declaration of a modern passion: "My faith is as pure," the motto of a white livery: "Who is stronger than myself?" of a lion’s hide: "If I am drowned in blood, what a pleasant death," the wish of ferocious courage. The pride or prudence of the Ursini restrained them from the field, which was occupied by three of their hereditary rivals, whose inscriptions denoted the lofty greatness of the Colonna name: "Though sad, I am strong;" "Strong as I am great;" "If I fall," addressing himself to the spectators, "you fall with me;"—intimating (says the contemporary writer) that while the other families were the subjects of the Vatican, they alone were the supporters of the capitol. The combats of the amphitheatre were dangerous
and bloody. Every champion successively encountered a wild bull; and the victory may be ascribed to the quadrupeds, since no more than eleven were left on the field, with the loss of nine wounded and eighteen killed on the side of their adversaries. Some of the noblest families might mourn, but the pomp of the funerals, in the churches of St. John Lateran and St. Maria Maggiore, afforded a second holiday to the people. Doubtless it was not in such conflicts that the blood of the Romans should have been shed; yet, in blaming their rashness, we are compelled to applaud their gallantry; and the noble volunteers, who display their magnificence, and risk their lives, under the balconies of the fair, excite a more generous sympathy than the thousands of captives and malefactors who were reluctantly dragged to the scene of slaughter."

This use of the amphitheatre was a rare, perhaps a singular, festival; the demand for the materials was a daily and continual want, which the citizens could gratify without restraint or remorse. In the fourteenth century, a scandalous act of concord secured to both factions the privilege of extracting stones from the free and common quarry of the Colosseum; and Poggio laments that the greater part of these stones had been burnt to lime by the folly of the Ro-

---

* Marata: has given a separate dissertation (the twenty-sixth) to the game of the Italian in the middle ages.
* In a concise but instructive memoir, the Abbé Bartholomé ( Mémoires de l'Académie des Inscriptions, tom. xxviii. p. 385,) has mentioned this agreement of the factions of the fourteenth century, in Tiburtine facianda in the Colosseum, from an original act in the archives of Rome.

---
To check this abuse, and to prevent the nocturnal crimes that might be perpetrated in the vast and gloomy recess, Eugenius the fourth surrounded it with a wall; and by a charter long extant, granted both the ground and edifice to the monks of an adjacent convent. After his death, the wall was overthrown in a tumult of the people; and had they themselves respected the noblest monument of their fathers, they might have justified the resolve that it should never be degraded to private property. The inside was damaged; but in the middle of the sixteenth century, an era of taste and learning, the exterior circumference of one thousand six hundred and twelve feet was still entire and inviolate; a triple elevation of fourscore arches, which rose to the height of one hundred and eight feet. Of the present ruin, the nephews of Paul the third are the guilty agents; and every traveller who views the Farnese palace may curse the sacrilege and luxury of these upstart princes. A similar re-

---

* Colisseum ....... ob summum Romanorum majestatis perturba tumultum, saepe sublenta, says the indulgent Poggio (p. 17); but his expression, too strong for the present age, must be very tenderly applied to the sixteenth century.

* Of the Octoetum monks, Montfaucon (p. 142) affirms this fact from the memoirs of Plautius Vacca (No. 74). They still hope, on some future occasion, to realize and vindicate their grant.

* After measuring the palace amphitheatris gyre, Montfaucon (p. 143), only adds, that it was entire under Paul iii; a troublet element. Maratori (Anali d'Italia, tomo. xxxi, p. 371) more freely reports the guilt of the Farnese pope, and the indulgence of the Roman people. Against the nephews of Urban viii. I have no other advice than the old saying, "Quod non licet dixere sunt, tunc dixit; ubi dictum," which was perhaps suggested by the resemblance of the words.
proach is applied to the Barberini; and the repetition of injury might be dreaded from every reign, till the Coliseum was placed under the safeguard of religion by the most liberal of the pontiffs, Benedict the fourteenth, who consecrated a spot which persecution and fable had stained with the blood of so many Christian martyrs.

When Petrarch first gratified his eyes with a view of those monuments, whose scattered fragments so far surpass the most eloquent descriptions, he was astonished at the supine indifference of the Romans themselves: he was humbled rather than elated by the discovery, that except his friend Rienzi and one of the Colonna, a stranger of the Rhone was more conversant with these antiquities than the nobles and natives of the metropolis. The ignorance and credulity of the Romans are elaborately displayed in the old survey of the city, which was composed about the

As an antiquarian and a priest, Montefusco thus deprecates the ruin of the Coliseum: Quod si non minime merito utique peakindine dignum fuisse quod impudens armaet manus, indignus nec utique in locum fort martyrum catacure sacrum transfusa est cinerum sole.

Yet the statues of Rome (C. iii. c. 81, p. 126) impose a list of 120 acres on whomever shall demand any ancient edifice, or ruin, civitatum demum, et ut antiqua edificiorum eritis perpetuo repre- sentant.

In his first visit to Rome (opp. 1337, see Memoires sur Petrarque, tom. i. p. 322, &c. Petrarch is struck with the marvellous extent tumatum, et stipitis mole obvuta . . . Presentia sero, numeri dixit, nihil immanit; verum major fuit Romae magnopere sunt reliquiae quam reliuc. dum una eternis ab ipsis urbis demum, et iam sua demum, invenio (Opp. p. 695. Familiars, ii. 14. Joanni Columnar).

He excepts and praises the wise knowledge of John Columna. Quibus habis magis quarto terram Romamque, quam Romam elies? In vitat dico magnam minus Roma cognoscitur quam Romanae.
beginning of the thirteenth century; and without dwelling on the manifold errors of name and place, the legend of the capitol may provoke a smile of contempt and indignation. "The capitol," says the anonymous writer, "is so named as being the head of the world; where the consuls and senators formerly resided for the government of the city and the globe. The strong and lofty walls were covered with glass and gold, and crowned with a roof of the richest and most curious carving. Below the citadel stood a palace, of gold for the greatest part, decorated with precious stones, and whose value might be esteemed at one third of the world itself. The statues of all the provinces were arranged in order, each with a small bell suspended from its neck; and such was the contrivance of art magic, that if the province rebelled against Rome, the statue turned round.

* After the description of the capitol, he adds, statutos sunt quinque resedenda praestantissime; et ibi hodie atque antem dies capitolium ad eum. Ex eis saepe magnum arctum disponens, ut quando aliquis regis Romana imperio rebellionis curant, statua longe illius provinciae vertebat se contra illum; unde tanti magnitudinem resonaret quod pendebat ad colum; tuncque vates capitolii qui erant constantes sedebant, &c. He mentions as example of the Saxons and Suevi, who after they had been subdued by Agrippa, again rebelled: tanti magnitudinem sumit: e scelus quis eas in spe cunctic in hard mendaces senatoribus sunt? Agrippa marciad factus et reducere eum. Persius (Anonym. in Mortiferae, p. 297, 298).

* The same writer affirms, that Virgil says caput a Romanis insatiatione exit, in quo Napoloni. A Roman magician, in the eleventh century, is introduced by William of Malmsbury (de Gestis Regum Anglorum, l. ii. p. 80); and in the time of Flamininus Voca (No. 81, 103). It was the vulgar belief that the strangers (the Gauls) invoked the daemon for the discovery of hidden treasures.
to that quarter of the heavens, the bell rang, the prophet of the capitol reported the prodigy, and the senate was admonished of the impending danger." A second example of less importance, though of equal absurdity, may be drawn from the two marble horses, led by two naked youths, which have since been transported from the baths of Constantine to the Quirinal hill. The groundless application of the name of Phidias and Praxiteles may perhaps be excused; but these Grecian sculptors should not have been removed above four hundred years from the age of Pericles to that of Tiberius: they should not have been transformed into two philosophers or magicians, whose nakedness was the symbol of truth and knowledge, who revealed to the emperor his most secret actions: and, after refusing all pecuniary recompense, solicited the honour of leaving this eternal monument of themselves. Thus awake to the power of magic, the Romans were insensible to the beauties of art: no more than five statues were visible to the eyes of Poggio; and of the multitudes which chance or design had buried under the ruins, the resurrection was fortunately delayed till a safer and more enlightened age. The Nile, which now adorns

* Anonym. p. 199. Mostfanes (p. 191) justly observes, that if Alexander be represented, these statues cannot be the work of Phidias (Olympian lxxxii) or Praxiteles (Olympian civ), who lived before that conqueror (Plin. Hist. Natum. xxxix, 19).

* William of Malinsbury i. ii. p. 86; 87) relates a marvellous discovery (a. u. 1440) of Pallas, the son of Beunder, who had been slain by Turnus: the perpetual light in his sepulcher: a Latin epitaph: the corpse, yet entire, of a young giant: the enormous wound in his breast.
the Vatican; had been explored by some labourers, in digging a vineyard near the temple, or convent, of the Minerva; but the impatient proprietor, who was tormented by some visits of curiosity, restored the unprofitable marble to its former grave. The discovery of a statue of Pompey, ten feet in length, was the occasion of a law-suit. It had been found under a partition-wall: the equitable judge had pronounced, that the head should be separated from the body to satisfy the claims of the contiguous owners; and the sentence would have been executed, if the intercession of a cardinal, and the liberality of a pope, had not rescued the Roman hero from the hands of his barbarous countrymen.

But the clouds of barbarism were gradually dispelled; and the peaceful authority of Martin the fifth and his successors restored the ornaments of the city as well as the order of the ecclesiastical state. The improvements of Rome, since the fifteenth century, have not been the spontaneous produce of freedom and industry. The first and most natural root of a great city is the labour and populousness of the adjacent country, which

breast (pectus perfallit ingenuum), &c. If the latter rest on the slightest foundation, we may pity the bodies, as well as the names, that were exposed to the air in a barbarous age.

* Prope portum Minervae, statitis excupiantibus, corpus ejus integra ad collis unus magnitudinis, ut alius omnis excudat. Quadam ad plantas liberae accrescit forma detexit. Ad hunc viam cum겁에는 다음과 같은 구조로 주변 지역의 노동력과 인구밀도가 가장 첫인 요소로 작용한 것이며, 중세의 평화와 성직자의 지배로 이 변화는 점차 확장되었으며, 로마의 복구는 마리아 5세와 그 후속자들의 평화적 권위에 의해 이루어졌다.

See the Memorialis of Flamelius Voss, No. 27, p. 11, 12, at the end of the Roma Antica of Nardini (1704, in 4to).
supplies the materials of subsistence, of manufactures, and of foreign trade. But the greater part of the Campagna of Rome is reduced to a dreary and desolate wilderness; the overgrown estates of the princes and the clergy are cultivated by the lazy hands of indigent and hopeless vassals; and the scanty harvests are confined or exported for the benefit of a monopoly. A second and more artificial cause of the growth of a metropolis is the residence of a monarch, the expense of a luxurious court, and the tributes of dependent provinces. Those provinces and tributes had been lost in the fall of the empire; and if some streams of the silver of Peru and the gold of Brasil have been attracted by the Vatican, the revenues of the cardinals, the fees of office, the oblations of pilgrims and clients, and the remnant of ecclesiastical taxes, afford a poor and precarious supply, which maintains however the idleness of the court and city. The population of Rome, far below the measure of the great capitals of Europe, does not exceed one hundred and seventy thousand inhabitants; and within the spacious inclosure of the walls, the largest portion of the seven hills is overspread with vineyards and ruins. The beauty and splendour of the modern city may be ascribed to the abuses of the government; to the influence of superstition. Each reign (the exceptions are rare)

* In the year 1702, the inhabitants of Rome (without including eight or ten thousand Jews) amounted to 138,508 souls (Dacier, Voyages en Espagne et en Italie, tom. iv. p. 217, 218). In 1740 they had increased to 146,000; and in 1769, 1 sent them, without the Jews, 101,000. I am ignorant whether they have since continued a progressive rate.
has been marked by the rapid elevation of a new family, enriched by the childless pontiff, at the expense of the church and country. The palaces of these fortunate nephews are the most costly monuments of elegance and servitude; the perfect arts of architecture, painting, and sculpture, have been prostituted in their service, and their galleries and gardens are decorated with the most precious works of antiquity, which taste or vanity has prompted them to collect. The ecclesiastical revenues were more decently employed by the popes themselves in the pomp of the catholic worship; but it is superfluous to enumerate their pious foundations of altars, chapels, and churches, since these lesser stars are eclipsed by the sun of the Vatican, by the dome of St. Peter, the most glorious structure that ever has been applied to the use of religion. The fame of Julius the second, Leo the tenth, and Sixtus the fifth, is accompanied by the superior merit of Bramante and Fontana, of Raphael and Michael-Angelo; and the same munificence which had been displayed in palaces and temples was directed with equal zeal to revive and emulate the labours of antiquity. Prostrate obelisks were raised from the ground, and erected in the most conspicuous places; of the eleven aqueducts of the Caesars and consuls, three were restored; the artificial rivers were conducted over a long series of old, or of new arches, to discharge into marble basins a flood of salubrious and refreshing waters; and the spectator, impatient to ascend the steps of St. Peter's, is detained by a column of Egyptian granite, which
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

CHAP.

LXXI.

rises between two lofty and perpetual fountains; to the height of one hundred and twenty feet. The map, the description, the monuments, of ancient Rome have been elucidated by the diligence of the antiquarian and the student; and the footsteps of heroes; the relics, not of superstition, but of empire; are devoutly visited by a new race of pilgrims from the remote, and once savage, countries of the North.

Of these pilgrims, and of every reader, the attention will be excited by an history of the decline and fall of the Roman empire: the greatest, perhaps, and most awful scene, in the history of mankind. The various causes and progressive effects are connected with many of the events

* The Pere Montfaucon distributes his own observations into twenty days; he should have styled them weeks, or months, of his vast in the different parts of the city (Diarium Italicum, c. 8-48, p. 193-194). That learned Benedictus reviews the topographers of ancient Rome; the first efforts of Roman, Patrons, Marcellus, and Fauns, the superior labours of Pyrnonus Ligurio, but his learning been equal to his labour; the writings of Onorius Panvinus, sonnet, obscure, and the recent but imperfect books of Doenzus and Nardini. Yet Montfaucon still sighs for a more complete plan and description of the old city, which must be attained by the three following methods: 1. The measurement of the space and intervals of the rooms. 2. The study of inscriptions, and the places where they were found. 3. The investigation of all the arts, charters, diaries, of the middle ages, which name any spot or building of Rome. The laborious work, such as Montfaucon desired, must be promoted by princes or public munificence; but the great modern plan of Nalli (c. 6, 1746) would furnish a solid and accurate basis for the ancient topography of Rome.
most interesting in human annals: the artful policy of the Caesars, who long maintained the name and image of a free republic; the disorder of military despotism; the rise, establishment, and sects of Christianity; the foundation of Constantinople; the division of the monarchy; the invasion and settlements of the barbarians of Germany and Scythia; the institutions of the civil law; the character and religion of Mahomet; the temporal sovereignty of the popes; the restoration and decay of the Western empire of Charlemagne; the crusades of the Latins in the East; the conquests of the Saracens and Turks; the ruin of the Greek empire; the state and revolutions of Rome in the middle age. The historian may applaud the importance and variety of his subject; but, while he is conscious of his own imperfections, he must often accuse the deficiency of his materials. It was among the ruins of the capitol, that I first conceived the idea of a work which has amused and exercised near twenty years of my life; and which, however inadequate to my own wishes, I finally deliver to the curiosity and candour of the public.

Lausanne,
June 27, 1787.
GENERAL INDEX.

N. B. The Roman Numerals refer to the Volume, and the Figures to the Page.

A

Abaran, the Saracen, hernism of his widow, ix, 393.

Abbasides, elevation of the house of, to the office of caliph of the Saracens, x, 25.

Abdallah, the Saracen, his excursion to plunder the isle of Abyla, ix, 400. His African expedition, 401.

Abd al-Malek, caliph of the Saracens, refuses tribute to the emperor of Constantinople, and establishes a national mint, x, 7.

Abd ar-Rahman, the Saracen, establishes his throne at Cordova in Spain, x, 34. Splendour of his court, 37. His estimate of his happiness, 39.

Abd ar-Rahman, the Saracen, his treaty with Theodemir the Gothic prince of Spain, ix, 481, 482. His death, 485.

Abderam, his expedition to France, and victories there, x, 21. His death, 26.

Abdul Malek, the grandfather of the prophet Mahomet, his history, ix, 253.

Abgarus, inquiry into the authenticity of his correspondence with Jesus Christ, ix, 117.

Abgarus, the last king of Edessa, sent in chains to Rome, i, 333.

Abn references, the confidential prefect under Constantine the Great, a conspiracy formed against him on that emperor's death, iii, 130. Is put to death, 132.

Abu Ayub, his history, and the veneration paid to his memory by the Mahometans, x, 5; xii, 244.

Abu Bakr, the friend of Mahomet, is one of his first converts, ix, 283. Flees from Mecca with him, 288. Succeeds Mahomet as caliph of the Saracens, 292. His character, 258.

Abu Ga'far commands the Andalusian Moors who sacked the island of Crete, x, 58.


VOL. XII.
General Index.

Archbishop of Milan, 28. Opposes the Arian worship of the empress Juxta, 39. Refuses obedience to the imperial power, 43. Controls the emperor Theodosius, 68, 69. Imposes penance on Theodosius for his cruel treatment of Thessalonica, 71. Employed his influence over Gratian and Theodosius, to inspire them with maxims of persecution, 91. Opposes Symmachus, the advocate for the old pagan religion, 99. Comforts the citizens of Florence with a dream, when besieged by Radagaisus, 218.

Arnulf, siege of, by pope king of Peru, iii, 205. Receives the fugitive inhabitants of Nishiz, iv, 220. Is besieged and taken by Caba's king of Peru, vii, 138.

Aseb, prince of Ioum, his character, and passage into Europe, xi, 438.

Ammianus, the historian, his religious character of the emperor Constantius, iii, 332. His remark on the vanity of Christians towards each other, 403. His account of the fiery obstructions to restoring the temple of Jerusalem, iv, 108. His account of the hostile contest of Damascus and Ursinus for the bishopric of Rome, iv, 274. Testimony in favour of his historical merit, 427. His character of the nobles of Rome, v, 267.

Ammianus, the mathematician, his measurement of the circuit of Rome, v, 287.

Ammianus, the monk of Alexandria, his martyrdom, viii, 280. Jerusalem, siege and destruction of, by the caliph Motassem, x, 69.

Anastasius, bishop of Iconium, gains the favour of the emperor Theodosius by an orthodox benediction, v, 16.

Anaphtacera at Rome, a description of, ii, 103; xii, 418.

Auchen, his birth and character, ix, 425. His invasion and conquest of Egypt, 425. His administration there, 448. His description of the country, 446.

Amurath I, sultan of the Turks, his reign, xi, 444.

Amurath II, sultan, his reign and character, xii, 150.

Anastasius, in monkish history, described, vi, 263.

Anastasius, pope, his Jewish extraction, xii, 315.

Anastasius I, marries the empress Ariadne, vii, 6. His war with Theodoric, the Ostrogoth king of Italy, 24. His economy celebrated, 161. His long walk from the Propontis to the Euxine, 129. Is humbled by the catholic clergy, viii, 316.

Anastasius II, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 24. His preparations of defence against the Saracens, x, 8.

Anastasius, St., his brief history and martyrdom, viii, 223, note.

Anicia, the city of, on the banks of the Euphrates, described, iv, 164.

Andalucia, derivation of the name of that province, ix, 457, note.

Andronicus, president of Libya, excommunicated by Synesius bishop of Ptolemais, iii, 292, 300.

Andronicus Constantine, his character, and first adventures, ix, 92. Seizes the empire of Constantinople, 104. His unhappy fate, 107.

Andronicus the elder, emperor of Constantinople, his supersition, xi, 338. His war with his grandson, and dedication, 266.
GENERAL INDEX.

Antheius, the younger, emperor of Constantinople, his licentious character, xi, 369. His civil war against his grandfather, 365. His reign, 369. Is vanquished and wounded by Sultan Orchan, 486. His private application to Pope Benedict of Rome, xii, 66.

Angra, battle of, between Tamerlane and Bajazet, xii, 66.

Anianus, bishop of Orleans, his pious anxiety for the relief of that city, when besieged by Attila the Hun, vi, 108.

Anicia family at Rome, brief history of, v, 259.

Anicia Comnena, character of her history of her father, Alexius I, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 88. Her conspiracy against her brother John, 86.

Anthemius, emperor of the West, his descent and investiture by Leo the Great, vi, 193. His election confirmed at Rome, 194. Is killed in the sack of Rome by Ricimer, 217, 218.

Anthemius, prefect of the East, character of his administration, in the minority of the emperor Theodosius the younger, v, 414, 415.

Anthemius, the architect, instances of his great knowledge in mechanics, vii, 114. Forms the design of the church of St. Sophia at Constantinople, 117.

Anthony, St., father of the Egyptian monks, his history, vi, 241.

Anthropomorphism, among the early Christians, personified of the Deity, viii, 269.

Antioch, taken and destroyed by Sapor king of Persia, i, 423. Flourishing state of the Christian church there, in the reign of Theodosius, ii, 361.

— history of the body of St. Babylas, bishop of, iv, 122. The cathedral of, shut up, and its wealth confiscated, by the emperor Julian, 129. Licentious manners of the citizens, 144. Popular discontent during the residence of Julian there, 146.

— taxation there, against the emperor Theodosius, v, 59. The city pardoned, 64.

— is taken, and ruined, by Chosroes king of Persia, vii, 313. Great destruction there by an earthquake, 417. Is again visited by Chosroes II, xiii, 220.

— is reduced by the Saracens, and remained, ii, 417. Is recovered by the Greeks, v, 90.

— besieged and taken by the first crusaders, xii, 64.

Antoneia, the wife of Belisarius, her character, xii, 164. Examines and convicts Pope Sylvester of treachery, 238. Her activity during the siege of Rome, 241. Her secret history, 261. Founds a convent for her retreat, 405.

Antonina, a Roman refugee at the court of Sapor king of Persia, stimulates him to an invasion of the Roman provinces, iii, 203.

Antoninus Pius, his character, and that of Hadrian, compared, i, 12. Is adopted by Hadrian, 122.


Aper, Arrian, praetorian prefect, and father-in-law to the emperor

Aureus II, king of the Goths, his overthrow by Clovis, king of the Franks, vi, 310.

Albinus, the son of Marozia, his revolt, and government of Rome, ii, 201.

Albanus of France, persecution of, x, 187.

Albinus, king of the Lombards, his history, viii, 117. His alliance with the Avars against the Gepidae, 119, 120. Reduces the Gepidae, 121. He subdues the empire of Italy, 122. Overrun what is now called Lombardy, 124. Assumes the regal title there, 127, 128. Takes Pavia, and makes it his capital city, 129, 129. Is murdered at the instigation of his queen Rosamond, 129.

Alexander, the books of, in Egypt, destroyed by Diocletian, ii, 157.

Alexandria, the origin and warlike spirit of, i, 417. Are driven out of Italy by the senate and people, 418. Invade the empire under Aurelian, ii, 21. Are totally routed, 24. Gaul delivered from their depredations by Constantius Chlorus, 131.


Are subdued by Clovis, King of the Franks, vi, 316.

Alpes, siege and capture of, by the Saracens, ix, 413. Is recovered by the Greeks, x, 80. Is taken and sacked by Tamerlane, xii, 21.

Alexander III, pope, establishes the papal election in the college of cardinals, xii, 300.

Alexander, archbishop of Alexandria, excommunicates Arius for his heresy, ii, 226.

Alexander Severus, is declared Caesar by the emperor Elagabalus, i, 228. Is raised to the throne, 229. Examination into his pretended victory over Artaurzeres, 237. Shewed a regard for the Christian religion, ii, 450.


the theological system of Plato taught in the school of, and received by the Jews there, iii, 316. Questions concerning the
GENERAL INDEX.


Alexandria, history of the temple of Serapis there, v, 108. This temple, and the famous library, destroyed by Bishop Theophilus, 111.

— taken by Ammon the Saracen, ix, 435. The famous library destroyed, 439.

Alexius Angelus, his usurpation of the Greek empire, and character, xi, 185. First before the crusaders, 213.


— solicits the aid of the Christian princes against the Turks, xi, 6. His suspicious policy on the arrival of the crusaders, 45, 46. Exacts homage from them, 48. Profit by the success of the crusaders, 101, 102.

Alexius II, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 92.

Alexius Strategopoulus, the Greek general, retakes Constantinople from the Latins, xi, 284.

Alexius, the son of Isaac Angelus, his escape from his uncle, who had deposed his father, xi, 186. His treaty with the crusaders for his restoration, 203. Restoration of his father, 217. His death, 225.

alfred sends an embassy to the shrine of St. Thomas in India, viii, 345.

Alcibiades, by whom invented, x, 47.


Algesir, for his brother Tariq, king of the Goths, vii, 390. Is reduced, 392.

Alcibiades murders Carausius, and usurps his station, ii, 127.

Alp Arslan, sultan of the Turks, his reign, x, 252.

Algernon, governor of Britain, is commissioned by the emperor Julian to rebuild the temple of Jerusalem, iv, 105.

Amala, king of the Goths, his high credit among them, i, 394.

Amalasuntha, queen of Italy, her history and character, vii, 206. Her death, 210.

Amphi, description of the city, and its commerce, x, 279.

Amo, improbability of any society of, x, 46, note.

Ambition, reflections on the violence, and various operations of that passion, ix, 109.

Amuratus, St., composes a treatise on the Trinity, for the use of the emperor Gratian, v, 4, note. His birth, and promotion to the
GENERAL INDEX.

Abrasax, the Carmathian, pillages Mecca, x, 77.

Abulfeda, his account of the splendour of the caliph Moctadir, xxxiv.

Abulpharagius, prince of the eastern Jacobites, some account of, viii, 333. His encomium on wisdom and learning, x, 42.

Abundius, general of the East, and patron of the church. Eutropius is disgraced and expelled by him, v, 381.

Abula, the fair-of, plundered by the Saracens, ix, 402.

Abystium, the inhabitants of, described, vii, 340. Their alliance with the emperor Justinian, 343. Ecclesiastical history of, viii, 567.

Acacus, bishop of Amida, an instrument instance of episcopal benevolence, x, 427.

Adana, its extent, i, 88.

Acre, the memorable siege of, by the crusaders, xi, 142. Final loss of, 165.

Actium, institute of Justinian respecting, viii, 82.

Actium, a review of Roman affairs after the battle of, i, 95.

Adverser, the only martyr of distinction during the persecution under Diocletian, ii, 480.

Adelbal, the brother of Alaric, brings him a reinforcement of troops, v, 296. It made count of the domestic to the new emperor Augustus, 335. Succeeds his brother as king of the Goths, and concludes a peace with Honorius, 330.

Acient, the two kinds of, under the Greek empire, xi, 49. note.

Adoration of the Roman emperors, custom of, and derivation of the term, x, 124.

Adroa, the German governor of Phocas, conveys Amurath II from Asia to Europe, xii, 32.

Adrian I, Pope, his alliance with Charlemagne against the Lombards, ix, 150. His reception of Charlemagne at Rome, 154. 155. Asserts the fictitious donation of Constantine the Great, 155.

Adultery, distinctions of, and how punished by Augustus, viii, 99. By the Christian emperors, 102.

Altas Capitolina founded on Mount Sion, by Hadrian, ii, 279.

Altos Ponti, his Tripartite, the oldest work of Roman jurisprudence, vii, 25.

Almaidus, governor of Pannonia and Mæsia, routs the barbarian invaders of the empire, and is declared emperor by his troops, i, 408.

Amass of Gaza, his attestation of the miraculous gift of speech to the catholic confessors of Tipasa, whose tongues had been cut out, vi, 294.

Amass Sibiro, his account of the impracticability of an European crusade against the Turks, xii, 253. His epigram on the destruction of ancient buildings in Rome, 415. note.

Aera of the world, remarkable epochs in, painted out, vii, 154. — Gelasian of the Turks, when settled, x, 367.

Annual tribute, in the eastern empire, what, vii, 108.
GENERAL INDEX.

Afray, son of the Athenian, his character and adventures, iii. 229, 376, note.

the Roman general under Valentinian III, his character, vi. 9. His treacherous scheme to ruin Constantius, 11. Is forced to retire into Pannonia, 26. His invitation of the Huns into the empire, 38. Seizes the administration of the western empire, 89. His character, as given by Historians, a contemporary historian, 90. Employed the Huns and Alans in the defence of Gaul, 92. Concludes a peace with Theodosius, 97. Raises the siege of Orleans, 110. Battle of Chalons, 112. His prudence on the invasion of Italy by Attila, 129. Is murdered by Valentinian, 150.

Africa, its situation and revolutions, i. 41. Great revenue raised from the Romans, 258. Progress of Christianity there, ii. 396.

is distracted with religious discord in the time of Constantine the Great, iii. 309. Character and revolt of the Circumcellions, 399. Oppressions of, under the government of Count Romanus, iv. 301. General state of Africa, 308.


expedition of Belisarius to, viii. 188. Is recovered by the Romans, 188. The government of, settled by Justinian, 187. Revolt of the troops there, under Stozas, 349. Devastation of the war, 353.

invasion of, by the Saracens, ix. 449. Conquest of, by Akbaral, 455. Decline and extinction of Christianity there, 495. Revolt and independence of the Saracen there, ix. 79.

Aglabiers, the Saracen dynasty of, x. 79.

Aegina, a Roman lady, patronised St. Boniface, ii. 482.

Agrippina, review of his conduct in Britain, i. 7.

Agrippinum, great improvement of, in the western counties of the Roman empire, i. 84. State of, in the western empire, under Justinian, iv. 79.

Aja, the sepulchre of, how distinguished, iii. 11.

Ajanpana, battle of, between the Saracens and the Greeks, ix. 388.

Akbal, the Saracen, his exploits in Africa, ix. 455.

Alan, occasion of these people invading Asia, ii. 68. Conquest of, by the Huns, iv. 371. Join the Goths who had emigrated into Thrace, 410. See Goths and Vandals.

Alaric, the Goth, learnt the art of war under Theodosius the Great, x. 69. Becomes the leader of the Gothic revolt, and ravages Greece, 178. Escapes from Stilicho, 186. Is appointed master-general of the eastern Illyricum, 188. His invasion of Italy, 190. Is defeated by Stilicho at Pollentia, 199. Is driven out of Italy, 203. Is, by treaty with Honorius, declared master-general of the Roman armies throughout the prefecture of Illyricum, 294. His plea and motives for marching to Rome, 292. Encamps
Numerian, is killed by Diocletian as the presumptive mourner of that prince, ii, 108.

Abaharum, the Persian, his embassy from Narses king of Persia, ii, 160. The emperor Galerius, ii, 149.

Apocalypse, why now admitted into the canon of the New Testament, ii, 48, note.

Appianus, admiral of Constantinople, his confederacy against John Cantacuzene, x, 374. His death, 380.

Apollinaris, bishop of Laodicea, his hypothesis of the divine incarnation of Jesus Christ, viii, 271.


Apollonius of Tyana, his doubtful character, ii, 37, note.

Apollonius of the Roman emperors, how this custom was introduced, i, 111.

Apollo, deities of Lautian emperor of Constantinople, and usurps his place, ix, 19.

Apulia is conquered by the Normans, x, 262. Is confirmed to them by papal grant, 270.

Aquilia, besieged by the emperor Maximin, i, 216. Is taken and destroyed by Artila king of the Hun, v, 142.

Aquileia is settled by the Goths, under their king Wallia, v, 338. Is conquered by Clovis king of the Franks, vi, 336.


Arbesius, a veteran under Constantine the Great, leaves his retirement to oppose the usurper Procopius, iv, 249.

Arbogettis, the Frank, his military promotion under Theodosius in Gaul, and conspiracy against Valentinian the younger, v, 77. Is defeated by Theodosius, and kills himself, v, 84, 85.

Arcadius, son of the emperor Theodosius, succeeds to the empire of the East, v, 137. His magnificence, 373. Extent of his dominions, 374. Administration of his favourite eunuch Eutropius, 376. His cruel law against treason, 383. Signs the condemnation of Eutropius, 391. His interview with the revolters Tibigild and Guissus, 393, 394. His death, and supposed testament, 412.

Architectae, Roman, the general magnificence of, indicated by the existing ruins, i, 76.

Arabarium, his expedition to Italy, to reduce the usurper John, vi, 4.
GENERAL INDEX.

Aratus, king of Paphlagonia, is made general of the horse by the emperor Julian on his Persian expedition, iv, 162. Distinguishes himself against the emperor Procopius, 249.

Aratus is seized two-thirds of the lands of the Sequani in Gaul, for himself and his German followers, vi, 324.

Aratocles, principal minister of the house of Carus, is received into confidence by the emperor Diocletian, ii, 114.

Aristide, his logis better adapted to the detection of error, than for the discovery of truth, x, 48.


— the Arians persecute the Catholics in Africa, vi, 280.

Armenia is seized by Sapor king of Persia, i, 435. Tiridates restored, ii, 159. He is again expelled by the Persians, 144. Is resigned to Tiridates by treaty between the Romans and Persians, 154.

— is rendered tributary to Persia, on the death of Tiridates, iii, 137. Character of Arses Tiridatus, king of, and his conduct toward the emperor Julian, iv, 157, 158. Is reduced by Sapor to a Persian province, 318.

— its distractions and division between the Persians and the Romans, v, 428.

— history of Christianity there, viii, 357, 358.

Armenia, the provinces of, form a free government independent on the Romans, v, 363. Submission to Christ King of the Franks, vi, 322. Settlement of Britons in, 389.

Armenia, defensive, is laid waste by the Romans, and adopted by the barbarians, v, 89.

Arnold of Brescia, his hierarchy and history, xii, 271.

Aresius, derivation of the name of that province, i, 21, niv.

Arrian, his visit to, and description of, Colcho, viii, 327.

Arsaces Tiridates, king of Armenia, his character, and disaffection to the emperor Julian, iv, 157, 158. Withdraws his troops treacherously from the Roman service, 185. His disastrous end, 312.

Armenia, patriarch of Constantinople, excommunicates the emperor Michael Paleologus, xi, 327. Faction of the Armenians, 328.

Artaban, son of Phraates, is defeated and slain by Artaxerxes king of Persia, i, 318.

Artaban, his conspiracy against the emperor Justinian, vii, 374. Is entrusted with the conduct of the armament sent to Italy, 578.
 _Basora_, its foundation and situation, ix, 388.

 _Bath_, public, of Rome, described, v, 282.

 _Baum_, reception of the emperor Julian there, iv, 154.

 _Becro_, wild, the variety of, introduced in the circus, for the public games at Rome, ii, 101.

 _Beuzebeth_, M. de, character of his _Histoire Critique du Manicheisme_, viii, 260, note.

 _Bedar_, battle of, between Mahomets and the Korish of Mecca, ix, 290.

 _Bedouins of Arabia_, their mode of life, ix, 233.

 _Beer_, remarks on the structure of their comb and cells, x, 42, note.


 _Benefice_, in feudal language, explained, vi, 357.

 _Bessarion_, battle of, between Charles of Anjou, and Mainfroy the Sicilian usurper, xi, 399.

 _Bonaecum_, anecdotes relating to the siege of, x, 233.

 _Benjamin of Tudela_, his account of the riches of Constantinople, x, 112.

 _Besra_, of Aleppa, reception of the emperor Julian there, iv, 154.

 _Bernard_, St., his character and influence in promoting the second crusade, xi, 117. His character of the Romans, xi, 270.

 _Bersur_, account of the law-school established there, iii, 53. Is destroyed by an earthquake, vii, 417.

 _Bersier_, his account of the camp of Aurengzebe, i, 293, note.

 _Bessonius_, Cardinal, his character, xii, 129.

 _Besseer_, governor of Rome for Justinnian, his capacity during the siege of that city by Totila the Goth, vii, 362. Occasions the loss of Rome, 366.

 _Besanble is taken and garrisoned by Sapor king of Persia_, iii, 210. It ineffectually besieged by Constantine, 212.

 _Besir_, a Sasanian prince, deposes Hormus king of Persia, viii, 184.
GENERAL INDEX.

Afric, the last invasions of all human distinctions, i, 271.

Bishop, among the primitive Christians, the office of, explained, ii, 350. Abolition of episcopal authority, 355. Assumed dignity of bishops in Britain, 351.

Bishops, at the time of Constantine the Great, iii, 288. Mode of their election, 284. Their power of ordination, 287. The ecclesiastical revenue of each diocese how divided, 294. Their civil jurisdiction, 295. Their spiritual censures, 297. Their legislative assemblies, 305.

Bishop, rural, their rank and duties, iii, 284.

Bisschop, superstition regard to this year by the Romans, iv, 239.

Bithynia, the cities of, plundered by the Goths, i, 420.

Blemmyes, their revolt against the emperor Diocletian, ii, 134.

Boerace, his literary character, xii, 123.

Boethius, the learned senator of Rome, his history, vii, 43. His imprisonment and death, 48.

Boleslaus, the son of Robert Guelph, his character and military exploits, x, 286; xi, 33. His route to Constantinople on the crusade, 43. His flattering reception by the emperor Alexius Comnenus, 49. Takes Antioch, and obtains the principality of it, 68. His subsequent transactions and death, 105.

Boniface, St., his History, ii, 485.

Boniface, Count, the Roman general under Valentinian III, his character, vi, 9. Is betrayed into a revolt by Ætius, 11. His repentance, 18. Is besieged in Hippo Regius by Genseric king of the Vandals, 21. Returns to Italy, and is killed by Ætius, 24.

Boniface VIII, Pope, his violent contest with Philip the Fair, king of France, and his character, xii, 306. Institutes the Jubilee, 310.

Boniface, marquis of Montfellat, is chosen general of the fourth crusade to the Holy Land, xi, 198. Is made king of Macedonias, 249. Is killed by the Bulgarians, 264.

Barbarous, revolutions of that kingdom, i, 422. Is settled by the Goths, 423. The state of, described, ii, 4.

Beira, siege of, by the Saracens, ix, 289.

Bothar, the imperial general in Thessalonia, murdered in a sedition, vi, 65.

Bonivault, Marshal, defends Constantinople against Bajazet, xi, 458.

Boniface, the port of, recovered from Carausius, by Constantius Chlorus, ii, 157.

Boiudier, the Persian dynasty of, x, 83.

Brancatella, senator of Rome, his character, xii, 286.

Bretagne, the province of, in France, settled by Britons, vi, 339, note.


— revolt of Maximus there, v, 8. Revolt of the troops there against Honorius, 228. Is abandoned by the Romans, 363. State of until the arrival of the Saxons, 364. Descent of the Saxons on, vi,

Anastasius and Caesar, those titles explained and discriminated, i, 113.

Anastasius, his character and embassy from Valentinian III to Attila, king of the Hun, vi, 130.

Anastasius, the holy see has transferred from Rome to that city, xii, 307. Return of Pope Urban V to Rome, 363.


Anarchus, emperor, his birth and services, ii, 15. His expedition against Palmyra, 87. His triumph, 43. His cruelty, and death, 54, 55.

Anastasius, account of his immense camp, i, 333, note.

Anarchus is invested with the purple on the Upper Danube, ii, 2.

Anastasius, the tutor of the emperor Gratian, his promotions, v, 3, note.

Anarchus, king of the Lombards in Italy, his wars with the Franks, vii, 144. His adventurous gallantry, 158.

Anastasius, the city of, stormed and plundered by the legions in Gaul, ii, 32.

Anarchus, province and city of, in Gaul, revolutions of, vi, 362.

Anarchus, barbarian, fatal consequences of their admission into the Roman army, iii, 166.

Anarchus, a Turkish slave, his generous friendship to the princess Anne Comnena, ix, 87. And to Manuel Comnena, 88.

Anarchus, the citizens of, defend their privileges against Peter, brother of the eastern emperor Maurice, viii, 201, 202.

Anarchus, remarkable spirit shown by the citizens of, against Attila and his Huns, vi, 63.

Baulbro, description of the ruins of, ix, 404.

Bagatla, St., bishop of Amiens, his posthumous history, iv, 121.

Baganda, in Gaul, revolt of, its occasion, and suppression by Maximian, ii, 120.

Bagatla becomes the royal residence of the Abbassides, i, 85. Derivation of the name, 86, note. The fallen state of the caliphs of, 83. The city of, stormed and sacked by the Moguls, xi, 418.

Bagam, the Persian general, his character and exploits, viii, 181. Is provoked to rebellion, 183. Dethrones Chosroes, 188. His usurpation and death, 190.

Bans, chagan of the Avars, his pride, policy, and power, vii, 194. His perfidious seizure of Sirmium and Singidunum, 197. His capture, 199. His treacherous attempt to seize the emperor He-
GENERAL INDEX.

Basil I., the Byzantine emperor, his reign, xi, 321. His correspondence with Constantine, xi, 17. His expedition into the story of the iron cage, 30. His death, 17.

Balian of Ibelin, elected joint emperor with Maximus, by the senate, on the death of the two Gazas, i, 291.

Baldwin, count of Flanders, engages in the fourth crusade, xi, 190. Is chosen emperor of Constantinople, 216. Is taken prisoner by Caius John, king of the Bulgarians, 260. His death, 292.

Baldwin II., emperor of Constantinople, xi, 275. His districts and expeditions, 276. His expulsion from that city, 287.

Baldwin, brother of Godfrey of Bouillon, accompanies him on the first crusade, xi, 81. Founds the principality of Edessa, 63.

Baltic Sea, progressive subsidence of the water of, i, 346, note. How the Romans acquired a knowledge of the naval powers of, iv, 288, note.

Baptism, theory and practice of, among the primitive Christians, iii, 372.

Barbary, the name of that country, whence derived, ix, 465, note. The Moors of, converted to the Mahometan faith, 363.

Barbaria, general of infantry in Gaul under Julian, his misconduct, iii, 221.

Bacchus, his rebellion against the emperor Hadrian, ii, 383.

Bard, Celtic, their power of exciting a martial enthusiasm in the people, i, 374.

Bard, Briton, their peculiar office and duties, vi, 298.

Bardas, Cesar, one of the restorers of learning, x, 457.

Bari is taken from the Saracens by the joint efforts of the Latin and Greek empires, x, 248.

Barison, a Celabrian monk, his dispute with the Greek theologians about the light of mount Thabor, xi, 288. His embassy to Rome, from Andronicus the younger, xi, 68. His literary character, 120.

Basil I., the Macedonian, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 48. Reduces the Paulicians, x, 181.


Basil, archbishop of Cesarea, no evidence of his having been persecuted by the emperor Valens, iv, 269. Invents his friend Gregory Nazianzen, under the appearance of promotion, x, 19. The father of the monks of Pontus, vi, 244, 245.

Basiliscus, brother of the empress Verina, is intrusted with the command of the armament sent against the Vandals in Africa, vii, 201. His fleet destroyed by Generius, 209. His promotion to the empire, and death, xii, 6.

Bassianus, high priest of the sun, his parentage, i, 229. Is proclaimed emperor at Emesa, note. See Elagabalus.

Bassianus, brother-in-law to Constantine, revolts against him, ii, 244.
Artaxerxes, king of Armenia, is deposed by the Persians at the instigation of his own subjects, vi, 431.

Artaxerxes, his revolt against the Greek emperor Constantine V, at Constantinople, ix, 128.

Artaxerxes restores the Persian monarchy, i, 318. Prohibits every worship but that of Zoroaster, 228. His war with the Romans, 337. His character and maxims, 341.

Artaxias, duke of Egypt under Constantine, is condemned to death under Julian, for cruelty and corruption, iv, 49.

Artaxerxes, king of the Britons, his history obscured by monkish fictions, vi, 300.

Armenius, pretorian prefect of Gaul, his trial and condemnation by the Roman senate, vi, 203.

Artemis, battle of, between Godfrey king of Jerusalem and the sultan of Egypt, xi, 87.

Artemisia, in ecclesiastical history, account of, vi, 289.

Ariobarzanes reduces and kills the British usurper Allectus, ii, 198.

Asia, summary view of the revolutions in that quarter of the world, i, 316.

Asia Minor described, i, 88. Amount of its tribute to Rome, 257.

It conquered by the Turks, x, 370.

Asia, the nature of this office among the ancient pagans, ii, 354, note.

Asgar is commissioned by Theodosius the younger to conduct Valentinian III to Italy, vi, 4. Places his steward Leo on the throne of the eastern empire, 191. He and his sons murdered by Leo, vii, 4.

Assassins, the principality of, destroyed by the Moguls, xi, 447.

Assassins of the people abolished under the Roman emperors, i, 105. The nature of, among the ancient Germans, 392.

Armenia, the province of, described, iv, 166. Is invaded by the emperor Julian, 169. His retreat, 193.

Asuria, her image brought from Carthage to Rome, as a present for Elagabalus, i, 293.

Attilius, king of the Lombards, takes the city of Ravenna, and attacks Rome, ix, 146. Is repelled by Pepin king of France, 148.

Astrology, why cultivated by the Arabian astronomers, x, 46.

Athenaios, the son of Amalasunta queen of Italy, his education and character, vii, 298.

Athanare the Gothic chief, his war against the emperor Valerian, iv, 226. His alliance with Theodorus, his death and funeral, 433.

Athanaric, St., confesses his understanding bewildered by meditating on the divinity of the Logos, iii, 522. General view of his opinion, 335. Is banished, 349. His character and adventures, 356; iv, 191, 228, 237. Was not the author of the famous creed under his name, vi, 291, note.

Athanasius, patriarch of Constantinople, his contests with the Greek emperors Adesius the elder, xi, 359.

Athene, daughter of the philosopher Leontius. See Eudokia.
GENERAL INDEX.

Adenia, the libraries in that city, why said to have been spared by the Goths, i, 434. Naval strength of the republic of, during its prosperity, ii, 237, note.

- is laid under contribution by Alaric the Goth, v, 180.

- review of the philosophical history of, vii, 143. The schools of, silenced by the emperor Justinian, 150.

- revelations of, after the crusades, and its present state, xii, 352.

Aedius, mount, benedict visions of the monks of, xii, 387.

Atlantic Ocean, derivation of its name, i, 42.

Attagoti, a Caledonian tribe of cannibals, account of, iv, 208.

Attalus, prefect of Rome, is chosen emperor by the senate, under the influence of Alaric, v, 305. Is publicly degraded, 306. His future fortune, 348.

Attalus, a noble youth of Auvergne, his adventures, vi, 265.

Attila, the Hun, vi, 40. Description of his person and character, 41. His conquests, 45. His treatment of his captives, 55. Imposes terms of peace on Theodosius the younger, 51. Opposes Theodosius by his ambassadors, 65. Description of his royal residence, 72. His reception of the ambassadors of Theodosius, 73. His behaviour on discovering the scheme of Theodosius to get him assassinated, 82. His haughty messages to the emperors of the East and West, 88. His invasion of Gaul, 107. His oration to his troops on the approach of Actius and Theodoric, 115. Battle of Chalons, 116. His invasion of Italy, 122. His retreat purchased by Valentinian, 121. His death, 134.

Attila and Coelac, the fable of, allegorized by the pen of Julian, iv, 71.

Aurelian are dismayed by the Turks, vii, 289. Their embassy to the emperor Justinian, 291. Their conquests in Poland and Germany, 292. Their embassy to Justin II, viii, 115. They join the Lombards against the Goths, 119. Pride, policy, and power, of their chieftain Balmai, 194. Their conquests, 199. Invest Constantinople, 242.

Aurelian, his religious indolence, how far justifiable, x, 31, note.

Avres, a town near Naples, built as a settlement for the Norman, x, 259.

August, Roman, their number and peculiar office, v, 82.


Augustulus, son of the patrician Orestes, is chosen emperor of the West, vii, 223. Is deposed by Odoacer, 224. His banishment to the Lucullan villa in Campania, 228.

Augustus, emperor, his moderate exercise of power, i, 2. Is imitated by his successors, 4. His naval regulations, 29. His division of Gaul, 32. His situation after the battle of Actium, 95. He reforms the senate, 97. Procures a senatorial grant of the imperial
GENERAL INDEX.


Britons, conversion of the Britons by a mission from Pope Gregory the Great, viii, 167. The doctrine of the incarnation received there, 284.

Brute, the Trojan, his colonization of Britain, now given up by intelligent historians, iv, 291, note.

Buffon, M., his extraordinary burning mirror, vii, 114, note.

Bulgarians, their character, vii, 277, 278. Their inroads on the eastern empire, 281. Invasion of, under Zahergan, 401. Repelled by Bellarmine, 403.

— the kingdom of, destroyed by Basil II, the Greek emperor, ix, 68; x, 292.

— recall of, from the Greek empire, and submission to the pope of Rome, xi, 185. War with the Greeks under Calo-John, 237.

Bull-fight, in the Colosseum at Rome, described, xii, 421.


Burnet, author, source of that river, xii, 15, note.

Buse, in Egypt, four several places known under this name, x, 32, note.

Buxury, the philosophical preceptor of Hormuz king of Persia, his high reputation, xiii, 178, note.

Byzantine historians, list and character of, xli, 253, note.


C

Caaba, the temple of Mecca, described, ix, 245. The idols in, destroyed by Mahomet, 308.

Calander, king of Persia, besieges and takes Amida, viii, 156. Sebastian, the traits of Caesar, 141. Vicissitudes of his reign, 296.

Calicis, battle of, between the Saracens and the Persians, ix, 265.

Casigah, her marriage with Mahomet, ix, 255. Is converted by him to his new religion, 282. Her death, 288. Mahomet's veneration for her memory, 325.

Cecilian, the peace of the church in Africa disturbed by him and his party, iii, 309.

Cecilius, the authority of his account of the famous vision of Constantine the Great, inquired into, iii, 260.

Celsius, senator of Carthage, his distress on the taking of that city by Germanic, vi, 81.

Cesari, Julius, his induction to the conquest of Britain, i, 5. De-
grades the senatorial dignity, 96, note. Assumes a place among the ancient deities of Rome, in his lifetime, 111. His address in appeasing a military sedition, 252, note. His prudent application of the coronary veil presented to him, iii, 96.

Caesar with Augustus, those titles explained and discriminated, i, 118.

Cæsar, of the emperor Julian, the philosophical value of that work delineated, iv, 199.

Cæsar, capital of Cappadocia, taken by Sapor king of Persia, i, 489. Is reduced by the Saracens, ii, 420.

Cæsarea, queen of the Moors of Africa, her policy to drive the Arabs out of the country, ix, 464.

Cæsarea, the city of, founded in the kingdom of Tunis, ix, 489.

Caled, deserts from the idolatrous Arabs to the party of Mahomet, ix, 507. His gallant conduct at the battle of Muta, 314. His victories under the caliph Abubeker, 364. Attends the Saracen army on the Syrian expedition, 582. His valor at the siege of Damascus, 330. Distinguishes himself at the battle of Aixe Mustain, 591. His cruel treatment of the refugees from Damascus, 582. Joins in the plundering of the fair of Abyda, 492. Commands the Saracens at the battle of Yezuma, 408. His death, 422.

Caledonia, and its ancient inhabitants, described, iv, 293.

Caledonian war, under the emperor Severus, an account of, i, 207.

Cäliph of the Saracens, character of, ix, 357. Their rapid conquests, 361. Extent and power of, 200. Triple division of the office, x, 34. They patronise learning, 41. Decline and fall of their empire, 78; xi, 417.

Cæcilia, the punishment of a religious sedition in that city, opposed by St. Ambrose, v, 68.

Cæcilius, of Héripolis, assists in defending Constantinople against the Saracens, by his chemical inflammable compositions, x, 14.

Cæmberko, black, recent emigration of, from the confines of Russia to those in China, iv, 370.

Cæs-Ástia, the Bulgarian chief, his war with Baldwin, the Latin emperor of the Greeks, xi, 257. Defeats, and takes him prisoner, 360. His savage character and death, 386.

Cæcero, a camel-driver, excites an insurrection in the island of Cypr, iii, 119.

Cæsærius, the machinery of his oration on the accession of the emperor Carus, ii, 95.

Cæsærus, the reformer, his doctrine of the Eucharist, x, 189. Examination of his conduct to Servetus, 191.

Cæsælus, of Aradus, described, ix, 225.

Cæsarea of Langres, their enthusiasm compared with that of the Christianities of Numilia, iii, 401.

Cæsarea, the province of, desolated by the ill policy of the Roman emperors, iii, 87. Description of the Lacollen villa in, vi, 239.

Canada, the present climate and circumstances of, compared with those of ancient Germany, i, 348.

Gas-Sa, enormous one of the sultan Mahomet II described, xxii, 197. Russia, 211.
GENERAL INDEX.

Caesar, Russian, a description of, x, 229.

Cato, Cato, character of, his Greek History, xi, 361. His good fortune under the younger Antoninus, 372. Is driven to assume the purple, 376. His lively distinction between foreign and civil war, 378. His entry into Constantine, and reign, 382. Abdicates, and turns monk, 386. His war with the Genoese factory at Pero, 394. Marries his daughter to a Turk, xii, 69. His negotiation with Pope Clement VI, ibid.

Cauinus, History of the Ottoman empire, a character of, xi, 434, note.

Capitoline, governor of Mauritania, defeats the younger Gordian, and takes Carthage, i, 290.

Capitulation, under the Roman emperors, an account of, iii, 88.

Capto, Atreus, the civilian, his character, viii, 30.

Capua, burning and restoration of, ii, 472.

Capua, fama, for its fine breed of horses, iii, 76.

Capua, site of, character of the monks there, v, 168.

Caesar, how treated by the barbarians, vi, 55, 362.

Caracalla, son of the emperor Severus, his fixed antipathy to his brother Geta, i, 296. Success to the empire jointly with him, 211. Tendency of his edict to extend the privileges of Roman citizens to all the free inhabitants of his empire, 250. His view in this transaction, 246. Doubts the tax on legates and inheritances, 267.

Carraways, the Tartar settlement of, described, xi, 425.

Caruthia, Sogdian, their route to and from China, for silk, to supply the Roman empire, vii, 194.

Carreras, his revolt in Britain, ii, 123. Is acknowledged by Diocletian and his colleagues, 136.

Carbo, the Paulician, his revolt from the Greek emperor to the Saracens, i, 178.

Cardinal, the election of a pope vested in them, xii, 200. Institution of the conclaves, 311.

Carduca, situation and history of that territory, ii, 154.

Carina, the son of Cursus, succeeds his father in the empire jointly with his brother Numerian, ii, 97.

Carno, their invasion of Syria, xi, 158.

Carthaginian race of kings, commencement of, in France, ix, 151.

Carmak, the Arabian reformer, his character, x, 73. His military exploits, 76.

Carmonian, from whom they derive their pedigree, vi, 240, note.

Cariathians mountain, their situation, i, 243.

Carthage, the bishops of, bought for Maximus, ii, 483, note.

—religious discord degenerated there by the faction of Cezian and Donatus, iii, 510.

—the temple of Venus there, converted into a Christian church, v, 107. It surprised by Genseric king of the Vandals, vi, 26.

—the gates of, opened to Belisarius, vii, 177. Natural alterations produced by time in the situation of this city, 179, note. The walls of, repaired by Belisarius, 181. Insurrection of the Roman troops there, 348.
GENERAL INDEX.

Carthage is reduced and pillaged by Hanno the Sarracen, ix, 161.
Subsequent history of, 462.
Carthaginian, an extraordinary rich silver mine worked there for the Ro-
mans, i, 258.
Carus, emperor, his election and character, ii, 91.
Caspian and Persian gates of Mount Caucasus, distinguished, vii, 140.
Cassius, the party of, among the Roman civilians, explained, viii, 92.
Cassiodorus, his Gothic history, i, 387. His account of the infancy
state of the republic of Venice, vi, 127. His long and prosperous
life, vii, 99.
Castrat, George. See Scundtberg.
Catullus, their service and war in the Greek empire, xi, 346.
Catholic church, the doctrines of, how discriminated from the opin-
ions of the Platonic school, iii, 522. The authority of, extended
to the minds of mankind, 326. Faith of the Western or Latin
church, 302. It is distressed by factions in the cause of Athanasius,
329. The dogma, how introduced, and how perverted, 388.
The revenue of, transferred to the heathen priests, by Julian, iv,
110.
--- edict of Theodosius for the establishment of the catholic
faith, v, 14. The progressive steps of idolatry in, 129. Persecu-
tion of the Catholics in Africa, vi, 280. Pious frauds of the catholi-
cic clergy, 290.
--- how bewildered by the doctrine of the incarnation, viii, 276.
Union of the Greek and Latin churches, 334.
Schism of the Greek church, xi, 169.
Celestine, Pope, exposes the party of Cyril against Nestorius, and pro-
nounces the degradation of the latter from his episcopal dignity, vii,
267.
Celtic language, driven to the mountains by the Latin, i, 60, 61,
.note
Censor, the office of, revived under the emperor Decius, i, 400. But
without effect, 402.
Cestus, the manufacture of silk first introduced to Europe from that
island, vii, 90.
Cresc, the principal queen of Attila king of the Huns, her reception of
Maximian the Roman ambassador, vi, 74.
Cerinthus, his opinion of the twofold nature of Jesus Christ, vii,
269.
Cyprus, ancient name given to that island, and the imperfect knowl-
edge of, by the Romans, iv, 142, note.
Chalcedon, the unjustifiable situation of this city stigmatized by pro-
verbial contempt, iii, 7. A tribunal erected there by the emperor
Julian, to try and punish the evil ministers of his predecessor Con-
stantine, iv, 46.
--- a stately church built there by Julian, the infamous mini-
ster of the emperor Theodosius, v, 145.
--- is taken by Charles II, King of Peru, vii, 222.
Clesopas, the Greek historian, his remarks on the several nations of Europe, xii, 82.

Chalons, a battle of, between the Romans and Attila king of the Huns, ii, 112.

Chalons-in-power, reduced and generously treated by Julian, iii, 297.

Chancellor, the original and modern application of this word compared, ii, 99, note.

Character, national, the distinctions of, now formed, iv, 341.

Characters of the * same described, x, 269, note.


Charles the Fat, emperor of the Romans, ix, 189.

Charles of Anjou subdues Naples and Sicily, xi, 339. The Sicilian Vespers, 544. His character as a senator of Rome, xii, 288.


Charles V, emperor, parallel between him and Diocletian, ii, 171. And between the sack of Rome by him, and that by Alaric the Goth, v, 308, 303.

Chain, a high esteem among the ancient Germans, i, 367. The primitive Christians, ii, 225.

Chamber, the art of, from whom derived, i, 29.

Chersonese, Thrace, how founded by the emperor Justinian, vii, 128.

Chersonese point Constantine the Great against the Goths, iii, 128.

Christ, cruelly persecuted by the Greek emperor Justinian II, ix, 21.

Chrest, the object of the name of, by whom invented, vii, 307.

Childeeric, king of France, deposed under papal sanction, ix, 152.

Children, the exposure of, a prevailing vice of antiquity, viii, 56. Natural, according to the Roman law, what, 67.

China, how distinguished in ancient history, ii, 181, note. Great numbers of children annually exposed there, 347, note.

— its situation, iv, 357. The high chronology claimed by the historians of, ibid. The great wall of, when erected, 351. Was twice conquered by the northern tribes, 364.

— the Romans supplied with silk by the carryards from, vii, 93.

— is conquered by the Moguls, xi, 414, 426. Expulsion of the Moguls, 427, 428.

Chronicle, origin of the order of, xi, 26.

Cesalpina, prince of the Alemani, taken prisoner by Julian at the battle of Strasburg, iii, 229.

Chosroes, king of Armenia, assassinated by the emissaries of Sapor king of Persia, i, 435.
GENERAL INDEX.

Chosroes, son of Tirdate, king of Armenia, his character, iii. 189.


Chosroes II, king of Persia, is raised to the throne on the deposition of his father Hormoz, vii, 186. Is reduced to implore the assistance of the emperor Maurice, 188. His restoration and policy, 190. Conquers Syria, 219. Palestine, 221. Egypt and Asia Minor, 222. His reign and magnificence, 299. Rejects the Mahometan religion, 226. Imposes an ignominious peace on the emperor Heraclius, 229, 290. His flight, deposition, and death, 251.

Chosroes, the heir of, sent by the Turks to the assistance of the emperor Heraclius, vii, 240.

Christ, the festival of his birth, why fixed by the Romans at the winter solstice, iv, 22, note.

Christians, primitive, the various sects into which they branched out, ii, 277. Ascribed the pagan idolatry to the agency of demons, 288. Believed the end of the world to be near at hand, 300. The miraculous powers ascribed to the primitive church, 306. Their faith stronger than in modern times, 314. Their superior virtue and austerity, 316. Repentance, a virtue in high esteem among them, 316. Their notions of marriage and chastity, 322. They disdain war and government, 326. Were active, however, in the internal government of their own society, 328. Bishops, 331. Synods, 334. Metropolitan and archbishops, 287. Bishop of Rome, 339. Their probable proportion to the pagan subjects of the empire before the conversion of Constantine the Great, 371. Inquiry into their persecutions, 391. Why more obsequious to the governing powers than the Jews, 387. Their religious meeting, suspected, 394. Are persecuted by Nero, as the successors of Rome, 405. Instructions of the emperor Trajan to Pline the Younger for the regulation of his conduct towards them, 411. Remaining exposed to popular resentment on public festivities, 420. Legal mode of proceeding against them, 422. The actions with which they courted martyrdom, 427. When allowed to erect places for public worship, 448. Their persecution under Decilius and his associates, 467. An edict of toleration for them published by Galerius just before his death, 464. Some considerations necessary to be attended to in reading the sufferings of the martyrs, 491. Edicts of Milan published by Constantine the Great, iii, 244. Political recommendations of the Christian morality to Constantin, 247. Theology and practice of passive obedience, 248. Their loyalty and zeal, 253. The sacrament of baptism, how administered in early times, 279. Extraordinary propagation of Christianity after it obtained the imperial sanction, 276, 277. Becomes the established religion of the Roman empire, 280. Sul

Christian, discretion of, into vulgar and ascetic, vi, 238. Conversion of the barbarous nations, 264.

Christianity, inquiry into the progress and establishment of, ii, 265. Religion and character of the Jews, 267. The Jewish religion, the basis of Christianity, 274. It offered to all mankind, ibid. The sects into which the Christians divided, 277. The theology of, reduced to a systematical form in the school of Alexandria, 365. Injudicious conduct of its early advocates, 377. Its persecutions, 381. First erection of churches, 448. the system of, found in Plato's doctrine of the Logos, iii, 318.

Military effects resulting from the conversion of the barbarous nations, vi, 275.

its progress in the north of Europe, x, 243.

Chrysanthus, the amanuensis sent to assassinate his king Attila, vi, 80. Is put to death by the empress Pulcheria, 84. Assisted at the second council of Ephesus, viii, 309.

Chrysaeus, general of the revolting Paulicians, overruns and pillages Asia Minor, x, 179. His death, 184.

Chrysoheres, Manuel, the Greek envoy, his character, xii, 126. His admiration of Rome and Constantinople, 142.

Chryseopolis, battle of, between Constantine the Great and Licinius, ii, 263.

Chrysaetos, St., his account of the pompous luxury of the emperor Arcadius, v, 375. Protects his fugitive patron, the exarch Eutropius, 391. History of his promotion to the archiepiscopal see of Constantinople, 398. His character and administration, 399, 400. His persecution, 404. His death, 410. His relics removed to Constantinople, ibid. His encomium on the monastic life, vi, 247, note.

Chrysostom, Chrysostom, the first erection of, ii, 448. Demolition of, under Diocletian, 474. Splendor of, under Constantine the Great, vii, 397. Seized, of Asia, the fate of, vi, 497.

Cisalpine, battle of, between Constantine the Great and Licinius, iii, 246.

Cicero, his view of the philosophical opinions as to the immortality of the soul, ii, 394. His encomium on the study of the law, viii, 9. System of his republic, 37.

Commencement of darkness, the expression of, whence derived, vi, 274, note.
GENERAL INDEX.

Circumcision of Africa, Dunbar's schismatics, history of their revolt, iii, 588. Their religious sunder, 401. Possession of, by the emperor Honorius, vi, 10.

Circumcision of both sexes, a physical custom in Ethiopia, unconnected with religion, viii, 579.

Ciceron, Roman, the four factions in, described, vii, 76. Constantinople, and the eastern empire, distracted by these factions, 77.

Ciceron in the Roman empire enumerated, i, 77.

— commercial of Italy, rise and government of, i, 263, 266.

Cie INFORMATION of Rome, motive of Carthage for extending the privileges of, to all the free inhabitants of the empire, i, 255, 297. Political tendency of this grant, 269.

City, the birth of a new site, how celebrated by the Romans, iii, 15, note.

Civilians of Rome, origin of the profession, and the three periods in the history of, viii, 229.

Cicero, the Eutychian, his successful revolt against the Romans, i, 577.

Cicero, the poet, and panegyrist of Stilicho, his works supply the deficiencies of history, v, 351. Celebrates the murder of Honorius, 169. His death and character, 247. His character of the omnibus Eutropius, 379.

Cicero, emperor, chosen by the postumian guard, without the concurrence of the senate, i, 116.

Cicero, emperor, successor to Gallienus, his character and elevation to the throne, ii, 4.

Cicero, minister of the emperor Commodus, his history, i, 145.

Clement, Flavius, and his wife Domitilla, why distinguished as Christian martyrs, ii, 410.

Clement III, Pope, and the emperor Henry III, mutually confirm each other's sovereign characters, 5, 302.

Clement V, Pope, transfers the holy see from Rome to Avignon, iii, 306.

Clergy, when first distinguished from the laity, ii, 340; iii, 192.

—the ranks and numbers of, how multiplied, iii, 290. Their property, 341. Their offences only cognizable by their own order, 286. Valentine's edict to restrain the practice of, i, 270.

Cloud, the first of the Merovingian race of kings of the Franks in Gaul, his reign, vi, 100.

Clouds, Abinus, governor of Britain, his steady fidelity during the revolutions at Rome, i, 176. Declares himself against Julian, 177.

Cloudia, niece of the king of Burgundy, is married to Clovis king of the Franks, and converts her pagan husband, vi, 318. Embarks her husband to the Gothic war, 331.

Clovis, king of the Franks, his descent and reign, vi, 310.

Clovis, his account of the objects of adulation among the ancient Germans, i, 370, note.

Cloth, importance of the discovery of, in the art of dying, i, 50, note.
INDEX.


Case, how far admitted by the Roman law respecting testament, vii, 10.

Case, in monkish history, described, vi, 263.

Case, how regulated by the Roman emperor, vii, 241.

Case, the modern Mingrelia, described, vii, 319. Nature of the natives, 322. Return of, from the Romans to the Persians, and repentance, 324. Termination of, 326.

Cases of the emperor Titus, observations on, xii, 418. Exhibition of a bull-grant in, 421.

Cases (continued), an account of, ix, 261.

Cases, Roman, how planted, i, 58.

Cases, history of the Roman family of, xii, 216.

Cases, of libraries, some account of, ix, 422.

Cases of Hercules, their situation, i, 42.

Cases, the rich temple of, surrendered, and the revenue consecrated, by the emperor of the East, xiii, 76.

Cases, judicial, origin of, in the Salic laws, vi, 351. The laws of, according to the state of Jerusalem, xi, 96. Apology for the practice of, 319, note.

Cases, account of those which appeared in the reign of Justinian, vii, 417.

Cassiodorus, his disgraceful warfare against the Avars, viii, 202.

Cassiodorus, emperor, his education, character, and reign, i, 137.

Cassiopeia, origin of the family of, on the throne of Constantinople, ix, 74. Its extinction, xii, 919.

Cassiopeia, immaculate, of the Virgin Mary, the doctrine of, from whence derived, ix, 360.

Cassiopeia, according to the Roman civil law, explained, viii, 67.

Cassiopeia, general ideas of the primitive Christians concerning, ix, 90.

Cassius, the son of, not so justifiable as the son of Spurius, iv, 297. Is rather achieved by art, than personal valor, x, 42.

Cassar III, emperor, engages in the second enume, xi, 105. His disastrous expedition, 113.

Casar of Multan, destroys the Tyre against Saloman, xi, 140. Is assassinated, 146.

Cassas, city of, ix, 257.

Cassas, the third son of Constantine the Great, is sent to govern the western provinces of the empire, vi, 118. Division of the empire among him and his brothers, on the death of their father, 139. Is invaded by his brother Constantine, 146. Is killed, on the reception of Magnentius, 149. Exposed the cause of Athenodorus against his brother Constantine, 268.

Cassas II, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 113.

Cassas, princess, grand-daughter of Constantine the Great, is carried by her mother to the camp of the usurper Florus, vi, 247. Narrowly escapes falling into the hands of the Quadri, 229. Marries the emperor Gratian, 255.

Constantia, daughter of Constantine the Great, and widow of Han-
Constantine the Great, the several opinions as to the place of his birth, iii, 190. His history, 191. He is saluted emperor by the British legions on the death of his father, 194. Marries Fausta, the daughter of Maximian, 203. Puts Maximian to death, 212. General review of his administration in Gaul, 214. Undertakes to deliver Rome from the tyranny of Maxentius, 220. Defeats Maxentius, and enters Rome, 231. His alliance with Licinius, 237. Defeats Licinius, 246, 248. Peace concluded with Licinius, 249. His laws, 250. Chastises the Goths, 254. Second civil war with Licinius, 255.


Publication of his edictive donation to the bishop of Rome, iv, 159. Fabulous institution of marriage with strangers, ascribed to him, x, 139.

Constantine II, the son of Constantine the Great, is sent to guard;
Constantine II, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 10.

Constantine IV, Pogonatus, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 15.

Constantine V, Constantius, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 29. Fate of his five sons, 30. Revolt of Artavasdes, and trouble on account of image worship, 128, 129. Abolishes the monkish order, 130.

Constantine VI, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 31.

Constantine VII, Porphyrogennetos, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 67. His cautions against discovering the secret of the Greek fire, x, 17. Account of his works, 94. Their imperfections pointed out, 96. His account of the ceremonies of the Byzantine court, 127. Justifies the marriage of his son with the princess Bertha of France, 130.

Constantine VIII, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 59.

Constantine IX, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 67.

Constantine X, Mammartzes, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 72.

Constantine XI, Dragus, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 77.

Constantine Palaeologus, the last of the Greek emperors, his reign, xii, 177.

Constantine Sylvius, founder of the Paulicians, his death, x, 175.

Constantine, a private soldier in Britain, elected emperor for the sake of his name, v, 229. He reduces Gaul and Spain, 291, 342. His reduction and death, 343.

Constantine, general under Belisarius in Italy, his death, vii, 247.


... continued the principal test of the Arian heresy, during the reigns of Constantine and Valens, v, 17. It purged from Arianism by the emperor Theodosius, 22. Council of, 26. It enriched by the bodies of saints and martyrs, 126. Insurrection against Gaius and his Ariane Goths, 495. Persecution of the archbishop, St. Chryseleassin, 404. Popular tumults on his account, 406. Earthquake there, vi, 61.

... the city and eastern empire distracted by the factions of
GENERAL INDEX.

the circus, vii, 77. Foundation of the church of St. Sophia, 116.
Other churches erected there by Justinian, 122. Triumph of Helias over the Vandals, 104. The walls of, injured by an earthquake, 311. State of the armies under the emperor Maurice, 293. The armies and city revolt against him, 207. Deliverance of the city from the Persians and Arabs, 243. Religious war about the Tigris, 314.


Constantine, the second son of Constantine the Great, his education, iii, 116. Is sent to govern the eastern provinces of the empire, 118. Seizes Constantinople on the death of his father, 121. Conspires the death of his kinsmen, 132. Division of the empire among him and his brothers, 323. Restores Chrestos, king of Armenia, 138. Battle of Singara with Sapor king of Persia, 140. Repeats the offers of Magnentius and Vetranio, on the plea of a vision, 152. His election to the Illyrian throne at the interview with Vetranio, 154. Defeats Magnentius at the battle of Mursa, 160. His council governed by cautery, 168. Education of
GENERAL INDEX


Constantius, general, relieved the British emperor Constantine when besieged in Arles, v, 343.  His character and victories, 345.  His marriage with Placidia, and death, vi, 2.

Constantius, secretary to Attal, king of the Huns, his matrimonial negotiation at the court of Constantinople, vi, 66.

Consul, the office or, explained, i, 163.  Alters the office, under the emperors, and when Constantinople became the seat of empire, iii, 93.  The office of, suppressed by the emperor Justinian, vi, 152.  Is now sunk in a commercial agent, xii, 279.

Contract, the Roman laws respecting, viii, 84.

Copts of Egypt, brief history of, xvi, 350.

Corinth, surviving as a Roman colony, celebrates the Isthmian games under the emperor Julian, iv, 55.  The Isthmus of, fortified by the emperor Justinian, vii, 128.

Cosmology, reduction of, by the Saxon, vi, 388.

Corect gold, nature of those offerings to the Roman emperor, iii, 95.

Cotorra, Matthias, king of Hungary, his character, xii, 167.

Cross, Indecipherable, account of his Christian topography, viii, 100.

Ctespia, or Medicea, his character, xii, 136.

Constantino and words of:

Antioch, iii, 304.
Arles, iii, 371.
Basile, xii, 93.
Cosa, iii, 361.
Carthage, vi, 283, xii, 187.
GENERAL INDEX.

Councils and Synods of
Chalcodon, v, 405; vi, 303.
Clermont, xi, 8.
Constance, xii, 96, 92, 373.
Constantinople, v, 463; viii, 227, 333; ix, 123; xi, 173.
Ephesus, viii, 293, 301.
Ferrara, xii, 108.
Florence, xi, 108.
Frankfort, ix, 168.
Lyons, vi, 325; xi, 276, 334.
Milan, iii, 372.
Nice, vi, 352; ix, 104.
Pam, xi, 92.
Placentia, x, 57.
Rimini, iii, 343.
Sardica, iii, 363.
Toledo, vi, 300, 304, 378.
Tyre, iii, 361.

Count, great difference between the ancient and modern application of this title, iii, 58. By whom first invented, ibid. Of the sacred largesses under Constantine the Great, his office, 74. Of the domestics in the eastern empire, his office, 77.

Courtsey, history of the family of; xi, 294.

Crecentius, consul of Rome, his vicissitudes, and disgraceful death, x, 209.

Cretes, the island of, subdued by the Saracens, x, 58. Is recovered by Nicophorus Phocas, 86. Is purchased by the Venetians, xi, 249.

Crimer, how distinguished by the penal laws of the Romans, viii, 98.

Crispus, son of Constantine the Great, is declared Cæsar, ii, 249. Distinguishes his valour against the Franks and Alamanni, 238. Forces the passage of the Hellespont, and defeats the fleet of Licinius, 260. His character, iii, 106. His mysterious death, 114.

Crispus, the patrician, marries the daughter of Phocas, and contributes to depose him, viii, 214. Is obliged to turn monk, 217.

Cretia; account of the kingdom of, x, 198.

Cress, the different sentiments entertained of this instrument of punishment, by the p mathematical and Christian Romans, iii, 258. The famous standard of, in the army of Constantine the Great, described, 258. His claims of, 200, 205. The holy sepulchre and cross of Christ discovered, iv, 101. The cross of Christ undiminished by distribution to pilgrims, 102.

Creus of thuris, its transfer from Constantinople to Paris, xi, 278.

Crumus, mural and obdictional, the distinction between, iv, 175, note.

Crusade, the first resolved on at the council of Clermont, xi, 10. Inquiry into the justice of the holy war, 12. Examination into the private motives of the crusaders, 20. Departure of the crusaders, 24. Account of the chief, 30. Their march to Constantinop.
GÉNÉRAL INDEX.


Ghent, the city of, plundered by the Romans, i, 224. Its situation described, iv, 178. Julian declines the siege of that city, 183. Is sacked by the Saracens, ix, 368.

Cadi, emperor of China, his character, xi, 436.

Caracalla, his victory under the Greek emperors, x, 121.

Carthage, duties of, imposed by Augustus, i, 261.

Cycle of Indulgence, the origin of, traced, and how now employed, iii, 83, note.

Cyprus, bishop of Carthage, his history and martyrdom, ii, 428.

Cyprus, the kingdom of, bestowed on the house of Lusignan, by Richard I of England, xi, 183.

Cyrene, the Greek colonies there finally exterminated by Chaerone II, king of Persia, viii, 222.

Cyrenia, an obscure fugitive, is set up by Sapor the Persian monarch, as emperor of Rome, i, 487.

Cyril, bishop of Jerusalem, his pompous relation of a miraculous appearance of a celestial cross, iii, 331. His ambiguous character, iv, 104.

Cyril, patriarch of Alexandria, his life and character, viii, 276. Condemns the heresy of Nestorius, 287. Proceeds the decision of the council of Ephesus against Nestorius, 289. His court intrigues, 294.

Cyzicus, how it escaped destruction from the Goths, i, 428. Is at length ruined by them, 429. The island and city of, seized by the usurper Procopius, iv, 247.

DO

Deca, conquest of, by the emperor Trajan, i, 8. Its situation, 37. Is over run by the Goths, 397. It is resigned to them by Aurelian, 52, 10.

Dacianus, general of the emperor Justinian, besieges Petra, vii, 321. Commands the Huns in Italy under Narses, 382.

Dioneus, archbishop of Pisa, installed patriarch of Jerusalem, xi, 89.

Dubienia described, i, 96. Produce of a silver mine there, 259, note.

Dubna, nephew of Constantine the Great, is created Caesar, iii, 116. Is sent to govern the Gothic frontier, 118. Is cruelly destroyed by Constantius, 192.

Damasus, siege of, by the Saracens, ix, 385. The city reduced both by storm and by treaty, 394. Remarks on Hugh's tragedy
of this siege, 397, note. Taken and destroyed by Tamialian, xi, 29.

Damascus, bishop of Rome, edict of Valentinian addressed to him, to restrain the crafty avarice of the Roman clergy, iv, 271. His bloody contest with Ursinus for the episcopal dignity, 274.

Dame, the Arab, his gallant enterprise against the castle of Aleppo, ix, 116.

Damietta is taken by Louis IX of France, xi, 160.

Damophilas, archbishop of Constantinople, resigns his see, rather than subscribe the Nicene creed, x, 23.


Daniel, first bishop of Winchester, his instructions to St. Boniface, for the conversion of infidels, vi, 272.

Danielle, a Grecian matron, her presents to the emperor Basil, x, 102. Her visit to him at Constantinople, 117. Her testament, 118.

Danube, course of the river, and the provinces of, described, i, 25.

Daphne, the sacred grove and temple of, at Antioch, described, iv, 118. Is converted to Christian purposes by Gallus, and restored to the pagans by Julian, 121, 122. The temple burned, 123.

Darav, the fortification of, by Justinian, described, vii, 189. The demolition of, by the Persians, prevented by peace, 308. Is taken by Chosroes king of Persia, vii, 179.

Dariat, his scheme for connecting the continents of Europe and Asia, iii, 6.

Darkness, preternatural, at the time of the passion, is unnoticed by the heathen philosophers and historians, ii, 779.

Dastagerd, the Persian royal seat of, plundered by the emperor Heraclius, viii, 250.

Dathinas, governor of Spain, yields ready obedience to the imperial edicts against the Christians, ii, 478.

Datius, bishop of Milan, instigates the revolt of the Ligurians to Justinian, vii, 242, 249. Escapes to Constantinople on the taking of Milan by the Burgundians, 250.

Debtor, insolvent, cruel punishment of, by the law of the twelve tables, viii, 92.

Decemvirs, review of the laws of their twelve tables, viii, 6. Their laws superseded by the perpetual edict, 10. Severity of, 90.

Decius, his exaltation to the empire, i, 384, 385. Was a persecutor of the Christians, 452.

Despotic, in the Roman empire, are severely treated by the imperial laws, iii, 84.

Deification of the Roman emperors, how this species of idolatry was introduced, i, 111.

Delators, are encouraged by the emperor Commodus, to gratify his hatred of the senate, i, 141. Are suppressed by Pertinax, 162.

Delphi, the sacred ornaments of the temple of, removed to Constantinople by Constantine the Great, iii, 22, note.

Democracy, a form of government unfavourable to freedom in a large state, i, 54.
GENERAL INDEX:

Demons, supposed to be the authors and objects of pagan idolatry, by
the primitive Christians, ii, 298.

Demosthenes, governor of Cyzicus, his gallant defence against, and his
homicidal escape from, Sapor king of Persia, i, 439.

Desolation, bishop of Carthage, humanely succours the captives brought
from Rome by Generius king of the Vandals, vi, 154.

Derar, the Saracen, his character, ix, 399.

Deteriorus, the last king of the Lombards, conquered by Charlemagne,
ix, 120.

Despot, nature of that title in the Greek empire, x, 121.

Despotism originates in superstition, i, 364, note.

Diadem assumed by Diocletian, what, ii, 163.

Diamond, the art of cutting them, unknown to the ancients, i, 263.

note.

Darius Julianus purchases the imperial dignity at a public auction, i,
172.

Diocletian, the Roman empire, their number and government, iii, 49.

Diocletian, the manner of his military election to the empire, ii, 169.

His birth and character, 112. Takes Maximian for his colleague,
115. Associates, as Caesars, Galerius and Constantius Chlorus,
118. His triumph in conjunction with Maximian, 156. Fixes his
court at the city of Nicomedia, 159. Abdicates the empire, 170.

Parallel between him and the emperor Charles V, 171. Passes his
life in retirement at Salona, 174. His impartial behaviour towards
the Christians, 458. Causes that produced the persecution of the
Christians under his reign, 460.

Dom. Cassar, the historian, screened from the fury of the soldiers, by
the emperor Alexander Severus, i, 230.

Diocletian, patriarch of Alexandria, his outrageous behaviour at the sec-
second council of Ephesus, viii, 304. Is deposed by the council of
Chalcedon, 396.

Distabol, great khan of the Turks, his reception of the ambassadors of
Justinian, vii, 205.

Disarm, the liberty and abuse of, by the Roman laws, viii, 60. Li-
nimilitude of, 63.

Daceter, their peculiar tenets, iii, 319; viii, 265. Derivation of that
name, iii, 382, note.

Domina, St. Luricatus, his fortitude in flagellation, xi, 17.

Dominus, when this epithet was applied to the Roman emperors, ii,
163.

Dominus, emperor, his treatment of his kinsmen Flavius Sabinus and
Flavius Clemens, ii, 415.

Domanian, the oriental prefect, is sent by the emperor Constantius to
reform the state of the East, then oppressed by Gallus, iii, 178, is
put to death there, 177.

Domatius, his contest with Caelesian for the see of Carthage, iii, 308.

History of the schism of the Donatists, 511, 508. Persecution of
the Donatists by the emperor Honorius, vi, 45.

Doryleum, battle of, between Sultan Soliman and the first crusade,
vi, 60.
GENERAL INDEX.

Domolog, how introduced into the church service, and how perverted, iii, 358.

Dramatic representations at Rome, a character of, v, 265.

Dream, the popular opinion of the preternatural origin of, favourable to that of Constantine previous to his battle with Maxentius, iii, 262.

Dromedary, extraordinary speed of this animal, ii, 42, note.

Dreams of the Greek emperors, described, xi, 157, 158.

Druids, their power in Gaul suppressed by the emperors Tiberius and Claudius, i, 32.

Drusus of Mount Libanus, a character of, x, 290, note.

Duke, derivation of that title, and great change in the modern, from the ancient application of it, iii, 58.

Duranze, siege of, by Robert Guiscard, x , 288. Battle of, between him and the Greek emperor Alexius, 294.

Earthquake, an extraordinary one over great part of the Roman empire, iv, 338. Account of those that happened in the reign of Justinian, vii, 417.

East India, the Roman commercial intercourse with that region, i, 56.

Commodities of, taxed by Alexander Severus, 282.

Ethiopia, account of that sect, ii, 279.

— a condemnation of their errors, supposed by the primitive fathers to be a particular object in the writings of St. John the Evangelist, iii, 318.

— their ideas of the person of Jesus Christ, viii, 261.

Excederius, the book of, why not likely to be the production of King Solomon, vii, 195, note.

Ecclesiastical and civil powers, distinguished by the Fathers of the Christian church, iii, 292.

Ecclesiast, son of the emperor Avitus, his gallant conduct in Gaul, vi, 207.

Ecclesiast of the emperor Heraclius, viii, 351.

Edda, of Iceland, the system of mythology in, i, 390.

Edessa is sent from Attila king of the Huns, as his ambassador to the emperor Theodosius the Younger, vi, 68. Engages in a proposal to assassinate Attila, 80. His son Odomer, the first barbarian king of Italy, 224.

Edece, the purest dialect of the Syrian language spoken there, i, 335, note. The property of the Christians there, condemned by the emperor Julian, for the disorderly conduct of the Aramae, iv, 129. Revolt of the Roman troops there, viii, 206. A council of the school of, 299. History of the famous image there, iv, 118. The city and principality of, sacred by Baldwin the crusader, xi, 63. Is retaken by Zenghi, 122. The counts of, 215.

Edeca of Milan, published by Constantine the Great, iii, 244.

Edicts of the praetor, Rome, under the republic, their nature and tendency, viii, 19.

Eden, why that name was applied to the Roman empire by the Jews, ii, 287, note.
Ecclesius, the Saracen dynasty of, a, 80.
Edward I of England, his crusade to the Holy Land, xi, 165.
Egerius, his character and revolt in Gaul, vi, 183. His son Syagrius, 312.
Egypt, general description of, i, 40. The superstitions of, with difficulty tolerated at Rome, 52. Amount of its revenues, 257. Public works executed there by Probus, ii, 89. Conduct of Dioclesian there, 134. Progress of Christianity there, 363.
— effect of the emperor Valens, to restrain the number of recluse monks there, iv, 270.
— great supplies of wheat furnished by, for the city of Constantinople, in the time of Justinian, vii, 88. Ecclesiastical history of, viii, 366.
— the Egyptians take Jerusalem from the Turks, xi, 77. Egypt conquered by the Turks, 125. Government of the Mamelukes there, 164.
Elagabalus is declared emperor by the troops at Emesa, i, 229. Was the first Roman, who wore garments of pure silk, vii, 92.
Elpidius, inquiry into the number of, brought into the field by the ancient princes of the East, i, 337, note. With what view introduced in the circus at Rome in the first Punic war, ii, 103.
Eleusinian mysteries, why tolerated by the emperor Valentinian, iv, 364.
Elizabeth, queen of England, the political use she made of the national pulpits, vi, 331, note.
Emigration of the ancient northern nations, the nature and motives of, examined, i, 300.
Emperors of Rome, a review of their constitutions, viii, 16. Their legislative power, 18. Their Rescripts, 19.
— of Germany, their limited powers, ix, 205. Of Constantinople, their pomp and luxury, x, 113. Officers of the palace, state, and army, 124. Adoration of the emperor, mode of, 124. Their public appearance, 136. Their despotic power, 134. Their navy, 136. They retain the name of Romans to the last, 155.
Empire, Roman, division of, into the East and West empires by Valentinian, iv, 243. Extinction of the western empire, vi, 226.
Encomium, Roman, described, i, 23.
Eusebius, the servile flatterer of Theodoric the Ostrogoth king of Italy, is made bishop of Pavia, v, 16, note.
Epagathus, leader of the mutinous pretorians, who murdered their prefect Ulpius, punished by the emperor Alexander Severus, i, 250.
Ephesus, the famous temple of Diana at, destroyed by the Gaths, i, 432. Council of, vi, 288. Episcopal riots there, 291.
Euripides, his legacy to his philosophical disciples at Athens, vii, 146.
GENERAL INDEX.

Epeiros, despite of, on the dismemberment of the Greek empire, xi, 253.

Eutropius, master-general of the Illyrian frontier, is defeated by the Saracens, iv, 386.

Eutropius, his merit as a reformer, x, 192.

Eusebius, their distinguishing tenets and practices, ii, 309.

Eusebius, a knave subject to the first reformers, x, 189.


Eudocia, her birth, character, and marriage with the emperor Theodosius the Younger, v, 421. Her disgrace and death, 425.

Eudocia, her marriage with the emperor Arcadius, iii, 148. Stimulates him to give up his favourite Eutropius, 390. Persecutes St. Chrysostom, 403. Her death and character, 411.

Eudoxia, the daughter of Theodosius the Younger, is betrothed to the young emperor Valentinian III of the West, vi, 7. Her character, 140. Is married to the emperor Maximus, 142. Invites General king of the Vandals to Italy, 160.

Eudoxius, bishop of Constantinople, baptizes the emperor Valens, iv, 265.

Euodius, the rhetorician, is made emperor of the West by Arbogastes the Frank, v, 78. Is defeated and killed by Theodosius, 84.

Euodius IV, Pope, his contest with the council of Bari, xii, 95. Procures a reunion of the Latin and Greek churches, 111, 112. Forms a league against the Turks, 154. Revolt of the Roman citizens against him, 278.

Eumenius, the orator, some account of, ii, 182, note.

Euphemos, the sophist, his character of monks, and of the objects of their worship, v, 123, 124.

Eucharius, punishment of, by the edict of the emperor Theodosius against heretics, v, 35.

Evans, enumerated in the list of Eastern commodities imported and taxed in the time of Alexander Severus, i, 262. They invest the palace of the third Garrison, 307:

— their ascendancy in the court of Constantius, iii, 168. Why they favoured the Arians, 350, note. Procure the banishment of Liberius bishop of Rome, 360.

— a conspiracy of, disappoint the schemes of Rufinus, and marry the emperor Arcadius to Eudoxia, v, 147. They distract the court of the emperor Honorius, 301. And govern that of Arcadius, 375. Scheme of Chrysaphius to assassinate Attila king of the Huns, vi, 80.

— the bishop of Sera and his whole chapter restrained, xii, 265, note.

Euric, king of the Visigoths in Gaul, his conquests in Spain, vi, 206. Is vested with all the Roman conquests beyond the Alps by Odoacer king of Italy, 306.

Europe, evidences that the climate of, was much colder in ancient than in modern times, i, 345. This alteration accounted for, 257.
General Index.

INDEX.

Eutropius, final division of, between the western and eastern empires, v., 137. It ravaged by Attila, king of the Huns, vi, 92. It now one great republic, 444.

Eudokia, empress, wife of Constantine, her steady friendship to Julian, iii, 183, 185. It accused of arts to deprive Julian of children, 190.

Eubalos, his character of the followers of Artemon, ii, 373. His own character, 490. His story of the miraculous appearance of the cross in the day to Constantine the Great, iii, 294, 295.

Eupompeus, the eunuch, great chamberlain to the emperor Arcadius, concrrts his marriage with Eudolia, in opposition to the views of Rufinus, vi, 147. Succeeds Rufinus in the emperor's confidence, 160.

Euprates, his character and administration, 376. Provides for his own security, in a new law against treason, 385. Takes sanctuary with St. Chrysanthus, 391. His death, 393.

Eustochius, his opinion on the subject of the incarnation supported by the second council at Ephesus, viii, 300. And adhered to by the Armenians, 358.

Euxine See, description of the vessel used in navigating, i, 423.

Exaltation of the cross, origin of the annual festival of, viii, 255.

Exarch, under the Greek empire, the office and rank of, ix, 138. Of Ravenna, the government of Italy settled in, and administered by, vii, 908; viii, 145.

Exile duties imposed by Augustus, i, 262.

Excommunication from Christian communion, the origin of, ii, 348; iii, 308.

Exile, voluntary, under accusation and conscious guilt, its advantages among the Romans, iii, 107.

F

Faith, and its operations, defined, ii, 315.

Fallandus, Hugo, character of his Historia Sacra, x, 325, note. His lamentation on the transfer of the sovereignty of the island to the emperor Henry VI, 326.

Fathers of the Christian church, cause of their amate morality, ii, 315.

Fausta, empress, wife of Constantine the Great, cause of her being put to death, iii, 119.

Faustina, wife of Marcus Aurelius, her character, i, 135.

Fausta, the widow of the emperor Constantine, countenances the revolt of Procopius against the emperor Valens, iv, 247.

Festivals, Pagan, great offence taken at, by the primitive Christians, ii, 293.

Feudal government, the rudiments of, to be found among the Scythians, iv, 351, 353.

Fingers, natural, occasion of their first public and familiar use, x, 8.

Flavians, the Roman empire, when the seat of it was removed to Constantinople, reviewed, iii, 81.

Fretan, his questionable history, whether to be connected with the invasion of Caledonia by the emperor Severus, i, 209.
First, Greek, the Saracen fleet destroyed by, in the harbour of Constan-
tinople, x, 14. Is long preserved at a secret, 17. Its effects not to
be compounded with gunpowder, 140.

Firmus, an Egyptian merchant, his revolt against the emperor Aure-
lian, ii, 45.

Firmer, the Moor, history of his revolt against the emperor Valenti-
ian, iv, 301.

Flagellation, its efficacy in penance, and how proportioned, vi, 18.

Flamen, Roman, their number, and peculiar office, c, 93.

Flaminian way, its course described, vii, 284, note.

Flavian, archbishop of Constantinople, is killed at the second council
of Ephesus, vii, 302.

Fleece, golden, probable origin of the fable of, vii, 321.

Florence, the foundation of that city, v, 210, note. Is besieged by Ha-
dragus, and relieved by Stilicho, 217, 218.

Florentius, pretorian prefect of Gaul under Constantius, his character,
iii, 233; iv, 7. Is condemned by the tribunal of Chalcedon, but
suffred to escape by Julian, 48.

Florius, brother of the emperor Tarasius, his eager usurpation of the
imperial dignity, ii, 70.

Felix is consecrated bishop of Rome, to supersede Liberius, who was
exiled, iii, 390. He is violently expelled, and his adherents slaugh-
tered, 392.

Felix, an African bishop, his martyrdom, ii, 473.

Formation, a doubtful plan for divorce, by gospel authority, viii, 65,
note.

France, modern, computation of the number of its inhabitants, and the
average of their taxation, iii, 91.

— the name of, whence derived, vi, 269. Derivation of the

— Childeric deposed, and Pepin appointed king, by papal sanction,
ix, 152. Reign and character of Charles Martel, 174. Invasion of
by the Saracens, x, 18.

Frangipani, German, his profane violation of the persons of Pope Ge-

tarius II and his college of cardinals, xii, 267. Derivation of his
family name, 316.

Franks, their origin and confederacy, i, 412. They invade Gaul, and
raige Spain, 414, 415. They pass over into Africa, 413. Bold
and successful return of a colony of, from the sea of Pontus, by sea,
ii, 85.

— they over-run and establish themselves at Tossaabria in Ger-

many, iii, 214.

— their fidelity to the Roman government, v, 223. Origin of
the Merovingian race of their kings, vi, 98. How converted to
Christianity, 272. Reign of their king Clovis, 310. Final estab-
lishment of the French monarchy in Gaul, 339. Their laws, 343.
Give the name of France to their conquests in Gaul, 362. They
degenerate into a state of anarchy, 372.

— they invade Italy, vii, 249, 393.

— their military character, x, 147.
GENERAL INDEX.

Franzoi, the Goth, his character, and deadly quarrel with his countryman Prisulf, iv, 442. His operations against Guaim, v, 393.

Frederic I, emperor of Germany, his tyranny in Italy, ix, 207. Engages in the third crusade, xi, 103. His disastrous expedition, 118, 141. Sacrifices Arnold of Brescia to the pope, xii, 172. His reply to the Roman ambassadors, 293.

Frederic II is driven out of Italy, ix, 208. His disputes with the pope, and reluctant crusade, xi, 155. Exhorts the European princes to unite in opposing the Tartars, 421.

Frederic III, the last emperor crowned at Rome, xii, 573.

Friedens, among the Romans, their rank in society, viii, 50.

Freemen of Laconia, account of, x, 107.


Fremantles was the first Christian missionary in Abyssinia, vii, 279.

Fulk of Neufly, his zeal in preaching the fourth crusade, xi, 156.

G

Gabinius, king of the Quadi, is treacherously murdered by Marcellinus, governor of Valeria, iv, 288.

Galard, M. character of his Histoire de Charlemagne, iv, 173, note.

Gaius, the Goth, is commissioned by Silicho to execute his revenge on Rixma, prefect of the East, v, 116. His conduct in the war against the revoler Tribogid, 399. Joins him, 399. His flight and death, 396.

Gal, probable derivation of the term, x, 125, note.

Gaula, the suburb of, at Constantinople, assigned to the Genoese, xi, 290.

Galerius is associated in the administration, as Caesar, by the emperor Diocletian, ii, 118. Is defeated by the Persians, 144. Surprised and overthrows Nares, 147. Assumes the title of Augustus, on the abdication of Diocletian, 186. His jealousy of Constantine, 192. Does he prudence to acknowledge him Caesar, 195. His unsuccessful invasion of Italy, 202. Invests Licinius with the purple on the death of Severus, 208. His death, 212. From what causes he entertained an aversion to the Christians, 463. Obtains the countenance of Diocletian for persecuting them, 463. Publishes an edict of toleration just before his death, 484.

Galilean, two-fold application of that name in the infancy of Christianity, ii, 412. Why the emperor Julian applied this name to the Christians, iv, 109.

Gallicanus, son of the emperor Valerian, is associated by him in the imperial throne, i, 411. Prohibits the senators from exercising
military employments, 419. Character of his administration after the captivity of his father, 442. Numa Claudius for his successor, ii, 4. Favoured the Christians, 458.

Galley of the Greek empire described, x, 138.

Gallus elected emperor, on the minority of Hostilianus, the son of Decius, i, 403.

Gallus, nephew of Constantine the Great, his education, iii, 171. Is invested with the title of Caesar, 172. His cruelty and imprudence, 173. His disgrace and death, 179. Embraced the doctrine, but neglected the precepts, of Christianity, iv, 66. Converts the grove of Daphne at Antioch to a Christian burial-place, 121.

Galen, public, of the Romans, described, i, 312, 415; v, 284. Account of the factions of the circus, vii, 75.

Ganges, source of that river, xii, 15, note.

Gaudensius, the notary, is condemned to death, under the emperor Julian, iv, 49.


— proportion of the capitulation-tax levied there by the Roman emperors, iii, 88. Is invaded by the Germans, 213. The government of, assigned to Julian, 215. His civil administration, 222. Is invaded by the Alemanni, under the emperor Valentinian, iv, 277. And under Gratian, 401.


Severiens, resolutions of the sea coast of, i, 331, 200.

Gelatius, era of the Turks, when settled, x, 267.
GENERAL INDEX.

Gelasius, Pope, his zeal against the celebration of the feast of Lupercalia, vi, 193. Depletes the miserable decay of Italy, 225.

Gelasius II, Pope, his rough treatment by Cesare Pagnizzi, xii, 367.


General of the Roman army, his extensive power, i, 99.

Generosity, Arabian, striking instances of, ix, 242.

Geometra, the monk, his denunciation against a Greek union with the Latin church, xii, 207.

Gennadus, the Roman general, under the emperor Honorius, his character, v, 300.

Genesius, their mercantile establishment in the suburb of Petra at Constantinople, xi, 390. Their war with the emperor Constantzenna, 395.


Gentilis, etymology of the term, xi, 96, 97.

Geoponies of the emperor Constantine Porphyrogenitus, account of, x, 96.

George of Cappadocia supersedes Athenaeus in the see of Alexandria, iii, 390. His scandalous history, and tragical death, iv, 125. Becomes the titular saint of England, 129.

Geopidea, their encroachments on the eastern empire checked by the Lombards, vii, 273. Are reduced by them, vii, 121.

Germanus, nephew of the emperor Justinian, his character and promotion in the condition of the army sent to Italy, vii, 379. His death, 380.


—— Invasion of Gaul by the Germans, iii, 213 — (v, 277).
Germany, state of, under the emperor Charles-le-Grand, iv, 183. The imperial crown established in the name and notion of Germany, by the first Otto, 191. Division of, among independent princes, 208. Formation of the Germanic constitution, 211. State assumed by the emperor, 213.

Geocinus, Count, sets up Maximus as emperor in Spain, and loses his life in the attempt, v, 342, 343.

Getas and Caracalla, sons of the emperor Severus, their fixed antipathy to each other, i, 206.

Ghesors of Persia, history of, v, 381.

Gheraltur, derivation of the name of, v, 568.

Gildas the Monk, his revolt in Africa, v, 162. His defeat and death, 171.

Gladiators, desperate enterprise and fate of a party of, reserved for the triumph of Probus, ii, 88. The combat of, abolished by the emperor Honorius, v, 205.

Glycerius is first emperor of Rome, and then bishop of Salona, vi, 219, 220. Murders Julius Nepos, and is made archbishop of Milan, 221.

Gnostics, character and account of the sect of, ii, 282. Principal sects into which they divided, 286. Their peculiar tenets, iii, 319; viii, 266.

Godfrey of Bouillon, his character, and engagement in the first crusade, xi, 20. His route to Constantinople, 41, 40. Is elected king of Jerusalem, 86. Compiles the statute of Jerusalem, 93. Form of his administration, 93.

Gog and Magog, the famous rampart of, described, vii, 142.

Guinta, wife of Leovigild king of Spain, her posthumous cruelty to the princess Ingunda, vi, 269.

Gold of affliction, the tax so denounced in the eastern empire, abolished by the emperor Anastasius, vii, 101.

Golden horn, why the Bosphorus obtained this appellation in remote antiquity, iii, 7.

Gordianus, precursor of Africa, his character and elevation to the empire of Rome, i, 282. His son associated with him in the imperial dignity, 294.

Gordian, the third and youngest, declared Caesar, i, 294. Is declared emperor by the army, on the murder of Maximus and Balbinus, 306.

Goths of Scandinavia, their origin, i, 387. Their religion, 389. The Goths and Vandals supposed to be originally one great people, 392. Their emigrations to Prussia and the Ukraine, 393. They invade the Roman provinces, 397. They receive tribute from the Romans, 406. They invade the Bosphorus, 423. Plunder the cities of Bithynia, 436. They ravage Greece, 430. Conclude a treaty with the emperor Aurelian, ii, 18. They ravage Illyricum, and are chastised by Constantine the Great, 254.

Their war with the Saxons, iii, 193. Are again routed by Constantine, 194. Gothic war under the emperor Valentinian and Valens, iv, 822. Are defeated by the Huns, 874.
implore the protection of the emperor Valens, 379. They are received into the empire, 382. They are oppressed by the Roman governors of Thrace, 383. Are provoked to hostilities, and defeat Lupicinus, 390. They ravage Thrace, 391. Battle of Salices, 397. They are strengthened by fresh swarms of their countrymen, 399. Battle of Hadrianople, 408. Seize the country from Hadrianople to Constantinople, 414. Massacre of the Gothic youth in Asia, 418. Their formidable union broken by the death of Fritigern, 421. Death and funeral of Athesiarius, 432. Invasion and defeat of the Ostrogoths, 435. Are settled in Thrace, by Theodosius, 438. Their hostile sentiments, 440.

Goths, revolt of, under Honorianus, v, 176. They ravage Greece, under the command of Alaric, 179. They invade Italy, 190. The sack of Rome by, 210. Death of Alaric, 229. Victories of Valentinian in Spain, 357. They are settled in Aquitaine, 358. See Gaul and Thuringia. Conquest of the Visigoths in Gaul and Spain, vi, 206. How the Goths were converted to the Christian religion, 258, 260.

— reign of Theodoric king of the Ostrogoths, vii, 2. The Goths in Italy, extinguished, 309.

Government, civil, the origin of, i, 362.

Governors of provinces, under the emperors, their great power and influence, iii, 56.

Gratian was the first emperor who refused the pontifical robe, iii, 409. Married the princess Constantia, and succeeds to the empire, iv, 386. Defeats the Alamanni in Gaul, 402. Invests Theodoric with the empire of the East, 429.

— his character and conduct, v, 1. His flight from Maximus, and death, 6. Overthrow the ecclesiastical establishment of paganism, 95.

Greece is ravaged by the Goths, i, 430. Is over-run by Alaric, the Goth, v, 179. Is reduced by the Turks, vi, 249.

Greek church, origin of the schism of, xi, 169; xii, 111, 145.

Greek empire. See Constantinople.

Greek, why averse to the Roman language and manners, i, 161. The Greek becomes a scientific language among the Romans, 63. Character of the Greek language of Constantinople, xii, 115. When first taught in Italy, 127.

Greek learning, revival of, in Italy, xii, 119.

Gregory the Great, Pope, his pious presents to Recared king of Spain, vi, 301. Exhorts Theodelinda queen of the Lombards to propagate the Nicene faith, vii. His eminency to the venerable buildings and learning of Rome, viii, 160. His birth and early profession, 162. His elevation to the pontificate, 164. Sends a mission to convert the Britons, 167. Sanctifies the usurpation of the emperor Phocas, 211.

Gregory II, Pope, his epistles to Leo III, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 184. Revolts against the Greek emperor, 198.

Gregory VII, Pope, his ambitious schemes, ix, 199. His conflict
GENERAL INDEX.

with the emperor Henry III, x, 301. His retreat to Salerno, 304; xii, 266.

Gregory, prelate of Africa, history of him and his daughter, ix, 330, 431.

Gregory Nazianzus, his lamentation on the disgraceful discord among Christians, iii, 108. Lends the memory of the emperor Julian with invective, iv, 63. Commends Constantine for having spared his life, 79, note.

is presented to the wrathful see of Sardis, by his friend Archbishop Basil, iv, 19, 20. His mission to Constantinople, 20. Is placed on the archiepiscopal throne by Theodosius, 24. His resignation and character, 50.

Guardian, king of the Choniti, attends Sapor king of Persia, in his invasion of Mesopotamia, iii, 204. Loses his son at the siege of Amida, 205. Returns home in grief, 209.

Guardianship, how vested and exercised, according to the Roman civil laws, viii, 68.

Guebe, king of Calchoe, his alliance with Chosroes king of Persia, vii, 330. Returns to his former connection with the emperor Justinian, 331. Is treacherously killed, 336.

Guelphs and Ghibellines, the parties of, in Italy, ix, 205; xii, 322.

Gurl, the degrees of, in the penal laws of the Romans, viii, 96.


Gundobald, king of the Burgundians, is reduced by Clovis King of the Franks, vi, 235. His mode of justifying the judicial combat, 352.

Gunpowder, the invention and use of, xii, 62.


Gyprus, a small island in the Aegean sea, in instance of its poverty, i, 259.

II

Hadrian, emperor, relinquishes the eastern conquest of Trajan, i, 11. Their characters compared, 12. His character contrasted with that of Antinous Pius, ibid. His several adoptions of successors, 121. Founds the city of Aelia Capitolina on mount Sion, ii, 278.

returns the laws of Rome in the perpetual edict, viii, 15.

Hadriana, battle of, between Constantine the Great and Licinius, i, 238. Is buffeted and besieged by Frigicern the Goth, iv, 297. Battle of, between the emperor Valens and the Goths, 408.

Hakam, caliph of the Saracens, assumes a divine character to supplant the Mahometan faith, x, 279.

Hasan, the Saracen dynasty of, in Mesopotamia, x, 82.
General Index.

Hannibal, review of the state of Rome when he besieged that city, v, 225.

Hannibal, nephew of Constantine the Great, is dignified with the title of king, iii, 116. Provinces assigned to him for a kingdom, 118. Is cruelly destroyed by Constantine, 193.

Happiness, instance how little it depends on power and magnificence, x, 399.

Harran, the Persian estrap, his interview with the caliph Omar, ix, 274.

Harpocrates, an ancient mythologic history, Le Clerc’s conjecture concerning, iii, 5, note.

Haran al Rashid, caliph, his friendly correspondence with the emperor Charlemagne, ix, 186. His war with the Greek empire, x, 52.

Haran, the Saracen; conquers Carthage, ix, 461.

Hawking, the art and sport of, introduced into Italy by the Lombards, viii, 152.

Hecataeus, the era of, how fixed, ix, 289.

Helena, the mother of Constantine, her parentage ascertained, ii, 190. Was converted to Christianity by her son, in, 241, note.

Helena, sister of the emperor Constantius, married to Julian, iii, 186. Is reported to be deprived of children by the arts of the empress Euchia, 190. Her death, iv, 19.

Heliopolis taken by the Saracens, ix, 405.

Helle, according to Mahomet, described, iv, 280.

Heliogabalus described, iii, 9.

Hercastia, amount of its population in the time of Caesar, i, 329, note.

Hengirl, his arrival in Britain, with success for Wintigern, against the Caledonians, vi, 382. His establishment in Kent, 383, 387.

Hesazon of the emperor Zeno, character of, viii, 311.

Henry succeeds his brother Baldwin as emperor of Constantinople, xi, 283. His character and administration, 265.


Henry VI, emperor, conquers and pillages the island of Sicily, x, 329.

Henry the Fowler, emperor of Germany, defeats the Turkish invaders, x, 213.

Hibernia, Saxon, establishment of, in Britain, vi, 384. Review of the state of, 395.


Heraclemon, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 10.

Heracleus, deposes the eastern usurper Phocas, and is chosen emperor, vii, 216. Conquests of Charles II, king of Persia, 219. His distressful situation, 227. Accepts an ignominious peace from Chosroes, 229. His first expedition against the Persians, 223. His second Persian expedition, 236. Strengthens himself
by an alliance with the Turks, 246. His third Persian expedition, 248. His treaty of peace with Persia, 253. His triumph and pilgrimage to Jerusalem 258. His theological inquiries, 330.

Herodius marries his niece Martina, ix, 9. Leaves his two sons joint successors to the empire, 10. Inworks of his provinces by the Saracens, 388. Flies from Syria, 490.

Herodion the prefect, his expedition against the Vandals in Africa, vi, 199.

Herodion the eunuch, instigates the emperor Valentinian III, to the murder of the patrician Aetius, vi, 158. His death, 141.

Herbelot, character of his Bibliothèque Orientale, ix, 363, note.

Hermonian forest, the extent of, unknown in the time of Caesar, i, 347, note.

Herod in religion, the origin of, traced, b, 284. Edict of Constantine the Great, against, iii, 307.

Hercmar, king of the Ostrogoths, his conquests, iv, 319. His death, 376.

Hermanegild, prince of Böotica, his marriage with Ingundis princess of Austrasia, and conversion to the Niceran faith, vi, 297. Revolt and death, 298.

Hermit of the East, their mortal course of life, vi, 261. Miracles performed by them and their relics, 266.

Hermestoros, the Ephesian, assists the Romans in compiling their twelve tables of laws, vili, 6.

Hermogenes, master-general of the cavalry, is killed in the attempt to banish Paul bishop of Constantinople, iii, 294.

Here and Leander, the story of, by whom controverted and defended, iii, 9, note.

Herodian, his life of Alexander Severus, why preferable to that in the Augustan history, i, 254, note.

Herodes Atticus, his extraordinary fortune and munificence, i, 72.

Herodias, his character of the Persian worship, i, 322.

Herol, of Germany and Poland, their character, vii, 21.

Hilarion, the monk of Palentine, account of, vi, 244.

Hifacius, bishop of Poitiers, his remarkable observations on the diversity of Christian doctrines, iii, 338. His exposition of the term Humination, 341.

Hifacius, Pope, censures the emperor Anthimus for his tolerating principles, vi, 196.

Hilderic, the Vandal king of Africa, his indulgence to his catholic subjects displeases both the Arians and Athanasians, vili, 156, 157. Is deposed by Gelimer, 157. Is put to death, 177.

Hindoo of the East, not the disciples of Zoroaster, ix, 492, note.

Hinduistan, conquest of, by Tamerlane, xii, 13.

Hippo Regius, siege of, by Generic king of the Vandalis, vi, 21.

History, the principal subjects of, i, 288.

Holy war, the justice of it inquired into, xi, 12.

Homicide, how commuted by the Salic laws, vi, 346.

Homoousian, origin, and use of that term at the council of Nice, in, 333. And Humiliation, the distinction between, 341.
Hermericus, son of Theodosius the Great, is declared emperor of the West, by his dying father, vii, 86. Marries Maria, the daughter of Stilicho, vii, 172, 173. His character, 174. Flees from Milan on the invasion of Italy by Alaric, 198. His triumphant entry into Rome, 204. Abolishes the combats of gladiators, 207. Fixes his residence at Ravena, 210. Orders the death of Stilicho, 242. His impolitic measures and cruelty unite his barbarian soldiers against him under Alaric, 222. His councils disturbed by the eunuchs, 301. His object overtures to Attalus and Alaric, 307. His last act, and death, 340. His triumph for the reduction of Spain by Wallia the Goth, 258. Is suspected of incest with his sister Placidia, vi, 2, 3. His persecution of the Donatists in Africa, 46.

Herod, the new ranks of, introduced in the city of Constantinople, iii, 34; x, 119.

Hermidas, a fugitive Persian prince, in the court of the emperor Constantius, his remarks on the city of Rome, iii, 195, note. His history, and station under Julian, iv, 192.

Hermon, the son of Chosroes, king of Persia, his accession, viii, 178. His character, 179. Is deposed, and at length killed, 184–186.

Herod, of Arabia, their peculiar qualities, ix, 204.

Herod, the son of Ali, his tragic death, ix, 343.

Herzholder, knights of St. John of Jerusalem, popularity and character of the order of, xi, 92.

Herzibauz, the minor son of the emperor Donatus, elected emperor, under the guardianship of Gallus, i, 405.

Hugh, king of Burgundy, his marriage with Marozia, and expulsion from Rome by Alberic, ix, 201.

Hugh, count of Vermandois, engages in the first crusade, xi, 22. Is shipwrecked and made captive by the Greek emperor Alexis Comnenus, 45. His return, 72.

Human nature, its natural propensities, iii, 320.

Hume, Mr. his natural history of religion, the best commentary on the polytheism of the ancients, i, 46, note. His difficulty as to the extent of the imperial palace at Rome, resolved, 212, note. Charges the most refined and philosophical sects with intolerance, 228, note.

Hungary, establishment of the Hunnish, vi, 38. State of, under the emperor Chasriengage, ix, 156. Terror excited by their first approach to Europe, x, 209. Their character, 209.

Humilien, John, his exploits against the Turks, xii, 157. His defence of Belgrade, and death, 167.

Hannibal, the son of Genseric, king of the Vandals, persecutes his
catholic subjects, vi, 289. His cruelty to the catholics of Tipasa, 293.

Huns, their original seat, and their conquests, iv, 359. Their decline, 361. Their emigrations, 367. Their victories over the Goths, 374, 377.

they drive other barbarous tribes before them, upon the Roman provinces, v, 212. Their establishment in Hungary, vi, 38. Character of their king Attila, 41. Their invasion of Persia, 47. The empire of, extinguished by the death of Attila, 135.

Hunting of wild beasts, when a virtue, and when a vice, i, 151. Is the school of war, iv, 350.

Hypatia, the female philosopher, murdered in the church at Alexandria, viii, 281.

Hypatius, sedition of, at Constantinople, viii, 85.

I and J:

India, history of the sect of, viii, 230.

Iomer, St., his legendary exploits in Spain, ii, 368.

Iamarrot, first institution of those troops, xi, 448.

Iberian and Caspian gates of mount Caurus, distinguished, vii, 110. The Iberian gates occupied by Cabades king of Persia, 141.

Idaius, his account of the misfortunes of Spain by an irruption of the barbarous nations, v, 352.

Idolatry ascribed to the agency of demons, by the primitive Christians, ii, 288. Derivation of the term, and its successive applications, iii, 410, note.

Jerome, his extravagant representation of the devastation of Pannonia by the Goths, iv, 417. His influence over the widow Paula, vi, 248.

Jerusalem, its situation, destruction, and profanation, iv, 99. Pilgrimages to, and various relics preserved there, 100. Abortion attempts of the emperor Julian to rebuild the temple, 102.

a magnificent church erected there to the Virgin Mary by Justinian, vii, 129. The vessels of the temple brought from Africa to Constantinople by Belisarius, 166. Is compared by Chosroes II king of Persia, 220. Immolation of the monks there, vii, 310.

the city conquered by the Saracens, ix, 411. Great resort of pilgrims to, x, 276. Conquests of, by the Turks, 383.

is taken from the Turks by the Egyptians, vi, 77. Is taken by the crusaders, 84. Is erected into a kingdom under Godfrey of Bouillon, 87. Succession of its Christian princes, 152. Is pillaged by the Cairenes, 158.

Jerusalem, New, described according to the ideas of the primitive Christians, ii, 292.

Jews, Portuguese, persecute the eastern Christians, viii, 345. Their labours in, and expulsion from, Abyssinia, 373.

Jew, an obscure, unsuspected, obstinate race of men, vi, 258. Re-
view of their history, 270. Their religion the basis of Christianity, 274. The praises of divine favour extended by Christianity to all mankind, ibid. The immortality of the soul not inscribed in the law of Moses, 299. Why there are no Hebrew gospels extant, 337. Provoked the persecutions of the Roman emperors, 394.

Jesus, those of a more liberal spirit adopted the theological system of Plato, iii, 316. Their condition under the emperors Constantine and Constantius, iv, 97. Abusive attempt of Julian to rebuild the temple of Jerusalem, 103.

— miraculous conversion of a number of, at Minorca, v, 122, note.
— persecution of, in Spain, vi, 322.
— were persecuted by the Catholics in Italy, vii, 40. And by Cyril at Alexandria, viii, 379. How plagued by the emperor Julian, 332.
— those in Arabia subdued by Mahomet, ix, 302. Amid the Saracens in the reduction of Spain, ix, 476.
— masters of, by the first crusaders, xi, 25, 26.

Jesudeferd, King of Persia, is said to be kept guardian to Theodorus the Younger, by the emperor Arcadius, v, 419. His war with Theodorus, 428.

Lilium, the small island of, serves as a place of refuge for Romans who flew from the sack of Rome by Alaric, v, 320.

Ignatius, bishop of Antioch, the Christian fortitude displayed in his epistles, ii, 457.

Isaacus, the Saracen dynasty of, x, 82.

Illustrans, the title of, how limited in the times of Roman simplicity, and how extended when Constantinople became the seat of empire, iii, 34.

Myrianus described, i, 23.

Imagor, introduction of, into the Christian church, ix, 118. The worship of, derived from paganism, 118. Are condemned by the council of Constantinople, 126. The adoration of, justified by Pope Gregory II, 134. And sanctioned by the second council of Nice, 103.

Imperators, in the Roman history, explained, i, 99, note. The imperial prerogatives, 100. The court, 110. The sense of this appellation altered by long use, ii, 165.

Incarnation, theological history of the doctrine of, viii, 261.

Inertia, natural, and arbitrary, distinguished, viii, 60.

India, account of the Christians of St. Thomas in, vii, 386. Persecution of, by the Portuguese, 347.

Inducem, the memorable era of, whence dated, ii, 293, note. The name and use of, in the middle ages, whence derived, iii, 82.

Indulgences, in the Roman church, the nature of, explained, xi, 16, 17.

Igandri, princess of Austrasia, is married to Hermengild prince of Burgundy, and cruelly treated by his mother Gozirinda, vii, 297.
GENERAL INDEX

Inheritance, maternal, subject to parental discretion among the Romans, vi, 264. The Roman law of, viii, 74. Testamentary dispositions of property, 77. The Voconian law, how evaded, 81.

Injuries, review of the Roman law for the redress of, viii, 87.

Innocent III. Pope, enjoyed the plenitude of papal power, xi, 122.

Inquisition, the first erection of that tribunal, xi, 152.

Institutes of Justinian, an analysis of, vii, 47.

Interest of money, how regulated by the Roman law, viii, 26.

Ivan, Pope, the story of,vbti, 197, note.

John, principal secretary to the emperor Honorius, usurps the empire after his death, vi, 4.

John, the almsgiver, archbishop of Alexandria, relieves the Jewish refugees when Jerusalem was taken by the Persians, viii, 221. His extraordinary liberality of the church treasure, 363.

John, bishop of Antioch, arrives at Ephesus after the meeting of the council, and, with his bishops, decides against Cyril, viii, 291. Conjunction between him and Cyril, 295.

John of Atri, patriarch of Constantinople, his pride, and confederacy against John Cassiaccurn, xi, 375.

John of Brienne, emperor of Constantinople, xi, 273.

John of Capuanus, proctorian prefect of the East, under the emperor Justinian, his character, vii, 109. Is disgraced by the empress Theodora, and becomes a bishop, 110. Opposes the African war, 159. His fraud in supplying the army with bread, 169.

John Cassiaccurn, emperor of Constantinople, ii, 86.

JohnDamascenus, St. his history, ix, 129, note.

John of Lycopeia, the hermit, his character, and ascetical promise to the emperor Theodosius the Great, v, 79.

John, the Monophysite bishop of Asia, is employed by the emperor Justinian to root out pagans and heretics, viii, 221.

John XII. Pope, his fugitive character, ix, 198.

John XXIII. Pope, his prodigal character, xii, 575.

John, St. the Evangelist, reveals the true sense of Plato's doctrine of the L. vii, iii, 318

John the Sanguinary seizes the Gothic treasure in Picenum, and obliges Vitiges to raise the siege of Rome, vii, 244.

John Zimisces, the Greek emperor Nicephorus, and succeeds him, ix, 65. His eastern victories, x, 88. Defeats Swantihus, ear of Russia, 236.

Lome, one of the Helvite islands, its ancient monastic existence, vi, 246.

Iinan, renegade of Damascenus, story of, ix, 297.

Jovian, character of his work, De Origineis Scientiae, x, 197, note.

Joseph, the Carthagian, governor of Berzem, kills the sultan Alp Arslan, x, 302.

Josophus, the mention of Jesus Christ in his history, a forgery, ii, 409, note. His opinion, that Plato derived knowledge from the Jews, controverted, iii, 314, note.

VOL. XII.
GENERAL INDEX.

Japetus elected emperor by the troops of Julius, on their retreat from Assyria, iv, 205. His treaty with Sapor king of Persia, 209. His death, 233.

Jovinus and Hercullian, new bodies of guards instituted to supersede the pretorian bands, ii, 161.

Jovianus of Verona, his punishment by a Roman synod, for heresy, v, 191.

Jovinus reduces the Alamanni, who had invaded Gaul, iv, 279, 280. — account of his revolt against the emperor Honorius in Germany, v, 347.

Jovius, pretorian prefect under the emperor Honorius, succeeds Olympia as his confidential minister, v, 299. His negotiations with Aiceto obstructed, 301. Deserts Honorius, and goes over to Alaric, and the new emperor Ataulph, 307.

L Киев, her marriage with the Greek emperor Leo, ix, 91. Her ambition, and vanity to her son Constantine, 92. Restores images to public devotion, 164.

Ireland was first colonized from Scotland, iv, 294. Derivation of the name of its later saint, Patrick, vi, 229, note.

Isaac I, Constantinople, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 74.


Isaac, archbishop of Armenia, his apology for the vices of king Armenia, v, 401.

Isauria, the rebellion there against the emperor Gallienus, i, 454.

Isaurians, reduction of, by the eastern emperor, vii, 129.

Isticke, Cardinal, his ill treatment in Russia, xii, 148. Receives an act of union from the Greek clergy at Constantinople, 206.

Isocrates, his price for the tuition of his pupils, vii, 140.

Italy, the dominion of, under Odosius, succeeds the extinction of the western empire, vi, 224. Its miserable state at this era, 224. Conversion of the Lombards of, to the Nicene faith, 301.


— growth of the papal power in, ix, 151. Revolt of, against the Greek emperors, 138. The exarchate of Ravenna granted to the pope, 156. Extent of the dominions of Charlemagne there, 162. The power of the German Caesars destroyed by the rise of the

ITALY, REVIVAL OF GREEK LEARNING IN, XII, 118. AUTHOR CONSULTED FOR THE HISTORY OF, 294, NOTE.

JUDITH, POPISH REVIVAL OF THE SECULAR GAMES, I, 312, NOTE; XII, 210.

THE RETURN OF ACCELERATED, 312.

JUDAS, ST. EXAMINATION OF HIS GRANDSON BEFORE THE TRIBUNAL OF THE PROCURATOR OF JUDEA, VI, 414.

JUDGMENTS OF GOD, IN THE SALIC LAWS, HOW DETERMINED, VI, 840.

JUDGMENT, POPULAR, OF THE ROMANS, DISPLAYED, VIII, 106.

JULIA DOMNA, WIFE OF THE EMPEROR SEVERUS, HER CHARACTER, I, 255. HER DEATH, 258.


Julian, count, offers to betray Spain into the hands of the Arabs, ix, 467. His advice to the victorious Turks, 475.

Julian, the papal legate, exhorts Ladislaus king of Hungary and Poland, to breach of faith with the Turks, xii, 158. His death and character, 165.

Justin, master-general of the troops in the eastern empire; concert a general massacre of the Gothic youth in Asia, iv, 419.


Justin the Elder, his military promotion, viii, 54. His elevation to the empire, and character, 56. His death, 62.

Justin II, emperor, succeeds his uncle Justinian, viii, 113. His firm behaviour to the ambassadors of the Avars, 116. His abdication, and investiture of Tiberius, as his successor, 135.

Justin Martyr, his decision in the case of the Ebionites, ii, 280. His extravagant account of the progress of Christianity, 269. Occasion of his own conversion, 272.

Justinian, the popular story of her marriage with the emperor Valentinian examined, iv, 334. Her infant son Valentinian II invested with the imperial insignia, and the death of his father, 336. Her contest with Aemilian, archbishop of Milan, v, 40. Flies from the invasion of Maximus, with her son, 48.

GENERAL INDEX.


Justinian II, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 17.

Justinian, the son of Germanus, his conspiracy with the empress Sophia, and successes against the Persians, viii, 137, 138.

Jesu, his remarks on the crowded state of the inhabitants of Rome, v, 288.

K

Kaan, import of this title in the northern parts of Asia, iv, 253; v, 212.

Kinb, the title of, conferred by Constantine the Great on his nephew Amalikalizan, iii, 116.

Kindred, degrees of, according to the Roman civil law, viii, 75.

Knight, how originally conferred, and its obligations, xi, 37.

Koran of Mahomet, account and character of, ix, 167.


L

Labarum, or standard of the cross, in the army of Constantine the Great, described, iii, 258.

Labra, the civilian, his diligence in business and composition, viii, 23. His professional character, 30.

Lactantius, difficulties in ascertaining the date of his Divine Institutions, iii, 288, note. His flattering prediction of the influence of Christianity among mankind, 449. Inculcates the divine right of Constantine to the empire, 250.

Ladislaus, king of Hungary and Poland, leads an army against the Turks, xii, 157. His breach of faith with them, 158.

Ladislaus, king of Naples, invades Rome during the schism of the popes, xii, 374.

Laus, praetorian prefect, suspects the death of Commodus, and[it?] the empire on Pertinax, i, 156, 157.

Latus, when first distinguished from the clergy, ii, 340.

Lambadius, a Roman senator, boldly condemns the treaty with Alaric the Goth, v, 298.

Lancet, Italy, narrative of the miraculous discovery of, xi, 78.

Land, how assessed by the Roman emperors, iii, 85. How divided by the barbarians, vi, 535. Aitodi, and Sall, distinguished, 557. Of Italy, how partitioned by Theodoric the Ostrogoth, vii 17.

Lausiacus, his ancient splendour, i, 80.
Laconia, Theodore, establishes an empire at Nice, xi, 253. His elevation, 308.

Laconia, Theodore II., his character, xi, 312.

Laconia, Jason, the Greek grammarian, his character, xii, 130.

Latin cross, occasion of its separation from the Greek church, vi, 169. Corruption and schism of, vii, 92. Reunions of, with the Greek church, 111. The subsequent Greek schism, 145.

Latin, the right of, explained, i, 38.

Latona, in mention hereafter, explained, vi, 231.

Lazeez, review of the profession of, under the emperors, iii, 32.


Latin, the tribe of, in Cicero, account of, vii, 327.

Le Clerc, character of his ecclesiastical history, viii, 260, note.

Legal and inheritance, settled by Augustus, i, 263. How regulated by the Roman law, viii, 79.

Legion, in the Roman army under the emperors, described, i, 18. General distribution of the legions, 27. The size of, reduced by Constantine the Great, iii, 62.

Leo of Thrace is made emperor of the East, by his master Aspar, vi, 191. Was the first Christian potestate who was crowned by a priest, 192. Confers the empire of the West on Autharius, 193. His armament against the Vandals in Africa, 196. Murder of Aspar and his son, vii, 4.

Leo III, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 23. His edict against images in churches, 124. Revolt of Italy, 138.

Leo IV, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 29.

Leo V, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 37.

Leo VI, the philosopher, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 55. Extends the power of the senate, 124.

Leo, bishop of Rome, his character and embassy from Valentinian III to Attila, king of the Huns, vi, 151. Intercedes with Germanic king of the Vandals for election as king of Rome, 151. Calls the council of Chalcedon, vii, 303.

Leo III, Pope, his miraculous recovery from the assault of assassins, ix, 172. Crowned Charlemagne emperor of the Romans, 173.

Leo IV, Pope, his reign, vi, 61. Founds the Leonine city, 66.

Leo IX, Pope, his expedition against the Normans of Apulia, xi, 267. His treaty with them, 270.

Leo, archbishop of Thessalonica, one of the restorers of Greek learning, x, 157.

Leo, general of the East, under the emperor Arcadius, his character, v, 388.

Leo Pilatus, first Greek professor at Florence, and in the West, his character, xii, 124.

Leo, the Jew proselyte, history of his family, xii, 315.
GENERAL INDEX.

Leciner, the quenstor, his embassy from Constantius to Julian, iv, 279.
Lecina, city at Rome burned, s. 60.
Lecinait is taken from prison, and chosen emperor of Constantinople, on the deposition of Julian II, iv, 18.
Leovigild, Gothic king of Spain, his character, xi, 235. Revolt and death of his son Hermeric, 298.
Letters, a knowledge of, the test of civilization in a people, i, 332.
Leaves the Plane, emperor of the Romans, iv, 170.
Lexicon, emperor of the Romans, ix, 189. His message to the Greek emperor Basil I, s. 218.
Libanon, his account of the private life of the emperor Julian, iv, 38.
And of his divine visions, 77. Applause the dissimulation of Julian, 79, 80. His character, 151. His eulogion on the emperor Valens, 211.
Libertinus, bishop of Rome, is banished by the emperor Constantius, for refusing to consent in deposing Athanasius, iii, 375, 530.
Liberty, public, the only sure guardian of, against an aspiring prince, i, 93.
Lecina is invested with the purple by the emperor Galerius, ii, 208.
His alliance with Constantine the Great, 297. Defeats Maximin, 299. His cruelty, 299. Is defeated by Constantine at Chalaea, 246. And at Mursia, 247. Peace concluded with Constantine, 249. Second civil war with Constantine, 255. His humiliation, and death, 263.
— fate of his son, iii, 111. Conferred with Constantine in publishing the edict of Milan, 244. Violated this engagement by opposing the Christians, 252. Cassidius's account of his vision, 261.
Lieutenant, imperial, his office and rank, i, 101.
Lightning, supposition of the Romans with reference to persons and places struck with, ii, 97.
Linius, Sarmatian slave, expelled their masters, and made possession of their country, iii, 387. Extermination of, by Constantine, 198.
Literature, revival of, in Italy, vii, 129. Ancient use and Abuse of, 138.
Lithuania, its late conversion to Christianity, x, 248.
Lister, Count, is defeated and taken captive in Gaul by Theodoric, vi, 96.
Liptis and king of the Lombards, attacks the city of Rome, ix, 146.
Liptov, bishop of Cremona, ambassador to Constantinople, ceremony of his audience with the emperor, x, 129.
Legates, great, his office under the Greek emperors, 2, 192.
Lemovician, ancient, described, i, 35. Conquest of, by Charles Magne, ix, 135.
GENERAL INDEX.

Lombards, derivation of their name, and review of their history, vii, 274. Are employed by the emperor Justinian to check the Goths, 276. Actions of their king Alboin, viii, 117. They reduce the Goths, 121. They overrun that part of Italy now called Lombardy, 125. Extent of their kingdom, 147. Language and manners of the Lombards, 148. Government and laws, 153, 156.

Lugdunum, his representation of the degeneracy of his age, i, 94. Is put to death by Aurelian, ii, 49.

— is sent to supersede Narcissus, as exarch of Ravenna, viii, 125.

Receive Rosamund the fugitive queen of the Lombards, 122.

Lothaire I, emperor of the Romans, ix, 189.

Louis VII, of France, is rescued from the treachery of the Greeks by Roger, king of Sicily, i, 316. Undertakes the second crusade, xi, 105. His disastrous expedition, 113.

Louis IX, of France, his crusade to the Holy Land, vi, 128. His death, 163. Procured a valuable stock of relics from Constantinople, 278.

Lucian, the severity of his satire against the heathen mythology, accounted for, i, 49.

Lucian, count of the East, under the emperor Arcadius, his cruel treatment by the prefect Hafnus, v, 146.

Lucian, presbyter of Jerusalem, his miraculous discovery of the body of St. Stephen, the first Christian martyr, v, 128.

Lucilius, governor of Illyricum, is surprised, and kindly treated by Julian, iv, 28. His death, 232.

Lucilla, sister of the emperor Commodus, her attempt to get him assassinated, i, 140, 141.

Lunae II and III, Popes, their disastrous reigns, xii, 269.

Lucerne lake described, with its late destruction, v, 270, 271, etc.

Lucullan villa in Campania, its destruction and history, vi, 229.

Lupercalia, the feast of, described, and continued under the Christian emperors, vi, 197.

Lupercinus, the Roman governor of Thrace, oppresses the Gothic emigrants there, iv, 285. Raisly provokes them to hostilities, 369. Is defeated by them, 390.

Lutrat's contribution in the Roman empire, explained, iii, 94.

Luther, Martin, his character, as a reformer, xi, 169.

Luxury, the only means of correcting the unequal distribution of property, i, 87.

Lycaon, a formidable German nation, account of, ii, 78.

Lycaon, battle of, between the competitors Severus and Albinus, i, 192.

M

Macedonius, the Arian bishop of Constantinople, his contests with his competitor Paul, iii, 398. Fatal consequences of his removing the body of the emperor Constantine to the church of St. Acacius, 395.

His cruel persecutions of the catholics and novatians, 397. His exile, viii, 316.
GENERAL INDEX.

Macrianus, pretorian prefect under the emperor Valerian, his character, i, 436.

Macrianus, a prince of the Alemanni, his steady alliance with the emperor Valerian, iv, 286.

Marcellus, his succession to the empire predicted by an African, i, 222. Accelerates the completion of the prophecy, ibid. Purchases a peace with Parnis, 232.

Madaia, the capital of Persia, sacked by the Saracens, ix, 968.

Mamurz of Palmyra assassimates his uncle Odenathus, ii, 35.

Mar, its situation, i, 77.

Mars, the worship of, in Persia, returned by Aratzerzes, i, 318. Abridgment of the Persian theology, 200. Simplicity of their worship, 322. Ceremonies and moral precepts, 220. Their power, 325.

Mars, severe prosecution of persons for the crime of, at Rome and Antioch, iv, 252.

Maurice assumes the empire in Gaul, iii, 148. Death of Constant, 149. Sends an embassy to Constantine, 151. Makes war against Constantine, 167. Is defeated at the battle of Mura, 130. Kills himself, 166.

Makhad, the Gwarest, his twelve expeditions into Hindustan, i, 933. His character, 938.


Maksure, the son of Bajaret, his reign, xii, 30.


Maksum, by what means propagated, ix, 489. Toleration of Christianity under, 268.

Moderus, his history, character, and elevation to the western empire, vi, 187. His epistle to the senate, 169. His senatorial laws, 171.
GENERAL INDEX.

His preparations to invade Africa, 177. His fleet destroyed by
Genseric, 181. His death, 183.

Mauilleura, his character of the Normans, x, 264.

Malek Shah, sultan of the Turks, his prosperous reign, x, 368. Re-
foms the eastern calendar, 366. His death, 367.

Maltese Thedarias, the great civil honours to which he attained, iii,
54, nvo.

Mamalakes, their origin and character, vi, 162. Their establishment
in Egypt, 164.

Manasa, mother of the young emperor Alexander Severus, acts as reg-
gent of the empire, i, 241. Is put to death with him, 277. Her
conference with Origen, ii, 349.

Manes, an Armenian noble, his history, ii, 141.

Mars, the only animal that can accommodate himself to all climates,
i, 449, nvo.

Marriage, in the Roman law, explained, vii, 72.

Massacres are devoted to death, by the edict of Theodosius against
heretics, x, 202.

Manuel Comnenus, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 88. He repulses
the Normans, x, 337. But fails in his scheme of subduing the
western empire, 324. His ill treatment of the crusaders, xi,
100.

Marcianople, a city of Asiae, reduced and destroyed by the emperor
Julian, iv, 171.

Marko, the fair species of, most enervated by the Roman, i, 289,
not.

Marcellus, count of the sacred largesses under the emperor Con-
stantin, and loạt the usurpation of Magnus, iii, 148. His em-
bassy to Constantine, 151. Was killed in the battle of Mucen,
166.

Marcellinus, his revolt in Dalmatia, and character, vi, 185. Join the
emperor Antoninus, and expels the Vandals from Sardinia, 200.
His death, 205.

Marcellinus, son of the prefect Maximin, his treacherous murder of
Gabinus king of the Quadi, iv, 328.

Marcellus, the centurion, martyred for desertion, ii, 464.

Marcellus, bishop of Rome, elected to restore peace to the city, ii,
481.

Marcellus, bishop of Apamea in Syria, loses his life in destroying the
pagan temples, v, 106, 107.

Marcus, the confidante of the emperor Constantius, a patron of the
Christians, ii, 146.

Marcellus, senator of Constantinople, marries the empress Pulcheria,
and is acknowledged emperor, vi, 46. His temperate refusal of the
demands of Attila the Hun, 87.

Marcellus, the city of, taken by the Goths, i, 296.

Marmarasean are subdued and punished by Marcus Antinamus, vi, 381.
Alliance made with, by the emperor Gallus, 429.

Marcellus elected bishop of the Nazarenes, ii, 279.
Marne, battle of, between Constantine the Great and Licinius, ii, 247.

Marne, battle of, between Julian and Carinus, ii, 110.

Marcus, bishop of, betrays his episcopal city into the hands of the Huns, iii, 51.

Marie, daughter of Endamom of Carthage, her remarkable adventures, vi, 31.

Marie, his account of the misfortunes of Spain, by an armistice of the barbarous nations, v, 352.

Marinus, a subservient officer, chosen emperor by the legions of Marcellus, i, 385.

Marcus, the assassin, a candidate for the purple among the competitors against Gallienus, his character, iv, 446.

Mark, bishop of Arzachta, is cruelly treated by the emperor Julian, iv, 116.

Marsaga, engagement there between the emperor Julian, and Sapor, king of Persia, iv, 194.

Marwan, of the East, character and history of, vii, 353.

Marwan, a Roman prostitute, the mother, grandmother, and great-grandmother, of three popes, ix, 198.

Marriage, regulations of, by the Roman laws, viii, 57. Of Roman citizens with strangers, prescribed by their jurisprudence, x, 129.

Mary, Charles, duke of the Franks, his character, v, 23. His political conduct on the Saracen invasion of France, ix, 24, 25. Denies the Saracens, 26. Why he was consigned over to rebellians by the clergy, 37.

Martin, bishop of Tours, destroys the idols and pagan temples in Gaul, v, 106. His monastic institution there, vi, 245.

Martina, marries her uncle, the emperor Heraclius, ix, 9. Endeavors to share the imperial dignity with her son, 10. Her fate, 12.

Martianus, receives the title of Caesar, from the emperor Licinius, ii, 351.

Martys, primitive, an inquiry into the true history of, ii, 331. The several advancements to martyrdom, 355. Three methods of escaping it, 440. Marks by which learned catholics distinguish the relics of the martyrs, 427, note. The worship of, and their relics introduced, v, 128.

Mary, Virgin, her immaculate conception, borrowed from the Koran, ix, 266.

Marcus, the persecuted brother of Gildo the Moor, takes refuge in the imperial court of Honorius, v, 166. Is intrusted with troops to reduce Gildo, 167. Defeats him, 170. His suspicious death, 172.

Master of the officers under Constantine the Great, his functions, iii, 70.

Marcasius, his revolt and conspiracy against the emperor Commodus, 1, 143.

Matthew, St. his gospel originally composed in Hebrew, ii, 347, note, viii, 262, note.

Mauritania, antient, its situation and extent, i, 41. Character of the native Moors of, vi, 15.

Maximian, the son of Maximin, declared emperor at Rome, ii, 200. His tyranny in Italy and Africa, 216. The military force he had to oppose Constantine, 221. His defeat and death, 232. His politic humanity to the Christians, 481.

Maximian, associate in the empire with Diocletian, his character, ii, 135. Triumphs with Diocletian, 156. Holds his court at Milan, 158. Abdicates the empire along with Diocletian, 174. He resumes the purple, 209. Succeeds Sevraus, and puts him to death, 202. His second resignation, and unfortunate end, 210, 212. His accession to the Christians accounted for, 463.

Maximilianus, the African, a Christian martyr, ii, 464.

Maximus, his birth, fortune, and elevation to the empire of Rome, i, 271. Why deemed a persecutor of the Christians, 450.

Maximian is declared Caesar, on the abdication of Diocletian, ii, 189. Obtains the rank of Augustus from Galerius, 208. His defeat and death, 239, 239. Renewed the persecution of the Christians after the relaxation granted by Galerius, 467.

Maximus: the cruel minister of the emperor Valentinian, promoted to the prefecture of Gaul, iv, 258.

Maximus, his embassy from Theodosius the Younger, to Attila king of the Huns, vi, 68.

Maximus and Balbinus elected joint emperors by the senate, on the deaths of the two Gordians, i, 259.

Maximian, his character and revolt in Britain, v, 8. His treaty with the emperor Theodosius, 12. Perneces the Priscillianists, 34. His invasion of Italy, 47. His defeat and death, 52.

Maximus, the pagan preceptor of the emperor Julian, initiates him into the Eleusinian mysteries, iv, 76. Is honourably invited to Constantinople by his imperial pupil, 92. Is corrupted by his residence at court, 93.

Maximian, Petronius, his wife revisited by Valentinian III, emperor of the West, vi, 140. His character and elevation to the empire, 147.

Meladar, the Persian general, ungraciously treated by Charucus, vi, 301.


Medina, reception of Mahomet there, on his flight from Mecca, i, 290.

Megalis, the festival of, at Rome, described, i, 145, note.

Miletus, an Egyptian sect, persecuted by Athanasius, iii, 360.
GENERAL INDEX.

Mediterranean, battle of, between the eastern emperor Tiberius and Chosroes king of Persia, viii, 176.
Mediterranean, citizen of Bari, invites the Normans into Italy, v, 228.
Memphis, its situation and reduction by the Saracens, ix, 329.
Meroe, kings of the, origin of, vi, 98. Their dominion and benefices, 356.
Meroe, caliph of the Saracens, and the last of the house of Ommiyyah, his defeat and death, x, 31, 32.
Messopatamia, invasion of, by the emperor Julian, iv, 162. Described by Xenophon, 163, 164.
Messala, Valerius, the first prefect of Rome, his high character, iii, 46, note.
Messalae, under what character he was expected by the Jews, ii, 275.
His birth-day, how fixed by the Romans, iv, 22, note.
Metals and money, their operation in improving the human mind, i, 356.
Metellus Numidicus, the censor, his insinuata against women, 1, 241, note.
Metius Falciones, his useful speech to the emperor Tiberius in the senate on his election, ii, 64.
Metrophanes of Cyzicus, is made patriarch of Constantinople, vii, 147.
Mets, cruel treatment of, by Attila king of the Huns, vi, 108.
Michael I, Shahpusha, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 35.
Michael II, the Stammerer, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 40.
Michael III, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 48. Is defeated by the Bulgarians, x, 179.
Michael IV, the Paphlagonian, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 71.
Michael V, Calaphates, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 72.
Michael VI, Stratonicus, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 79.
Michael VII, Parapincus, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 78.
Milan, how the imperial court of the western empire came to be transferred from Rome to that city, ii, 158.
—famous edict of Constantine the Great in favour of the Christians, published there, iii, 241.
—St. Ambrose elected archbishop of that city, v, 57. Tumults occasioned by his refusing a church for the Arian worship of the empress Justina and her son, 40.
—revolt of, to Justinian, vii, 249, 249. Is taken and destroyed by the Burgundians, 250.
—again destroyed by Frederick I, ix, 207.
Military force, its strength and efficacy dependent on a due proportion to the number of the people, i, 167.
Military officers of the Roman empire at the time of Constantine the Great, a review of, iii, 30.
Millenium, the doctrine of, explained, ii, 301.
Mingrelia. See Celtic.
Minority, two distinctions of, in the Roman law, v, 154, note.
Miracles, those of Christ and his apostles, except the notion of the heathen philosophers and historians, ii, 378, 379. Account of those wrought by the body of St. Stephen, v, 128.
GENERAL INDEX.

MirooKt, powers of the primitive church, an inquiry into, ii, 309.

Mirtumel, chief minister and father-in-law of the third Gordian, his character, i, 307.

Missagae of the emperor Julian, on what occasion written, iv, 150.

Missary, or great golden dish of Adolphus king of the Vandals, history of, v, 236.

Mogadisch assumes the title of caliph, and makes war against Ali, ix, 488. His character and reign, 341. Lays siege to Constantinople, x, 3.

Moeser, prince of the Amali, seduced by the emperor Theodosius, turns his arms against his own countrymen, iv, 432.


Moesanians, the city of, surprised by the Alemanni, iv, 224.

Mohamed the Egyptian, his treaty with the Saracen Abouel, ix, 332.

Monarchy defined, i, 95. Hereditary, ridiculous in theory, but solitary in fact, 279. The peculiar objects of cruelty and of avarice under, iii, 82.

Monastic institutions, the seeds of, sown by the primitive Christians, ii, 323. Origin, progress, and consequences of, vi, 288.

Month, the standard and computation of, under Constantine the Great, and his successors, iii, 88, note.

Mothes have embellished the sufferings of the primitive martyrs by fiction, ii, 428.


— suppression of at Constantinople, by Constantine V, ix, 180.

Mongolians of the East, history of the sect of, viii, 350.

Mongolians controversy, account of, viii, 330.

Mongolians, his description of the military government of the Roman empire, i, 310. His opinion that the degrees of freedom in a state are measured by taxation, controverted, iii, 82.

Mottas, questor of the palace, is sent by the emperor Constantius, with Dominian, to correct the administration of Gallus in the East, iii, 176. Is put to death there, 177.

Mors of Barbaria, their miserable poverty, vii, 190. Their invasion of the Roman province punished by Solomon the enchanter, 203.

Mors is reduced by the Turks, xii, 248.

Moscion, Thomas, elected patriarch of Constantinople by the Venetians, xii, 246.

Mowholver, an Arabian chief, endeavours to rival Mahomet in his prophetical character, ix, 226.
Moses, the doctrine of the immortality of the soul not indicated in his law, ii, 299. His servituous laws compared with those of Mahomet, ix, 295.

Mithraism, character of his work De robis Christianis ante Constantium, viii, 290. a ser.

Mucenod by Saracen besieges Constantinople, x, 10.

Mutasim, the last caliph of the Saracens, his wars with the Greek emperor Theophilus, x, 67. Is killed by the Mongoli, xi, 418.

Mouraipole the Greek empire, and destroys Isaac Angeides, and his son Alevins, xi, 825. Is driven from Constantinople by the Latin, 230. His death, 272.

Musa, the son of Bajazet, invested with the kingdom of Anatolia by Tamerlane, xii, 51. His reign, 49.

Monarchoe in the history of Spain, explained, ix, 497.

Municipal cities, their advantages, i, 55.

Murasco, his literary character, xii, 296. a ser.

Murea, battle of, between the emperor Constantius, and the usurper Magenticus, iii, 159.

Musa the Saracen, his conquest of Spain, ix, 478. His disgrace, 483. his death, 486.

Munophius, the supposed son of Bajazet, his story, xii, 47.

Mur, battle of, between the forces of the emperor Heraclitus and those of Mahomet, ix, 313.

Murgiaster, river, the course of, stopped by Sapor, king of Persia, at the siege of Nisibis, iii, 144.

N

Nashane is besieged by Theodosius, and relieved by Count Littonia, vi, 95.

Naxaragam, the Persian general, his defeat by the Romans, and cruel fate, vii, 395.

Naxius, battle of, between the emperor Claudius and the Goths, ii, 12.

Naples is besieged and taken by Belisarius, vii, 318. Extent of the duchy of, under the emperor of the west, vii, 146.

Narses, his embassy from Sapor king of Persia to the emperor Constantius, iii, 201.

Narses, king of Persia, prevails over the pretensions of his brother, Heraclius, and expeels Theodorus king of Armenia, ii, 143. Overthrows Galerius, 144. Is surprized and routed by Galerius, 147.

Naxaria, the Persian general of the emperor Maurice, restores Chosroes II, king of Persia, viii, 189. His revolt against Phocas, and cruel death, 219.

Nabulius, a chief of the Herul, enters into the Roman service, and is made consul, i, 491.

Navy of the Roman empire described, i, 28.

Nazarine, church of Jerusalem, account of, ii, 271.

Nemius, the pagan orator, his account of miraculous appearances in the sky in favour of Constantine the Great, iii, 204.

Nero, Africanus, prefect in Gaul, is slain and succeeded by his immediate opposition to the troops of Julian, iv, 24.

Negoci of Africa, evidences of their intellectual inferiority to the rest of mankind, iv, 311.

Nestorius is chosen archbishop of Constantinople, v, 30.

Nestor, his account of the arrival of the Saxons in Britain, different from that of Gildas, Bede, and Witkin, vi, 381, note.

Nero, Julius, is made emperor of the West by Leo the Great, vi, 219.

Nestorius, account of his revolt in Italy, iii, 162.

Nero persecutes the Christians as the incendiaries of Rome, ii, 403.

Nerva, emperor, his character, and prudent adoption of Trajan, i, 120.


Neriss, John, count of, disastrous fate of him and his party at the battle of Nicopolis, xi, 461.

Nestor becomes the capital residence of Sultan Soliman, x, 372. Siege of, by the first crusaders, xi, 57.

Nestorius I, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 35. His wars with the Saracens, x, 54. His death, 200.

Nestorius II, Phocas, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 62. His military enterprises, x, 86.

Nestorius III, Botaniates, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 80. Was raised to the throne by Sultan Soliman, x, 371.

Nestor, senator of Constantinople, his flight on the capture of the city by the Latins, xi, 235. His brief history, 238, note. His account of the statues destroyed at Constantinople, 238.

Nicholas, patriarch of Constantinople, opposes the fourth marriage of the emperor Leo the philosopher, ix, 87.

Nicholas V, Pope, his character, xii, 134. How interested in the fall of Constantinople, 200.

Nicomedia, the court of Diocletian held there, and the city embellished by him, ii, 159. The church of, demolished by Diocletian, 457. His palace fired, 472.

Naples, battle of, between Sultan Bajazet, and Sigismund king of Hungary, xi, 450.

Naxos, the solitude of, at Constantinople, vii, 84.

Nebuchadrezzar, battle of, between the emperor Heraclius, and the Persians, vii, 248.

Ninus, the city of, described, and its obstinate defence against the Persians, iii, 142. Is yielded to Sapor by treaty, iv, 211.
GENERAL INDEX.

Nicolaus, the Roman inquisitor, his illustrious character, and unhappy fate, x, 127.

Nimrod, his ark very convenient for rescuing the difficulties of Moslem antiquity, i, 820.

Nobilissimus, a title invented by Constantine the Great to distinguish his nephew, Hanibaliam, iii, 110.

Novatians, described, i, 36.

Normans, their settlement in the province of Normandy in France, a, 257. Their introduction to Italy, 238. They serve in Sicily, 261. They conquer Apulia, 262. Their character, 264. Their treaty with the pope, 269.

Novatians are exempted by Constantine the Great, in a particular edict, from the general penalties of heresy, iii, 298. Are excommunicated by Macedonius bishop of Constantinople, 397.

Novats, Justinian, how formed, and their character, viii, 46.

Nourreddin, sultan, his exalted character, xi, 122.

Numa, conversion of, to Christianity, viii, 268.

Numerian, the son of Carus, succeeds his father in the empire, in conjunction with his brother, Carus, ii, 97.

Numidia, its extent at different eras of the Roman history, i, 41.

Oasis, in the desert of Lybia, described, v, 382, note. Three places under this name pointed out, viii, 298, note.

Obediencé, passive, theory and practice of the Christian doctrine of, iii, 248.

Obelisks, Egyptian, the purpose of their erection, iii, 194.

Objections to the church, origin of, vii, 341.

Obliquities, human, the sources of, vii, 82. Laws of the Romans respecting, 83.

Odokianus, the Palmyrene, his successful opposition to Sapor king of Persia, i, 440. Is associated in the empire by Gallienus, 449. Character and fate of his queen Zenobia, ii, 22.

Odin, the long reign of his family in Sweden, i, 262, note. His history, 390.

Odoacer, the first barbarian king of Italy, vi, 224. His character and reign, 232. Reigns all the Roman emperors beyond the Alps, to Zeno king of the Visigoths, 208. Is reduced and killed by Theodoric the Ostrogoth, vii, 13.

Olof, battle of, between Mahomet and Aha Sophian prince of Mecca, ix, 301.

Olga, princess of Russia, her baptism, x, 239.

Oliva, its introduction into the western world, i, 89.

Olympic games compared with the tournaments of the Gothic, xi, 29.

Olympiad, his account of the magnificence of the city of Rome, v, 282. His account of the marriage of Adolphus king of the Visigoths with the princess Plechida, 584.

Olympias, favourite of the emperor Hadrian, alarm'd him with unfavourable suspicions of the designs of Sisnich, v, 259. Cnus
GENERAL INDEX.

Agamemnon is put to death, 242. His disgrace, and ignominious death, 226.

Osman, caliph of the Saracens, ix, 332. His character, 359. His journey to Jerusalem, 412.


Orsinus, Heathen, are silenced by Constantine the Great, iii, 406.

Othman, emir of the Ottoman empire, his reign, xi, 454. Marries the daughter of the Greek emperor Comnenus, 440.

Ordination of the clergy in the early ages of the church, an account of, iii, 287.

Ottoman is sent ambassador from Atilla, king of the Huns, to the emperor Theodosius the Younger, vi, 68. His history and promotion under the western emperors, 421. His son Augustus the last emperor of the West, 102.

Otho, pretor of Egypt, is insulted by a monkish mob in Alexandria, viii, 260.

Orius declares the number of primitive martyrs to be very inconsiderable, ii, 427. His conference with the empress Mamiana, 449. His memory persecuted by the emperor Justinian and his clergy, viii, 925.

Otho, seduced by Atilla, king of the Huns, and relieved by Justinus and Theodoric, vi, 102.

Ottar, bishop of Cordova, his great influence with Constantine the Great, iii, 293. Prays on Constantine to ratify the Nicene creed, 347. Is with difficulty prevailed on to consent in deposing Athanasius, 379.

Ostara, the small kingdom of, reduced by the Romans, i, 234.

Ottavio, his poems, whether to be connected with the invasion of Calciania by the emperor Severus, i, 206. Is said to have disputed with a Christian missionary, ii, 370, note.

Ottavia, the port of, described, vi, 303.

Ottoman, caliph of the Saracens, ix, 335.

Othman, the father of the Ottoman empire, his reign, xi, 422.

Otto I, king of Germany, extorts and appropriates the western empire, ix, 190. Claims by treaty the nomination of the pope of Rome, 196. Defeats the Turks, x, 216.

Otho II, deposes Pope John XII, and establishes his party at Rome, ix, 292.

Otho, bishop of Frisingen, his character an historian, xii, 290, note.

Ottoman, origin and history of, xi, 421. They obtain an establishment in Europe, 443.

Ovid is banished to the banks of the Danube, iii, 121.

Oxovadion, in Egypt, monkish piety of that city, vi, 245.

P

Pacatus, his encomium on the emperor Theodosius the Great, v, 58.

Pestilence, how punished by the Scaccian law, iii, 100. By Justinian, 102.
GENERAL INDEX

Pagan, derivation and revolutions of the term, iii, 410, note.

Paganism, the ruin of, suspended by the divisions among the Christians, iii, 410. Theological system of the emperor Julian, iv, 72. General review of the ecclesiastical establishment and jurisdiction of, before it was subverted by Christianity, v, 92. Re-ennounced by the Roman senate, 100. The pagan sacrifices prohibited, 103. The temples demolished, 105. The ruin of, declared by the sophists, 123. Pagan ceremonies revived in Christian churches, 128.

Paleologus, Constantine, Greek emperor, his reign, xii, 175. Is killed in the storm of Constantinople by the Turks, 250.

Paleologus, John, emperor of Constantinople, xi, 372. Marries the daughter of John Cantacuzene, 382. Takes up arms against Cantacuzene, and is reduced to flight, 385. His restoration, 386. Discord between him and his son, 451. His treaty with Pope Innocent VI, xii, 73. His visit to Pope Urban V at Rome, 75.

Paleologus, John II, Greek emperor, his reign, xii, 90. His voyage to Italy, 95.

Paleologus, Manuel, associated with his father John, in the Greek empire, xi, 454. Tribute exacted from him by Sultan Bajazet, 457. His treaty with Soliman and Mahomet, the sons of Bajazet VI, xii, 51. His visits to the courts of Europe, 77. Private motives of his European negotiations explained, 86. His death, 89.

Paleologus, Michael, emperor of Nice, his brief reply to the negotiations of Baldwin II, emperor of Constantinople, xi, 583. His family and character, 515. His elevation to the throne, 518. His return to Constantinople, 324. Blinds and banishes his young associate John Lascaris, 525. He is excommunicated by the patriarch Atanasius, 327. Associates his son Andronicus in the empire, 330. His union with the Latin church, 351. Instigates the revolt of Sicily, 342.

Palatines and Borderers, origin and nature of these distinctions in the Roman troops, iii, 69.

Palermo taken by Belisarius by stratagem, xii, 212.

Palestine, a character of, i, 99.

Palatium of Rome, described, v, 96, note.

Palladius, the notary, sent by Valentinian to Africa to inquire into the government of Count Romamus, conspires with him in oppressing the province, iv, 302.

Palestrina, description of, and its destruction by the emperor Aurelian, ii, 39.

Pausanias was the first teacher of the Stoic philosophy at Rome, viii, 29, note.

Pandects of Justinian, how formed, viii, 97.

Pantikypereotes, import of that title in the Greek empire, x, 120.

Panormus described, i, 96.

Pamposani, Roman, described, v, 285.

Pape, where and when the manufacture of, was first found out, ii, 379.

Papaltn, the celebrated lawyer, created prior of St. Martin, by the emperor Sigismund, i, 201. His death, 217.

Papax, Cains, reasons for concluding that he could not be the author of the "John Papaxson," viii, 5, note.

Patens, property, their number bore to that of the protestants in England, at the beginning of the last century, iii, 250, note.

Paris, king of Armenia, his history, iv, 316. Is treacherously killed by the Romans, 319.

Parsamani, of Alexandria, account of, viii, 278, note.

Parzivel, Mahomet's description, is, 282.

Paris, description of that city, under the government of Julian, iii, 236. Situation of his palace, iv, 10, note.

Parthes subdued by Artaxerxes king of Persia, 1, 228. Its constitution of government similar to the feudal system of Europe, Hist. Hiscapitation of the war with Rome, 334.

Pascal II, Pope, his troublesome pontificate, xi, 267.

Parvel manner, much better adapted to the fierceness of war, than to peaceful innocence, iv, 542.

Pecetral authority, extent of, by the Roman law, viii, 31. Successive limitations of, 32.

Parvus, extraordinary deliverance of, from the Selvonic and Serbian, x, 103.

Petrus, the order of, under the Roman republic, and under the emperors, compared, ii, 29. Under the Greek empire, their rank explained, is, 133.

Patrik, the national poet of Ireland, derivation of his name, vi, 251, note.

Patrius, massacre of the friends of Stileicho there, by the instigation of Olympius, v, 240. Is taken by Alboin king of the Lombards, who fixes his residence there, vii, 128.

Paul of Samosata, bishop of Antioch, his character and history, vi, 441.

Paul, archbishop of Constantinople, his fatal contest with his competitor Macedonius, iii, 393.

Pelle, a Roman widow, her illustrious descent, v, 287. Wife of the owner of the city of Nemi, 223. Her monastic cell, v, 248.

Paulinus, origin and character of, x, 168. Are prosecuted by the Greek emperors, 175. They revolt, 177. They are reduced, and transported to Thrace, 181. Their present state, 184.

Paulina, wife of the tyrant Maximian, her ferocity by gentle means, i, 280, note.

Paulinus, master of the offices to Theodosius the Younger, his crime, and execution, v, 424.

Paulinus, bishop of Nola, his history, v, 326.

Paulinus, patriarch of Aquileia, dies from the Lombards with his treasures, into the island of Grado, viii, 127.
GENERAL INDEX.

Pezunia, the party of, among the Roman citizens, explained vi, 32.

Perse, the city of, taken by Zingis the Mogul emperor, xi, 409.

Persecution, controversy agitated by the Latin clergy, v, 220. And in Britain, 269.

Pella, the church of the Nazarenes settled there on the destruction of Jerusalem, ii, 278.

Pellagrean, state of, under the Greek empire, v, 105. Manufactures, 108.

Penten laws of Rome, the abdication and revival of, viii, 84.

Pendragon, his office and power in Britain, v, 369.

Periplus, of the Greek and Latin churches, history of, xi, 18.

Pepin, king of France, assail the pope of Rome against the Lombard, iv, 148. Receives the title of king by papal sanction, 152. Grants the exarchate to the pope, 156.

Pepin, John, count of Minardino, reduces the tribes Rioni, and restores aristocracy and church-government at Rome, xii, 335.

Pepis, his high estimation and price at Rome, v, 235, note.

Perron, minister of the emperor Commodus, his great exaltation and downfall, i, 143.

Peritaker, a city of Assyria, reduced and burned by the emperor Julian, iv, 170.

Perseus, king of Persia, his fatal expedition against the Septemprius, viii, 136.

Persecution, ten. of the primitive Christians, a review of, i, 412.

Perseus, amount of the treasures taken from that prince, i, 256.


— the silk trade, how carried on from China through Persia, for the supply of the Roman empire, vii, 94. Death of Perseus, in an expedition against the white Huns, 156. Review of the reign of Cabala, and his son Chosroes, 398. Anarchy in, after the death of Chosroes II, viii, 224. Ecclesiastical history of, 350.

— invasion of, by the caliph Almúnate, ix, 566. Battle of
GENERAL INDEX.


Peters, conquest of, by the Moguls, xi, 416. By Tamerlane, xii, 7.

Persians, his character and extolation to the imperial throne, i, 137. His funeral and apotheosis, 137.

Pescennius Niger, governor of Syria, assumes the imperial dignit of the death of Persians, i, 178.

Ptolemy, character of his Dictiones theologica, viii, 260, note.

Peter, brother of the eastern emperor Maurice, his injurious treat of the citizens of Azimantius, and flight from them, viii, 201.

Peter I, czar of Russia, his conduct towards his son, contrasted with that of Constantine the Great, iii, 112.

Peter of Aragon, assumes the kingdom of Sicily, xi, 244.

Peter, Bartholomew, his miraculous discovery of the Holy Lance, xi, 73. His strange death, 76.

Peter of Courtenay, emperor of Constantinople, xi, 268.

Peter the Hermit, his character and scheme to recover the Holy Land from the infidels, xi, 1. Leads the first crusaders, 24. Failure of his zeal, 72.

Petra, the city of, taken by the Persians, vii, 350. Is besieged by the Romans, 381. Is demolished, 383.

Petrarch, his studies and literary character, xii, 121. And history, 324. His account of the ruin of the ancient buildings of Rome, 417.

Pfeifer, character of his history of Germany, ix, 212, note.

Phailias, Grecian, compared with the Roman legions, i, 21.

Pharamond, the actions, and foundation of the French monarchy by him, of doubtful authority, x, 960.


Pharisee, account of that sect among the Jews, ii, 299.

Phasis, river, its course described, vii, 319.

Phoenecian, derivation of the name of this bird, vii, 321.

Philopius, Francia, his character of the Greek language of Constantinople, xii, 115.

Philip I of France, his limited dignity and power, xi, 8.

Philip Augustus, of France, engages in the third crusade, xi, 143.

Philip, praetorian prefect under the third Gordian, raised to the empire on his death, i, 302. Was a favourite of the Christians, ii, 401.

Philip, praetorian prefect of Constantinople, conveys the bishop Paul into banishment clandestinely, iii, 394.

Philippicar, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 23.

Philippopolis, taken and sacked by the Goths, i, 399.

Philip, a character of his works, iii, 317.

Philosophy, Grecian, review of the various sects of, i, 48.
GENERAL INDEX.

Phocas, the situation of his palace, iii, 3.
Phocas is settled by George, who trade to atm, xii, 52.
Phocas, a centurion, is chosen emperor by the dissatisfied troops of the eastern empire, viii, 206. Murders the emperor Maurice, and his children, 209. His character, 212. His fall and death, 216.

Phocas described, i, 39.

Phocas, the patrician, kills himself to escape the persecution of Justinian, viii, 392.

Phocas, patriarch of Constantinople, character of his Library, x, 158. His quarrel with the pope of Rome, xi, 172.

Phocas, George, the Greek historian, some account of, xii, 88, note.

His embassy, 176. His fate on the taking of Constantinople by the Turks, 235.

Pandely, derivation of the name of that province, xi, 1, note.

Papyrus of Africa, ancient fabulous account of, iv, 310.

Philo, Panas, his testimony in favour of Jesus Christ, much improved by the primitive fathers, ii, 445.

Pindar's fables, history and character of, vii, 306.

Pinus marina, a kind of silk manufactured from the threads spun by this fish, by the Romans, vii, 98.

Pipa, a princess of the Macedonians, espoused by the emperor Gallienus, i, 420.

Plaut, Calphurnius, one of the competitors against Gallienus, his illustrious family and character, i, 447.

Pyxus, the city of, destroyed by the Goths, i, 424.

Placidia, daughter of Theodosius the Great, her history and marriage with Adolphus king of the Goths, v, 334. Is unanimously treated by the murderer Singeric, after the death of her husband, 355. Her marriage with Constantius, and retreat to Constantinople, vi, 2. Her administration in the West, as guardian of her son the emperor Valentinian III, 8. History of her daughter Honoria, 103. Her death and burial, 138, note.

Plague, origin and nature of this disease, vii, 418. Great extent and long duration of that in the reign of Justinian, 425.

Plato, his theological system, iii, 314. Is received by the Alexandrian Jews, 316. And expounded by St. John the Evangelist, 318. The theological system of the emperor Julian, iv, 72.

Platonism, philosophy introduced into Italy, xii, 113.

Platonists, now, an account of, ii, 182. Unite with the bestium pictum, to oppose the Christians, 462.

Plautianus, praetorian prefect under the emperor Severus, his history, 591.

Plautius of Rome, state and character of, v, 278.

Pliny the Younger, examination of his conduct toward the Christians, ix, 417.

Post laureate, ridiculous appointment, xii, 326, note.
GENERAL INDEX.

Pagan, his selection as the ruin of ancient Rome, xii, 383.

Pannonia, battle of, between Clavas king of the Franks, and Alaric king of the Goths, vi, 385.

Pannonia, battle of, between Sabinus the Roman general, and Alaric the Goths, v, 198.

Poetices of the Romans, its origin and effects, i, 46. How accounted for by the primitive Christians, ii, 288. Scepticism of the people at the time of the publication of Christianity, 285. The Christians why more odious to the pagans than the Jews, 287.

The ruin of, suspended by the division among Christians, iii, 410. Theological system of the emperor Julian, iv, 72.


Poetones, prefect of Rome, proposes to drive Alaric from the walls by spells, v, 292.

Pompeius Magnus, general under Maximian, defeated and killed by Constantine the Great, ii, 297.

Pompey, his discretionary exercise of power during his command in the East, i, 100. Increase of the tributes of Asia by his conquests, 257.

Pons, pagan, their jurisdiction, v, 92.

Ponsius Martius, in pagan Rome, by whom that office was exercised, iii, 281.

Posta of Rome, the growth of their power, ix, 181. Revolt of, from the Greek emperors, 137. Origin of their temporal dominion, 155. Publication of the decrees, and of the fictitious donation of Constantine the Great, 159. Authority of the German emperors in their election, 193. Violent distinctions in their election, 167.


Population of Rome, a computation of, v, 296.

Postumus, Stephane, his conspiracy at Rome, xii, 383.

Postumus, the Roman general under the emperor Gallienus, defends Gaul, against the incursions of the Franks, i, 442. Is killed by his discontented troops, ii, 299.

Potus, absolute, the exercise of, law checked, x, 135.

Prefect of the sacred bed-chamber, under Constantine the Great, his office, iii, 89.

Prefect of Rome, and Constantine, under the emperors, the nature of their offices, iii, 48. The office revived at Rome, xii, 287.

Presbyterus, prefect of Rome under Valentinian, his character, iv, 278.

Protector, hands in the Roman army, an account of, i, 168. They sell the empire of Rome by public auction, 171. Are disgraced by the emperor Severus, 186. A new establishment of them, 189. Authority of the pretorian prefect, 200. Are reduced;
GENERAL INDEX.

their privileges abolished, and their place supplied, by the JW

Petronius prefect, revelations of this office under the emperors, iii, 42. Their functions when it became a civil office, 44.

Petrarsa, the nature and tendency of their office explained, vii, 116.

Petrarch, a form of devotion unknown in the temples of paganism, iii, 201. Use and abuse of, 202.

Petrarch, influence of the doctrine of, on the Saracens and Turks, li, 296.

Petrarch, among the primitive Christians, the office explained, li, 231.

Petrarch, John, origin of the romantic stories concerning, viii, 216.

Petrarch, on distinct order of men among the ancient pagans, vii, 254. iii, 281.

Petrarch, Dr. the ultimate tendency of his opinions pointed out, vii, 189. etc.

Prosopography, the prerogative of, unknown to the Roman law, viii, 75.

Prince of the waters in Persia, his office, vii, 305. etc.

Prosset, bishop of Avila in Spain, iv, with his followers, put to death for heresy, v, 34.

Probus, the historian, his conversation with a captive Greek, in the camp of Attila, vi, 59. His character, 67, etc.

Probus, the Greek general, his successes against the Avars, viii, 203.

Ptolemaeus, widow of the prefect Petronius, her flight from the sack of Rome by Alaric, v, 321.

Probus assumes the imperial dignity in opposition to Flaccus, ii, 70. His character and history, 72.

Probus, pretorian prefect of Illyricum, preserves Sirmium from the Quadri, iv, 330.

Probus, bishop, his embassy from the emperor Decianus to Narses, king of Persia, ii, 151.

Ptolemaeus, John of, instigates the revolt of Sicily from John of Aragon, xi, 344.

Ptolemaeus, story of his extraordinary brazen mirror, vii, 143.

Ptolemaeus, the Platonic philosopher of Athens, his superstitions, vii, 149.

Prosopoda of Asia, Asia, and Africa, their office, iii, 48.

Prussope, wife of the Greek emperor Michael I, her martial inclinations, iv, 36.

Prussope, his history and revolt against Valens, emperor of the East, iv, 284. It is reduced, and put to death, 250. His account of the testament of the emperor Arcadius, v, 412. His account of Britain, vi, 401. Character of his histories, vii, 61. Accepts the office of secretary under Belissarius, 163. His defense of the Roman archers, 165. His account of the revolt of the African province by war, 352.
Proculian, origin of the sect of, in the Roman civil law, viii, 80.
Proclus, his extraordinary character, and his rebellion against Propertius, ii, 87.
Prædence in ancient history, a philosophical resolution of, iii, 269.
Prætextatus, under what circumstances the Roman law enforced the fulfillment of, vii, 83.
Prætextatus, master-general of the infantry under Theodosius, is ruined by the enmity of Rufinus, c, 140.
Properly, personal, the origin of, vii, 70. How ascertained by the Roman laws, 71. Testamentary dispositions of, how introduced, etc.
Prophecy, their office among the primitive Christians, ii, 330.
Prophecy described, iii, 8.
Protæristus, patriarch of Alexandria, his martial episcopacy, and violent death, viii, 310.
Prædicta, their resistance of oppression, not consistent with the practice of the primitive Christians, iii, 249. Proportion of their number to that of the catholics, in France, at the beginning of the last century, 258, note. Estimate of their reformation of popery, s, 188.
Prædictator, import of that title in the Greek empire, s, 120.
Prædicate, the book of, why not likely to be the production of King Solomon, vii, 195, note.
Præfector, of the Roman empire described, i, 90. Distinction between Latin and Greek provinces, 90. Account of the tributes received from, 257. Their number and government after the seat of empire was removed to Constantinople, iii, 50.
Præs, conquest of, by the Ottomans, xi, 424.
Præsia, emigration of the Goths to, i, 352.
Præsconia, sister of the emperor Theodosius the Younger, her character and administration, v, 416. Her lessons to her brother, 419. Her contest with the empress Eudocia, 421. Is proclaimed empress of the East, on the death of Theodosius, vi, 84. Her death and canonization, 190.
Purple, the royal colour of, among the ancients, far surpassed by the modern discovery of cochineal, vii, 90, note.

Q

Quoia, the tyranny of, punished by the emperor Constantine, iii, 100. Revenge the treachery of the murder of, iv, 330.
Quotula, criminal, how exercised under the Roman emperors, iii, 79.
Quotula, historical review of this office, iii, 71.
Quællius brothers, Maximus and Condianus, their history, i, 142.
Quællius, brother of the emperor Claudius, his intellectual effort to succeed him, ii, 15.
Quæstor Coroneus, an attempt to decide the age in which he wrote, i, 306, note.
Quaeso, the effect of that word when opposed to colletor, s, 252, note.
B

Ruciacna, king of the Goths, his formidable invasion of Italy, vi, 222. His savage character, 217. Is induced by Silicho, and put to death, 220.

Rudger, king of the Vandals, compelled to fulfil his matrimonial obligations by a British heroine, vi, 409.

Rumian, the mouth of, now observed by the Turks, iv, 276.

Rand, a chieftain of the Alemands, his unprovoked attack of Magnesia, iv, 281.

Ravenna, the ancient city of, described, v, 207. The emperor Heraclius fixes his residence there, 210. Invasion of, by a Greek fleet, iv, 110. Is taken by the Lombards, and recovered by the Venetians, 146. Final conquest of, by the Lombards, 147. The exarchate of, bestowed by Pepin on the pope, 156.

Raymond of Toulouse, the crusader, his character, xi, 33. His route to Constantinople, 48. His bold behaviour there, 31.

Raymond, count of Tripoli, betrays Jerusalem into the hands of Saladin, xi, 135.

Raynal, Abbé, mistaken in ascertaining that Constantine the Great suppressed pagan worship, iii, 406.

Rebelet, who the most invertebrate of, x, 177.

Recared, the first catholic king of Spain, converts his Gothic subjects, vi, 299.

Reformation from popery, the amount of, estimated, x, 188. A secret reformation still working in the reformed churches, 192.

Reindeer, this animal driven northward by the improvement of climate from cultivation, i, 347.

Relics, the worship of, introduced by the monks, v, 124. A valuable cargo of, imported from Constantinople by Louis IX of France, xi, 280.

Romans, bishop of Rheims, converts Clovis king of the Franks, vi, 319.

Resistance, its high esteem, and extensive operation, among the primitive Christians, ii, 316.

Resurrection, general, the Mahometan doctrine of, ix, 277.

Resurser, the mode of his combat with the senators, in the Roman amphitheatre, i, 154.

Restaurer of the primitive church; how distributed, ii, 315; iii, 291. Of the Roman empire, when removed to Constantinople, a review of, iii, 82.

Rhetorium, city of, its situation, iii, 11.

Rhetorics described, i, 35.

Rhosann, the Persian general, defeated and killed by the emperor Heraclius, viii, 249.

Rhetoric, the study of, congenial to a popular state, vii, 144.

Rhis, the banks of, fortified by the emperor Valentinian, iv, 235.

Risler, account of the colonists of, ix, 425. The knights of, xi, 438.

Richard I, of England, engages in the third crusade, xi, 143.
GENERAL INDEX.

Cyprus, the island of, 182. His story in the excavations of Kirk of Neilly, 188.

Sacra, monk of Conisbury, his literary character, 561, note.

Caproni, Count, his history, vii, 167. Permits Major to assume the imperial dignity in the western empire, 169. Enjoys supreme power under cover of the name of the emperor Libius Severus, 189. Marries the daughter of the emperor Anthimius, 195.

Sacra, monk of Conisbury, and Ellis Anthimius, 217. His death, 218.

Meret, Nicholas de, his birth, character, and history, xi, 531.

Richtet, Rome, the construction and great extent of, 84.

Robert, Countess, empress of Constantinople, 34, 270.

Robert, count of Flanders, his character and engagement in the first crusade, xi, 32.

Robert, duke of Normandy, his character and engagement in the first crusade, xi, 52. Recalled by the enemies of the church, 71.

Radiere, the Gothic king of Spain, his defeat and death by Tarik the Arab, ix, 473.

Radiere, probable origin of her character, in Rose's Royal Convert, vi, 402, 403, etc.

Roger, count of Sicily, his exploits, and conquest of that island, 281.

Roger, son of the former, the first king of Sicily, v, 368. His military achievements in Africa and Greece, 311.

Roger de Flor, engaged as an auxiliary in the service of the Greek emperor Andronicus, xi, 317. His assassination, 320.

Romayne, Locapenc, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 38.

Romanus I, Locapenc, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 38.

Romanez II, emperors of Constantinople, ix, 61.

Romanez II, Andrean, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 69.

Romanez IV, Andrean, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 78. Is deposed and taken prisoner by the Turkish emir Alp Arslan, 75. His treatment, deliverance, and death, 338.

Romanus, Count, governor of Africa, his corrupt administration, vi, 301.

Romanus, governor of Bosnia, betrays it to the Sarmatians, vi, 284, 383.

improvements of agriculture in the western countries of the empire, 84. Arts of luxury, 87. Commerce with the East, 88. Contemporary representation of the prosperity of the empire, 90. Decline of courage and genius, 91. 102. Review of public affairs after the battle of Actium, 93. The imperial power and dignity confined to Augustus by the senate, 94. The various characters and powers vested in the emperor, 103. General idea of the imperial system, 109. Abortive attempt of the senate to resume its rights after the murder of Caligula, 116. The emperors associate their intended successors to power, 119. The most happy period in the Roman history pointed out, 126. Their peculiar misery under their tyrants, 129. The empire publicly sold by auction by the pretorian guards, 171. Civil wars of the Romans, how generally decided, 193. When the army first received regular pay, 225. How the citizens were relieved from taxation, 314. General estimate of the Roman revenue from the provinces, 266. Miseries flowing from the succession to the empire being elective, 271. A summary review of the Roman history, 316. Recapitulation of the war with Parthia, 381. Invasion of the provinces by the Goths, 397. The office of consul revived by the emperor Decius, 400. Peace purchased of the Goths, 406. The emperor Valerian taken prisoner by Shapur, king of Persia, 406. The popular conceit of the thirty tyrants of Rome investigated, 441. Famine and pestilence throughout the empire, 459. The city fortified against the invasion of the Alamanni, 47. Remarks on the alleged sedition of the citizens of the most under Aurélien, 56. Observations on the peaceful interregnum after the death of Aurelian, 69. Colonies of barbarians introduced into the provinces by Probus, 82. Exhibition of the public games by Carinus, 100. Treaty of peace between the Persians and the Romans, 124. The last triumph celebrated at Rome, 155. How the imperial courts came to be transferred to Milan and Nicomedia, 158. The pretorian bands superseded by the Roman and Herculanum guards, 167. The power of the senate annihilated, 168. Four divisions of the empire under four constant princes, 168. Their expensive establishments call for more burdensome taxes, 169. Diocletian and Maximian abdicate the empire, 170. Six emperors existing at one time, 208. The senate and people apply to Constantine to deliver them from the tyranny of Maximus, 220. Constantine enters the city victorious, 233. Laws of Constantine, 250. Constantine remains sole emperor, 264. History of the progress and establishment of Christianity, 265. Pretensions of the bishop of Rome, whence deduced, 239. State of the church at Rome at the time of the persecution by Nero, 204. Narrative of the fire of Rome, in the reign of Nero, 403. The Christians persecuted at the incendiarium, 405. The memorable effects of Diocletian and his emperors against the Christians, 468.

Now, account of the building and establishment of the rival city of Constantinople, 11, 4. New form of administration established.
GENERAL INDEX.


GENERAL INDEX.

Here, the government of the city now-modelled under the pope, after their revolt from the Greek emperors, ix, 142. It attacked by the Lombards, and delivered by King Pepin, 146. The office and rank ofexarch and patriarchs explained, 158. Reception of Charlemagne by Pope Adrian I, 154, 155. Origin of the temporal power of the pope, 156. Mode of electing a pope, 193. Is dethroned by the Saracens, x, 69. Prosperous pontificate of Leo IV, 64. Is besieged and taken by the emperor Henry III, 202. Great part of the city burnt by Robert Guiscard, to the cause of Pope Gregory VII, 304.


Remilda, the traitress of Fraili to the Avars, her cruel treatment by them, viii, 327.

Resaen, daughter of Cunobald king of the Gepidae, her marriage with Alboin king of the Lombards, xlii, 119. Compses his murder, 120. Her flight and death, 151.

Roge, the Seljukus kingdom of, burned, x, 319.

Rhodice, Olani, summary abridgment of the argument in his Atlantica, 3, 351.

Rogers, the confidential minister of the emperor Theodorus the Great, stimulates his cruelty against Thessalonicia, x, 68. His character and administration, 109. His death, 157, 158.

Sagredo, the Hun, his settlement in Hungary, vi, 39.

Sainric, the antiquity of, traced, i, 462, note.


Savina, a Persian nobleman, a saying of his, expressive of the danger of living under despots, i, 120.

Savonia, his character of the monks of Capua, v, 167, 168.

Sabelius the heresarch, his opinions afterward adopted by his antagonist, iii, 237. His doctrine of the Trinity, 341. The Sabellians unite with the Tithheneists at the council of Nice to oppose the Arians, 354.

Sabinus, their astronomical mythology, ix, 249.
GENERAL INDEX.

Sallust obtains the command of the eastern provinces from Constantine, iii, 211.

Sallustus, general of the East, is defeated by Theodoric the Ostrogoth, king of Italy, vii, 84.

Sabbatarian, origin of the sect of, in the Roman civil law, viii, 20.

Sadducee, account of that sect among the Jews, ii, 299.


Salerno, account of the medical school of, x, 278.

Salter, law, history of, vi, 348.

Saunier, the prefect, and friend of the emperor Julian, declines the offer of the diadem on his death, iv, 204. Declines it again on the death of Jovian, 233. It is retained in his employment by the emperor Valentinian, 241.

Saunier, the historian, by what funds he raised his palace on the Quirinal hill, v, 318; note.

Satan, the son of the emperor Diocletian, described, ii, 177.

Saxo, his account of the distress and rebellion of the Bagaudae, vi, 104; note.

Sasanidae, the Sasanian dynasty of, x, 81.

Sassanian, persecution and extinction of, by the emperor Justinian, viii, 223.

Sawyer, the prophet, his ashes conveyed to Constantinople, x, 125, 126.

Sapor, king of Persia, procures the assassination of Chosroes king of Armenia, and seizes the country, i, 435. Defeats the emperor Valentinian, and takes him prisoner, 438. Sets up Cyriacus in succession to Valentinian in the Roman empire, 437. Overruns Syria, Cilicia, and Cappadocia, 439. His death, ii, 41.


Saracens, various definitions of that appellation, ix, 228, note.


Sarbar, the Persian general, joins the Avars in besieging Constantinople, viii, 243. Revolts to the emperor Heraclius, 247.
GENERAL INDEX.

Serapion, expulsion of the Vandals from, by Marcillius, vi, 200. Is
conquered by Zano, the brother of Gelimer king of the Vandals,
vii, 181. Is surrendered to Belisarius, 180.

Sarmatians, memorable defeat of, by the emperor Carus, ii, 53. Their
numbers described, in, i19. Brief history of, 122. They apply
to Constantine the Great for assistance against the Goths, 125. Are
expelled their country by the Limigantes, 126. Are reduced by
Constantine, 200.

Savage manners, a brief view of, i, 326. Are more uniform than those
of civilized nations, iii, 341.

Saxons, the Goth, plunders the camp of Sulpicius, and drives him into
the hands of the emperor at Ravenna, v, 242. Invades Africa, and
occasions the sacking of Rome, 310. Is killed by Aubolius king
of the Visigoths, 318, 349.

Saxons, one of the competitors for empire against Gallaecius, his ob-
servation on his importunity, i, 448.

Saxons, illustrious under the emperor Probus, in the East, is driven
into rebellion by his troops, ii, 86.

Saxons, ancient, as account of, iv, 296. Their practical confiden-
tials, 288. Their invasion of Gaul checked by the Romans,
200. How converted to Christianity, vi, 272. Descent of the
Saxons on Britain, 381. Their brutal devastation of the country,
892.

Sunderby, prince of Althuria, his history, xiv, 168.

Scitani, law of the Romans, account of, viii, 100.

Scitani, the carcinian family of, how reduced under the emperors, iii,
40, note.

Schism in religion, the cause of, traced, ii, 254.

Scitomi, reducible to four classes, x, 45.

Scythians, their national character, viii, 278. Their barbarous in-
roads on the western empire, 330. Of Dalmatia, account of, x,
198.

Scuto and Peter, the ministry of, first mentioned, iv, 392, 296. In-
vizions of Britain, vi, 206.

Septimius, this name vaguely applied to mixed tribes of barbarians, i,
492. Their general enemies, (v, 344. Extent and boundaries of
Scythia, 355. Revolutions of, iv, 210. Their mind of war, vi,
53.

Schama, an augmentation of the infantry under the emperor Valens, his
successful expedition against the Goths, iv, 405. Is killed in the
battle of Adrianople, 411.

Septimius, the husband of the queen Jovinian, is annihilated with him in
his assumed imperial dignities, v, 248.

Severus, and the defeat and death of the emperor in the Greek empire, x,
119.

Seren, in Normandy, the bishop and chapter of, all erased, xii, 292, note.

Sesepis, the prince of, support their independence obstinately against
Artaxerxes, ii, 300, note.

Sesepis, emperor of Abyssinia, is with his whole court converted by the
Jews, viii, 378.

VOL. XII.
GENERAL INDEX.

Seleucia, his sententious character of transubstantiation, ix, 112, note.
Selecnum, the great city of, ruined by the Romans, i, 389.
Selenus, Numer, number of cities founded by him, i, 329, note.
Seluck, Turkish dynasty of the house of, x, 344. Division of their empire, 458.
Senate of Rome is reformed by Augustus, i, 97. Its legislative and judicial powers, 109. Absurd attempt of, to resume its rights after the murder of Caligula, 116. Its legal jurisdiction over the emperors, 193. Is subjected to military despotism, by Severus, 201. Women excluded from this assembly by a solemn law, 242. The form of a secret meeting, 287. Messiahs taken to support the authority of the two Gordians, 288. The senate elect Maximus and Balbinus emperors on the death of the Gordians, 290. They drive the Alamanii out of Italy, 418. The senate forced to exercise military employments by Galbius, 419. Elect Tarius, the father of the senate; emperor, ii, 65. Privileges gained to the senate, by this election, 65. Their power and authority annihilated by Diocletian, 160.
— amount of the regular gold, or customary foreign gift of, to the emperor, ii, 94. The claim of Julian to the empire admitted, iv, 34.
— present of, to the emperor, for the restoration of the altar of victory, v, 66. The pagan religion renounced, 100. Debates of, on the prognostics of Alaric the Goth, 225. Genealogy of the senators, 227. Peace a decree for putting to death Serena the widow of Silicho, 200. Under the influence of Alaric, elects Attalus emperor, 395. Trial of Arvandus, a procurator, prefect of Gaul, vi, 209. Announces the sovereign power of Italy to the emperor of the East, 227.
— extinction of that illustrious assembly, vii, 389.
— restoration of, in the twelfth century, xii, 277. The assembly resolved into single magistrates, 235.
Serapias, his lamentation for the loss of a personified deity, viii, 269.
Serapion, history of his worship, and of his temple at Alexandria, v, 108. The temple destroyed, 111.
Serapio, niece of the emperor Theodosius, married to his general Stilicho, v, 152. Is cruelly exiled by order of the Roman senate, 220.
Sesernus, legal and military import of that term, xi, 211, note.
Severus, Septimius, general of the Parthianian legions, assumes the purple on the death of Pertinax, i, 181. His course toward the Christians, ii, 147.
Severus, St. encourages Julian to resume the dominion of Italy, vi, 233. His body, how disposed of, 291, note.
Severus is declared Caesar on the abdication of Diocletian and Maximian, ii, 129. His defeat and death, 202.
Severus is appointed general of the cavalry in Gaul under Julian, ill, 320.
GENERAL INDEX.

Shepherds and warriors, their respective modes of life compared, iv, 342, 343.

S翁, a set of Mahometans, their distinction from the Sowites, xi, 233.

Sicily, extreme coldness of the climate, and miserable state of the natives, vi, 350. Is seized and occupied by the Tartars, xi, 420.


Sidamna Apollinius, the poet, his humane treatment of the captivates, iii, 90. His character of Theodoric king of the Visigoths in Gaul, vi, 138. His encomium on the emperor Avitus, 154. His panegyric on the emperor Anthemiæ, 195.

Sigismund, king of the Burgundians, marries his son, and is crowned, vi, 328. Is overthrown by an army of Franks, 329.

Simeonus Paulus, his account of the various species of stone and marble employed in the church of St. Sophia at Constantinople, vii, 120, note.

Silk, first manufactured in China, and then in the small Grecian island of Cos, vii, 90. A peculiar kind or silk procured from the pima marina, 92. The silk-worm, how introduced to Greece, 97. Progress of the manufacture of, in the tenth century, 3, 110.

Simon, persecutor of the Paulicians, becomes a proselyte to their opinions, x, 175.

Simon, king of Bulgaria, his exploits, x, 200.

Sinopses Libanius, the orator, his extraordinary mode of life, vi, 205.

Sisam, an early instance of, x, 136, note.

Simplicius, one of the last surviving pagan philosophers of Athens, his writings, and character, vii, 151, 152.

Sisara, battle of, between the emperor Constantine, and Sapor king of Persia, iii, 140. The city of, reduced by Sapor, 210. Is yielded to him by Jovius, x, 211.

Sower, brother of Sauer, is made king of the Goths, x, 354.

Suzerainy is perniciously taken by Atian chagan of the Avars, viii, 167.

Swarmin is periliously taken by Atian chagan of the Avars, viii, 167.

Swarin departs and murdered his father Chonoez II, king of Persia, viii, 253. His treaty of peace with the emperor Heraclius, 256.

Svah, a Gothic king of Spain, persecutes the Jews there, xi, 306.

Sveto V, Pope, character of his administration, xi, 392.
GENERAL INDEX.

Susan, strange peroration of the original sense of that appellation, 97, 197.

Susan, among the Romans, who, and their condition described, 1, 63.

Susan, provision, imposed on captives by the barbarous nations, vi, 329.

Susa, scene, narrative of the legendary tale of, vi, 32.

Susa, capture of, by Tamerlan, vi, 29.

Susa, philosophical, instructions on the revolutions of, vi, 417.

Susa, the Sasanian dynasty of, 3, 80.

Susa, Roman, their obligations and discipline, i, 17. When they first received regular pay, 290.

Susa, Sultan, conquers Asia Minor, x, 374. Fixes his residence at Nice, 375. Nice taken by the first crusaders, xi, 58. Battle of Doryleum, 60.

Susa, the son of Bajazet, his character, xii, 40. His alliance with the Greek emperor Manuel Palaeologus, 84.

Susa, king of the Jews, not the author of the book which bears his name of his Wisdom, iii, 916. Reasons for supposing he did not write either the book of Ecclesiastes or the Proverbs, vi, 195, 323.

Susa, the capital, relieves the Roman province in Asia from the depredations of the Moor, xii, 290. Revolt of his troops at Carthage, 348. I defeated and killed by Amalric the Moor, 332.

Sulayman, caliph of the Saracens,ousts the siege of Constantinople, 8, 9. His enormous appetite, and death, 11.

Sulayman, in the Mahometan religion, their terms, in, 355.

Sulayman, a Syrian philosopher, employed by Constantine the Great, on a charge of hindering the wind by magic, iii, 364, 365.

Susa, the widow of Justin II, her conspiracy against the emperor Tiberius, viii, 137.

Sulayman, St. foundation of the church of, at Constantinople, vi, 116. Its description, 112. Is converted into a mosque, xi, 220.

Sulayman, the Arab, commemorate the first siege of Constantinople, 2, 3.

Sulayman, a Roman nation, kills himself to escape the violence of Maximus, ii, 217, note.

Sulayman, a mode of Christian distinction, rejected from the par- 

sum, vi, 299, note.

Sulayman, uncertain opinions of the ancient philosophers as to the immor- 

tality, vii, 293. This doctrine more generally received among the 

numerous nations, and for what reason, 298. Was not taught by 

Moses, 567. Four different prevailing doctrines as to the origin of, 

viii, 364, note.

Sunni destroyed by the Greek emperor Theophilus, i, 37.

Susa, the province of, described, i, 30. Great invasions rated from 

this province by the Romans, 255. Is ravaged by the Franks.

915.

— acquisitions of Justinian there, vii, 203.

Stadium; Olympic, the races of, compared with those in the Roman circus, vii, 75.

Sauronius, emperor of Constantinople, 1, 37.

Stephan, a freedman of Domitilla, assassinate the emperor Domitian, ii, 410.

Stephen, count of Chartria, his character, and engagement in the first crusade, xi, 32. Desire to retain it, 72.

Stephen, St., the first Christian martyr, miraculous discovery of his body, and the miracles worked by it, v, 138.

Stephen the savage, sent by the Greek emperor Justinian II to exterminate the Chazarmites, 18, 22.

Stephen III, Pope, solicits the aid of Pepin king of France, against the Lombards, under the character of St. Peter, 1, 48. Crowned king of Pepin, 122.

Solibo, the great general of the western empire under the emperor Honorius, his character, v, 150. Put to death by Honorius the tyrannical prefect of the East, 137. His expedition against Alaric in Greece, 184. His diligent endeavors to check his progress in Italy, 194. Defeats Alaric at Pollentia, 190. Drives him out of Italy, 201. His triumph at Rome, 204. His preparations to oppose the invasion of Radagaisus, 215. Retards and puts him to death, 220. Supports the claim of Alaric in the Roman empire, 226. Is put to death at Ravenna, 242. His memory persecuted, 224.

Some heads the revolted troops of the emperor Justinian in Africa, vii, 319.

Stratford, battle of, between Julian and the Alemanni, 11, 229.

Suecia, successions of, defense of the Roman frontier against the Goths, 1, 424.

Saxen, the origin and renown of, 1, 416.

Saxen, expelled and pillaged by the Romans, vii, 167, 168.

Saxen, Saxons, was the highest impost of the Roman jurisprudence, vii, 19.

Salon, origin and extent of the title of eastern sovereignty, 1, 395.

Sasan, description of the provinces of, in Persia, and the destruction by Salar Mahomed, v, 277.
Saw, the worship of, introduced at Rome by the emperor Ellagabalus, i, 235. Was the peculiar object of the devotion of Constantine the Great, before his conversion, iv, 292. And of Julian after his apostacy, iv, 35.

Sed, the city of, taken by Constantine the Great, ii, 294.

Sedan, near of, his reign, x, 298.

Sedan, center of, the confederacy of, breathe for similar to that of the ancient Franks, i, 314.

Semp, sacred weapon of the Huns, history of, vi, 45.

Semp, king of the Franks and Burgundians, his character, vi, 312.

Semp, conquered by Clovis, 314.

Semp, the dictator, his legislative character, vii, 116.

Semp, the cosmopolit, his speech to the senate, recommending the election of the two Gordians to their appointment, i, 297.

Semp, states of the prefect Rufina, his mission to Carthage, v, 125.

Semp, general in Gaul under Constantine, is raised by treachery, iii, 190.

Semp, Pope, is degraded and sent into exile by Beatus for an attempt to betray the city of Rome to the Goths, vi, 289. His death, 287, note.

Semp, his account of the pagan conformity of the emperor Constantine, during his visit to Rome, iii, 409. Pleads in behalf of the ancient pagan religion of Rome, to the emperor Valentinian, v, 96.

Semp, bishop of Ptolemais, excommunicates the president Andronicus, iii, 297. His extraordinary character, vii, note. His advice to the eastern emperor Arcadius, v, 167.

Semp, provincial, in the primitive churches, Institution of, ii, 334.

Semp, nature of these assemblies, iii, 203. See Councils.


Semp, language, where spoken in the greatest purity, i, 335, note.

Semp, duke of Egypt, surprises the city of Alexandria, and expels Athanasius, the prince of Egypt, iii, 375.

Tahari, the Arabian historian, account of his life, ii, 302, note.

Tahari, the island of, in Upper Thesles, is settled with monks, by Pachomius, vi, 155.

Table of emerald, in the Gothic treasury in Spain, account of, v, 285.

Tactite, emperor, his election and character, vi, 69.

Tactite, the historian, his character of the principles of the partisans, i, 125, note. The mention of his episodes, 315. His character as a historian, 344. His account of the ancient Germans, 322. His history, how preserved and transmitted down to us, ii, 69, note.
GENERAL INDEX.

His account of the persecution of the Christians at the maximian of Rome, 404, 405.

Tactite of Leo and Constantine, character of, x, 98. Military character of the Greeks, 140.

Tayon, battle of, between the sultan Nasir, ed. Tanitl king of the Goths in Italy, vii, 383.

Tiberius, the suzerain dynasty of, x, 89.


Teócrat, the crusader, his character, vi, 63. His bold behaviour at Constantinople, 31.

Tegmen, secretary to the empress Irene, made patriarch of Constantinople, ix, 164. Pronounces, and frames the decree of, the second council of Nice, 165.

Tarik, the Arab, his descent on Spain, ix, 472. Defeats and kills Leo, the Gothic king of, 474. His disgrace, 480, 486.

Terragona, the city of, almost destroyed by the Franks, i, 415.

Tartar. See Scythian.

Tarisius, eastern, conquest of, by Tamerlane, xii, 9.

Tatian, and his sonProculeius, destroyed by the last art of Rufinus, the confidential minister of the emperor Theodosius, v, 141.

Tauris the consul, is banished by the tribunal of Chalcedon, iv, 48.

Tavet, how the Roman citizens were excluded from the burial of, i, 250. Account of those instituted by Augustus, 261. How carried under Constantine the Great, and his successors, vi, 39.

Tayef, siege of, by Mahomet, ix, 310.

Tean, the last king of the Goths, defeated and killed by the sultan Nasir, vii, 385.

Triumvirus, an Asiatic monk, loses his life at Rome, in an attempt to prevent the combat of the gladiators, v, 206.

Temple of Jerusalem, burned, ii, 412. History of the emperor Julian's attempt to restore it, i, 103.

Tempea. See Zippis.

Tébres is occupied and fortified by the Paulicians, x, 178.

Terentianus, his plan asculation in the expected domination of all the pagan world, ii, 507. Suggests devotion to Christian soldiers, 527, note. His suspicious account of two edicts of Theodosius and Maxentius, in favour of the Christians, 444.

Testament, the Roman laws for regulating, v, 77. Colic, 69.

Tertullian assumes the empire in Gaul, at the instigation of Victoria, 69, 70. Betrays his legions into the hands of Antonius, 69. Is led in triumph by Antoninus, 47.

Thebais, amount, dispute concerning the site of, vi, 287.

Thiai, the island of, granted by Vouge, as a settlement for Li Saxons, ii, 382.

Theatrical entertainments of the Romans described, v, 224.
GENERAL INDEX.

Theban legion, the martyrdom of, apocryphal, ii, 463, 464.

Theba, the Roman laws relating to, viii, 85, 94, 95.

Thebes, or military governments of the Greek empire, account of, v, 101.

Themistocles, the master, his encomium on religious toleration, vi, 231.

Therapeut, his birth and elevation to the throne of Italy, vii, 210. His disgraceful treaties with the emperor Justinian, and revolt against him, 214. His deposition and death, 222.

Theoderic, king of the Franks in Austrasia, joins the Goths in the siege and destruction of Milan, vii, 249. Invades Italy, 251. His death, 252.

Theodosius, a Gothic prince of Spain; copy of his treaty of submission to the Saracens, ix, 481.

Theodora, empress, her birth, and early history, vii, 64. Her marriage with Justinian, 68. Her tyranny, 71. Her virtues, 73. Her death, 75. Her fortune during the Nika sedition, 86. Account of her palace and gardens of Herennum, 121. Her pious concern for the conversion of Nubia, viii, 367.

Theodora, wife of the Greek emperor Theophilos, her history, ix, 44. Resolved the worship of images, 160. Provoked the Panegyrici to rebellion, x, 179.

Theodora, daughter of the Greek emperor Constantine IX, her history, ix, 70.

Theodora, widow of Baldwin III, king of Jerusalem, her adventures as the comitissa of Andronicus Comnena, ix, 90.

Theoderic, dux of Essex, slain Peter of Courtenay, emperor of Constantinople, prisoner, xi, 289. Pours out himself of Thrasilion, 271.

Theoderic acquires the Gothic sceptre by the murder of his brother Trist木地板, vi, 158. His character by Silonius, 262. His expedition into Spain, 461.

Theoderic, the son of Aeric, his prosperous reign over the Visigoths in Gaul, vi, 84. Unhappy fate of his daughters, 57. A prevailed on by Theodorus to join his forces against Attila, 104. Is killed at the battle of Chalons, 117.


Theodosiopolis, the city of, in Armenia, built, v, 429.

Theodosius the Great, his distinction between a Roman prince and a Persian monarch, iii, 95, note. The province of Media preserved by his valor, iv, 351. Is associated by Gratian as emperor of the East, 492. His birth and character, 307. His prudent and successful conduct of the Gothic war, 429. Defeats an invasion of the Ostrogoths, 433.

--- his treaty with Maxima, v, 311. His baptism and death.

Theodoric the Younger, his birth, v, 411. Is said to be left by his father Arcadius, to the care of Jovian, king of Persia, 412. His education and character, 416. His marriage with Eudocia, 421. His war with Persia, 426. His claim to the throne of the West, vi, 2. His treaty with the Hun, 39. His armies defeated by Attila, 82. Is induced to accept a peace dictated by Attila, 80. Is opposed by the embassies of Attila, 65. Emigration of Maximin to Attila, 68. Is privy to a scheme for the assassination of Attila, 81. Attila’s embassy to him on that occasion, 82. His death, 84.

his perplexity at the religious feuds between Cyril and Nectarius, vii, 209. Banishes Nectarius, 267.

Theodosius, emperor of Constantinople, ix, 28.

Theodosius, the father of the emperor, his successful expedition to Britain, iv, 296. Suppresses the revolt of Firmus the Moor, in Africa, 306. Is beheaded at Carthage, 306.

Theodosius, patriarch of Alexandria, his opposition with Gais, how decided, viii, 261. His negotiations at the court of Romanus, 354.

Theodosia, the deacon, granddaughter of the emperor Theodosius, murdered by his brother Constantius II, ix, 14.

Theodora, the lover of Antoninus, detected by Belisarius, vii, 220. Turns monk to escape him, 224. His death, 266.

Theodosia, president of the council of Hierapolis under Constantine, his ridiculous flattery to that emperor, iv, 22.

Theodorus, the Greek emperor Romanus II, poisoneth both him and his father, ix, 62. His connection with Nectarius Phocas, 63. His murder and his exile, 63, 66.


Theophilos, his plan of embassy from the emperor Constantius to the East Indies, iii, 279.

Theophilus, the Persian, his unfortunate history, ix, 13.

Theophanes, or Theopompos, same account of, ii, 992.
GENERAL INDEX.

Thrace, the state of, fortified by the emperor Justinian, vii, 27.
Thrace, rebellion, and massacre there, vi, 64. Cruel treatment of the citizens, 65. Presence of Theodore for his sister, 70.
Thracian, princes of Batania, married to Antharion, king of the Lombards, vii, 154, 155.

Thebais, count of Champagne, engages in the fourth crusade, vii, 159.
Teresius the Cappadocian, his revolt against the Greek emperor Michael II, and cruel punishment, ix, 40.
Theos of Pamantois, his exploits against the Saracens when besieging that city, ix, 392.
Thibor, St. account of the Christians of, in India, viii, 346. Persecution of, by the Portuguese, 347.
This is rescued by the Saracens, in the reign of Phoebus, vii, 84.
The fugitive Goths permitted to settle there by the emperor Valentinian, ix, 391. Is ravaged by them, 391. The Goths settled there by Theodore, 478.

Thrasamund, king of the Vandals, his character, vi, 281.

Thucydides, the famous dispute concerning, viii, 325.

Thundering Legion, the story concerning, of suspicious veracity, vi, 446.


Thiboris, invested by Justin II, as his successor in the empire of the East, viii, 125. His character and death, 128, 129.

Timonius, master general of the army under the emperor Theodosius, is disgraced and called against Armenia, vii, 281.

Timothy the great-custody of Protasius, archbishop of Alexandria, and succeeds him, viii, 240.

Tiridates, miraculous gift of speech bestowed on the Catholics, whose tongue had been cut out there, vi, 292, 294.

Tiridates, King of Armenia, his character, and history, ii, 128. Is restored to his kingdom by Diocletian, 140. Is expelled by the Persians, 144. Is restored again by treaty between the Romans and Persians, 153. His conversion to Christianity, and death, 158, 159.

Thasos admitted to share the imperial dignity with his father Visarion, i, 119.

Tangal Bog, sultan of the Turks, his reign and character, vii, 343. He rescues the caliph of Baghdad from his enemies, 349.
Tilada taken by the Arabs under Tarik, ix, 476.
Tolerance, universal, its happy effects in the Roman empire, i, 46. What sets the most in motion, 328, 329.
Tollius, objections to his account of the vision of Antigonus, iii, 202, 202.

Tortum, son of Theodore, king of the Visigods, attends his father against Attila king of the Huns, vi, 111. Battle of Chalons, 118. Is acknowledged king on the death of his father in the field, 119. Is killed by his brother Theodore, 159.
Torture, how admitted in the criminal law of the Romans under the emperors, iii. 26.

Tutela is elected king of Italy by the Goths, vii. 255. His justice and moderation, 258. besieges and takes the city of Rome, 262. is induced to spare Rome from destruction, at the instance of Belisarius, 269. Takes Rome again, 278. Plunders Sicily, 277. Battle of Tagina, 285. His death, 287.

Turanida, the Saracen dynasty of, x, 82.

Tournaments, preferable exhibitions to the Olympic games, xi, 80.

Tauris, battle of, between Charles Martel and the Saracens, x, 23.

Thuringia, in Germany, is overcome, and occupied by the Franks, vii, 214.

Tradition, in the primitive church, who, ii, 474.

Trajan, emperor, his conquest of Dacia, i, 8. His conquests in the East, 9. Contrast between the characters of him and Hadrian, 12. His pillar described, 76. Why adopted by the emperor Neriss, 122. His instructions to Pliny the Younger for his conduct towards the Christians, ii, 418. Description of his famous bridge over the Danube, xii, 125. etc.

Trayer, Count, his treacherous murder of Pera king of Armenia, iv, 219.

Transubstantiation, the doctrine of, when established, xi, 182.

Trebours, the city of, taken and plundered by the Goths, i, 223. The dukes of, become independent on the Greek empire, xi, 228. Is yielded to the Turks, xii, 299.

Trildjus the Ostrogoth, his rebellion in Pannonia against the emperor Arcadius, v, 339.

Trident, the office of, explained, i, 105.

Tribunus, his genius and character, viii, 34. Is employed by Justinian to reform the code of Roman laws, 37.

Trinity, the mysterious doctrine of, iii, 229. Is violently agitated in the schools of Alexandria, 297. Three systems of, 229. Decrees of the council of Nice concerning, 334. Different terms of the doctrine of, 288. Fourth used to support the doctrine of, vi, 290.

Triumph, the conquering, of, cruelly oppressed under the government of Constans, iii, 201.

Triumphant, religious war concerning, xii, 314.

Tropae, Roman, their discipline, i, 13. When they first received pay, 258. Cause of the difficulty in levying them, ii, 68. See Johann, Palatines, and Pretorian bands.

Troy, the situation of that city, and of the Greek camp of besiegers, described, iii, 10.

Tutrin, battle of, between Constantine the Great and the lieutenants of Maxentius, ii, 225.

Tarzan, king of the Gepids, his honourable reception at Aachen the Lombards, who had slain his son in battle, viii, 147, 148.

Tarx, their origin, vii, 284. Their primitive institutions, 287. Their conquests, 288. Their alliance with the emperor Justinian, 294. Send auxiliaries to Heraclius, vii, 246.
GENERAL INDEX.

Terror, grown powerful and licentious under the Saracens, 3, 22. Terror excited by their menacing Europe, 201. Their military character, 208. They extend themselves over Asia, 293. Reign of Mahmoud the Great, 294. Their manners and emigration, 240. They invade Persia, 344. Dynasty of the Sultains, 337. They invade the provinces of the Greek empire, 351. Reformation of the eastern calendar, 366. They conquer Asia Minor, 370.


Corsin, the romance of, by whom, and when written, xi, 7, note.


Patria of Rome, the popular concert of the thirty investigated, i, 444.

Tyre is besieged by Shalman, xi, 140.

Tyre assigned to the clergy as well by Zoroaster as by Moses, i, 326, note. Were first granted to the church by Charlemagne, ix, 178.

Valens, prince of the Allemanni, is sent prisoner to Spain by the emperor Julian, vi, 18. His son murdered by the Romans, 294.

Valens, general of the Illyrian infantry, receives the title of Caesar from Licinius, ii, 287. Loses his new title and his life, 299.

Valens, the brother of the emperor Valentinian, is associated with him in the empire, ix, 219. Obtains from his brother the eastern portion of the empire, 242. His ambition and the revolt of Prosecius, 248. His character, 253, 256. Is baptized by Eucharius, and patronizes the Arians, 265. Is vindicated from the charge of persecution, 267. His civil war against the Egyptian monks, 271. His war with the Goths, 223. Receives the suppliant Goths into the Roman territories, 381. His war with them, 394. Is defeated and killed at the battle of Hadrianapolis, 408, 410. His eulogium by Lactantius, 411.

Valens, the Arian bishop of Murra, his crafty pretension to divine revelation, li, 351.

Valentia, a new province in Britain, settled by Theodosius, iv, 390.

Valentina I, his election to the empire, and character, iv, 226. Associates his brother Valens with him, 240. Divides the empire into the East and West, and retains the latter, 242. His cruelty, 258. His civil institutions, 259. His efforts to restrain the avarice of the clergy, 270. Chrisizes the Allemanni, and fortifies the Rhine, 282, 283. His expedition to Illyricum, and death, 381. Is vindicated from the charge of polygamy, 334.
GENERAL INDEX.

Valentiamus II. is invested with the imperial garments in his mother's arms, on the death of his father, iv. 396. Is refused by St. Ambrose the privilege of a church for him and his mother Jusitia, on account of their Arian principles, 4. 10. His flight from the invasion of Maximus, 48. Is restored by the emperor Theodosius, 78. His character, 79. His death, 79.

Valentianus. Is established emperor of the West, by his cousin Theodotius the Younger, vi. 6. Is committed to the guardianship of his mother Placidia, 8. Flees, on the invasion of Italy by Attila, 130. Sends an embassy to Attila to purchase his retreat, 131. Murders the patrician Attila, 139. Revives the name of Petronius Maximus, 140. His death, and character, 141.

Valentinus, their confidant ideas of the divinity of Jesus Christ, viii. 270, note.

Valeria, empress, widow of Galerius, the unfortunate fate of her and her mother, ii. 240.

Valeria is elected censor under the emperor Tevtilus, i. 409. His elevation to the empire, and his character, 410. Is defeated and taken prisoner by Sapor king of Persia, 429. His treatment, 441. His inconsistent behaviour towards the Christians, ii. 453.

Vandals. See Goths.


Varaneus. See Dorotheus.

Varangians of the North, origin and history of, 8. 221.

Varus, the infant son of the emperor Julian, his history, vi. 224.

Vesuvius, joke of, his long and prosperous reign of Nerva, vi. 271, 276. His character, 298.

V倍nts, his remarks on the discovery of the human discipline at the time of Theodosius the Great, 8. 69.

Vex, the siege of that city, the era of the Roman army first receiving regular pay, 1. 253.

Vexil, foundation of that republic, vi. 133. In later state under the emperors of Ravenna, viii. 146. Its growth and prosperity at the time of the fourth crusade, vi. 191. Alliance with France, 194. Divides the Greek empire with the French, 243.

Verbania, his mode of obeying the law of the twelve tables respecting personal freedom, vii. 89.

Vtera, empress, the widow of Leo, departs Zeno, vii. 3. His miserable life, 6.

Vetru, siege of, by Constantine the Great, ii. 296. Battle of, between Stilicho the Roman general, and Alaric the Goth, 297.

Verres, why his punishment was insufficient to his offence, viii. 97.

Vepran us, his prudence in shewing the imperial dignity with his son Titus i. 119.
GENERAL, ETC.

Varia: Roman, their number and peculiar office, v, 83.

Veranius, the Roman general in Africa, assumes the purple, and

Venerius, emperor, the name of a Goat, who gives up the purple. v, 1549. It is reduced to abbate his new dignity, 1615.

Venus exercises the government over the legions and province of Gaul, i, 90.

Vercingetorix, the last of the Gallic kings, is deposed by Caesar, i, 99. He is sent in the name of Caesar, to Rome, i, 99.

Vercingetorix, the freedom, is alleged by Caesar for opposing monarchical superstition, x, 129, note.

Veronica, interpreter to the embassy from Theodosius the Younger to Attila, is privy to a scheme for the assassination of Attila, vi, 68. It is detected by Attila, 81.

Verulamius purchases the papal chair of Belisarius and his wife, 239. He undertakes to remove the conquest of Italy, 275.

Virtue, its progress, from the time of Homer, i, 85.

Vespasian, Emperor Flavius, is interpreted into a prophecy of the coming of the Messiah, iii, 270. Is the most ancient writer who mentions the manufacture of silk, vii, 91.

Vesuvius, the Gothic chief, is ravishingly admired at Constantinople, vii, 88.

Vespasian, the Roman emperor, is put to death by order of the senate, i, 96.

Vesuvius, emperor, his character, i, 125.

Vetere, general of the barbarians under Theodosius, king of Italy, is by his troops declared king of Italy, vii, 229. He besieges Belisarius in Rome, 224. It is later to miss the siege, 246. He is besieged by Belisarius in Ravenna, 252. It is taken prisoner in Ravenna, 257. Conforms to the Athenian faith, and is humanely settled in Asia, 258. His embassy to Chosroes king of Persia, 268.

Viburnum, the architect, his remarks on the buildings of Rome, c, 237.

Viburnum, derivation of that appellation, ix, 284, note.

Viburnum, description of that country, i, 305.

Vandal king of the Huns, reduces and kills Gaetius, the Goth, v, 267. Is driven back by the vigilance of the imperial ministers, 415.

Viberti, the apostle of the Goths, his public labours, vi, 289. Propagated Arianism, 275.

Vedius, the lawyer, placed at the head of the council of state, under the emperor Alexius Severus, i, 243. Is murdered by the pretorian guards, 249.

Votamanus abolishes the right of female inheritance, vii, 76. How cruel, 82.

Volusianus prefers the laborum of Constantine to the angel of Licinius, iii, 261, note. His reflections on the expense of a siege, v, 418, note.

Vortigern, king of South Britain, his invitation of the Saxons for assistance against his enemies, vi, 551.

Vreuius, emperor of China, his exploits against the Huns, i, 264.

Urban II, Pope, patronises Peter the hermit in his project for re-
covering the holy land, xi, 9. Exhorts the people to a crusade, at the council of Clermont, 10.
Urban V, Pope, removes the papal court from Avignon to Rome, xii, 365.
Urban VI, Pope, his disputed election, xii, 368.
Ursinus, master of the orphans under the emperor Valentinian, occasions a revolt of the Alamanni by his parsimony, iv, 277.
Ursicinus, a Roman general, his treachery conduct to Sylvanus in Gaul, iii, 191. Is superseded in his command over the eastern provinces, 311. Is sent back again to conduct the war with Persia under Sabinian, etc. Is Spain disgraced, 312.
Urvico, history of the Roman family of, xii, 320.
Urbicus, treasurer of the empire under Constantine, unjustly put to death, by the tribunal of Chalcidian, iv, 48.

W

Walachia, the present, descendants from the Roman settlers in ancient Dacia, ii, 90, note.
Wallace is settled by British refugees from Saxan tyranny, vi, 288, 292.
The bonds of, 395.
Wallace is chosen king of the Goths, v, 235. He reduces the barbarous invaders of Spain, 257. Is settled in Aquitaine, 288.
Warburton, bishop of Gloucester, his literary character, iv, 104, note. His labours to establish the miraculous interruption to Julian’s building the temple of Jerusalem, 106, 107, etc.
Warze, battle of, between the danish Amurath II and Ladislaus king of Hungary and Poland, viii, 101.
Wessex, the Greek general, defeated by the Saracens at Arrancin, iv, 298.
Wheat, the average price of, under the successors of Constantine the Great, iv, 146, note.
Whitaker, Mr. remarks on his account of the Irish descent of the Scottish nation, iv, 295, note.
White, Mr. Arabic professor at Oxford, character of his sermon at Hauerton’s lectures, x, 23, note.
Widow, the spouse of Sussex, his benevolent establishment at Scheven, vi, 496.
William I, the Bad, king of Sicily, x, 284.
William II, the Good, king of Sicily, x, 226.
Windsor, the use of, from whence derived, xi, 289.
Wine, the use of, expressly prohibited by Mahomet, ix, 276.
Wisdom of Solomon, when, and by whom that book was written, vii, 516.
Wokanor, great prince of Russia, married Anna, daughter to the emperor Romanus, v, 126. His conversion to Christianity, 217.
Witenagere, in hereditary monarchies, allowed to exercise religious, though incapable of subordinate state offices, vii, 297. How treated
GENERAL INDEX.

by the Roman civil laws, viii. 37. The Voconian law, how evaded, 82. Are not excluded from paradise by Mahomet, ix, 281.

X

Xerxes, his description of the desert of Mesopotamia, ix, 162.
Xerxes, the situation of his bridge of boats for passing over to Europe, pointed out, iii, 9.

Y

Yearick, battle of, between the Greeks and the Saracen, ix, 408.
Yearick, king of Persia, his reign the era of the fall of the Sassanian dynasty, and of the religion of Zoroaster, ix, 305.
Yezid, caliph of the Saracen, ix, 342.

Z

Zabergan invades the eastern empire with an army of Bulgarians, vii; 402. Is repulsed by Belisarius, 409.
Zaccaria, Pope, pronounces the deposition of Chileric king of France, and the appointment of Pepin to succeed him, ix, 182.
Zara, brother of Gelimer the Vandal usurper, conquers Sardinia, vii, 181. Is recalled to assist his brother, 182. Is killed, 184.
Zara, a city on the Schiavonian coast, reduced by the crusaders for the republic of Venice, xi, 200.
Zara, Sultan, his valor and conquests, xi, 121.
Zara, emperor of the East, receives a surrender of the imperial government of the western empire, from the senate of Rome, vi, 227. The richestude of his life and reign, vii, 4. His Hemisticon, viii, 311.
Zanzibar, queen of Palmyra, her character and history, ii, 32.
Zeno, a noble Saracen, is made king of that nation by the emperor Constantine, iii, 200.
Zephyl, the Saracen, his bravery in the invasion of Africa, ix, 451.
Zee, first the consulship, becomes the fourth wife of the emperor Leo the philosopher, ix, 57.
Zee, wife of Romanus III and Michael IV, emperor, ix, 70.
Zoroaster, the Persian prophet, his high vileness, i, 319, note. Abridgment of his theology, 300, 321. Provides for the encouragement of agriculture, 329. Assigns tithes to the priests, 326, note.
Zoroaster, his representation of the oppression of the literal contribution, iii, 94.
Zunguler, the reformer, his conceptions of the Eucharist, ix, 189.
Zurich, the name of that city, xii, 279.
“A book that is shut is but a block”

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY

GOVT. OF INDIA
Department of Archaeology
NEW DELHI.

Please help us to keep the book clean and moving.